

green
CHASE & STUART'S CLASSICAL SERIES.

A

LATIN GRAMMAR.

M. Kellogg

BY

THOMAS CHASE, LTT.D., LL.D.,

PRESIDENT OF HAVERFORD COLLEGE.



PHILADELPHIA:
ELDREDGE & BROTHER,

No. 17 North Seventh Street.

1882.



ORTHOGRAPHY.

	PAGE		PAGE
Alphabet.....	9	Syllables	12
Vowels and Consonants.....	9	Quantity	12
Ancient Method of Pronunciation..	10	General Rules of Quantity.....	13
English Method.....	11	Accentuation.....	14
"Continental" Method.....	12		

ETYMOLOGY.

Parts of Speech.....	15	Irregular or Defective Comparison.	49
Gender.....	15	Comparison by prefixing Magis and	
Numbers and Cases.....	16	Maxime.....	51
Roots and Stems	17	Comparison of Adverbs.....	52
Declension.....	17	Notes on the Comparative and Su-	
First Declension	18	perlative	53
Greek Nouns.....	19	Numerals	53
Second Declension.....	20	Cardinal Numbers	54
Greek Nouns.....	23	Ordinals, Distributives, and Nume-	
Third Declension.....	23	ral Adverbs	55
Consonant Stems.....	23	Declension of Numerals.....	57
I- Stems.....	25	Compound Numbers, etc.....	58
Case Terminations.....	27	Numeral Expression of Fractions..	59
Rules for Gender.....	32	Personal Pronouns.....	60
Irregular Nouns.....	33	Possessive Pronouns	61
Greek Nouns.....	34	Demonstrative Pronouns	61
Fourth Declension.....	35	Definitive Pronouns.....	62
Fifth Declension.....	36	Relative Pronouns.....	64
General View of the Declensions..	37	Interrogative Pronouns.....	64
Defective Nouns	37	Indefinite Pronouns.....	64
Heterogeneous Nouns.....	40	Compound Pronouns.....	65
Heteroclitics.....	41	Table of Correlative Pronominal	
Redundant Nouns	41	Adjectives and Adverbs.....	66
Nouns with Different Meaning in		Pronominal Adverbs of Place.....	67
the Singular and Plural	42	Pronominal Adverbs of Time.....	68
Declension of Adjectives.....	43	Verbs.....	68
Adjectives of the First and Second		Voices.....	68
Declension.....	43	Transitive and Intransitive Verbs..	68
Adjectives of the Third Declension	45	Moods.....	68
Irregular Adjectives.....	48	Participles, Gerund, and Supines..	69
Comparison of Adjectives.....	49	Tenses.....	69

	PAGE		PAGE
Present Stem.....	70	Intensives in -esso and -isso.....	125
Perfect Stem.....	70	Desiderative Verbs.....	125
Supine Stem.....	70	Diminutive Verbs.....	125
Principal Parts.....	70	Imitative Verbs.....	125
Inflection of Sum.....	71	Inflections of Verbs.....	125
Inflection of Possum.....	73	Terminations indicating Person, Number, and Voice.....	125
Conjugations.....	75	Mood Characteristics.....	128
First Conjugation.....	75	Tense Endings from the Present Stem.....	130
Inflection of Amo.....	76	Tense Endings from the Perfect Stem.....	132
Second Conjugation.....	81	Participles and Tenses from the Su- pine Stem.....	133
Inflection of Moneo.....	81	Verb Stems.....	134
Third Conjugation.....	86	The Present Stem.....	134
Inflection of Rego.....	86	Formation of the Perfect Stem.....	137
Inflection of Capio.....	91	Formation of the Supine Stem.....	137
Fourth Conjugation.....	93	Table of Verbs with Principal Parts.....	138
Inflection of Audio.....	94	Particles.....	148
Deponent Verbs.....	98	Adverbs.....	149
Inflection of Deponents.....	99	Conjunctions.....	149
Remarks on Deponents.....	101	Prepositions.....	151
Quasi-Passive or Neutral Passive Verbs.....	101	Prepositions in Composition.....	151
Semi-Deponents or Neuter Passive Verbs.....	101	Inseparable Particles.....	153
Tabular Scheme of the Four Con- jugations.....	102	Interjections.....	153
Periphrastic Conjugations.....	106	Formation of Words.....	156
Supine.....	106	Suffixes.....	156
Compound Tenses.....	106	Significant Endings.....	156
Special Forms and Abbreviations of Verbs.....	107	Nouns derived from Verbs.....	156
Irregular Verbs.....	108	Nouns derived from Nouns.....	158
Defective Verbs.....	119	Nouns derived from Adjectives.....	161
Praeteritive Verbs.....	121	Adjectives formed from Verbs.....	162
Impersonal Verbs.....	122	Adjectives formed from Nouns.....	162
Inceptive or Inchoative Verbs.....	124	Formation of Verbs.....	165
Frequentative or Intensive Verbs.....	124	Compound Words.....	165

SYNTAX.

Sentences.....	167	Nominative Case.....	179
Subject and Predicate.....	167	Vocative Case.....	179
Subject of a Finite Verb.....	169	Accusative of Direct Object.....	179
Subject of an Infinitive.....	169	Compound Verbs becoming Transi- tive.....	180
Subject Nominative and Verb.....	169	Cognate Accusative.....	181
Predicate Noun and Adjective.....	170	Limiting or Defining Accusative....	181
Apposition.....	171	Accusative after Passives used Re- flexively.....	181
Agreement of Adjectives.....	172	Two Accusatives.....	182
Agreement of Relative Pronouns....	174	Accusative of Specification.....	182
Use of Personal and Possessive Pro- nouns.....	174	Adverbial Accusative.....	182
Demonstrative Pronouns.....	175	Accusative of Extent of Time or Space.....	183
Reflexives.....	176	Terminal Accusative.....	183
The Definitive Ipse	177	Accusative after Prepositions.....	184
Indefinite Pronouns.....	177		
Pronominal Adjectives.....	178		

	PAGE		PAGE
Accusative in Exclamations.....	184	Ablative with Dignus and Indignus.....	202
Adnominal Genitive.....	184	Ablative of Specification.....	202
Genitive of Possession.....	185	Ablative after Adjectives.....	203
Subjective Genitive.....	185	Ablative of Place Whence.....	203
Objective Genitive.....	185	Ablative of Place Where.....	203
Genitive after Partitives.....	186	Ablative of Route.....	204
Genitive of Definition.....	187	Ablative of Time.....	204
Genitive of Material.....	187	Ablative after Prepositions.....	205
Genitive after Prepositional Nouns.....	187	Ablative Absolute.....	205
Genitive of Quality or Description.....	187	Indicative Mood.....	206
Genitive as a Predicate.....	188	Present Tense.....	206
Genitive after Adjectives.....	188	Imperfect.....	207
Genitive after Verbs.....	189	Future.....	208
Accusative and Genitive after Verbs.....	189	Perfect and Aorist.....	208
Genitive after Refert and Interest.....	190	Pluperfect.....	209
Special Uses of the Genitive.....	191	Future Perfect.....	209
Genitive of Value.....	191	Indicative as an Auxiliary.....	210
Genitive or Ablative with Verbs of Buying and Selling.....	191	Periphrastic Conjugations.....	210
Locative Genitive or Genitive of Place.....	192	Passive Compound Tenses.....	210
Dative Defined.....	192	Tenses in Letters.....	211
Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage.....	192	Subjunctive Mood.....	211
Accusative and Dative after Verbs.....	193	Potential Subjunctive.....	212
Accusative and Dative or Accusative and Ablative.....	193	Optative Subjunctive.....	212
Dative after Verbs.....	193	Concessive Subjunctive.....	213
Dative after Verbs Compounded with Prepositions.....	194	Questions of Deliberation or Appeal.....	214
Dative of the Possessor.....	195	Potential Questions.....	214
Dative of the Agent (so called).....	195	Subjunctive of Purpose.....	214
Dative Limiting the whole Predicate.....	196	Subjunctive of Result.....	215
Ethical Dative.....	196	Subjunctive in Substantive Clauses.....	215
Dative or Accusative after Verbs.....	197	Ut and Ne after Verbs of Fearing... ..	216
Two Datives after Verbs.....	197	Moods in Clauses denoting Time... ..	216
Dative after Adjectives.....	197	Cum Causal.....	218
Dative after Adverbs, Interjections, and Verbal Nouns.....	198	Conditional Sentences.....	219
Ablative Defined.....	198	Mixed Conditional Constructions... ..	220
Ablative of Cause, Manner, and Instrument.....	198	Various Ways of Denoting Conditions.....	221
Ablative after certain Verbs and Adjectives.....	199	Gnomic Subjunctive.....	221
Ablative after Opus and Usus.....	199	Unexpressed Protasis.....	221
Ablative of the Material.....	200	Omitted Apodosis.....	222
Ablative of the Voluntary Agent with Ab.....	200	Relatives in the Protasis.....	222
Ablative after Comparatives.....	200	Relative Clauses of Purpose.....	222
Ablative of Quality.....	201	Relative Clauses Defining a Quality.....	222
Ablative of the Degree of Difference.....	201	Relative Clauses Denoting the Reason.....	224
Ablative of Separation.....	201	Adversative Relative Clauses.....	224
Ablative of Source.....	202	Subjunctive Dependent on another Subjunctive or on an Infinitive... ..	224
Ablative of Price.....	202	Relatives with the Indicative.....	225
		Oratio Obliqua.....	225
		Conditional Sentences in Oratio Obliqua.....	226
		Persons and Pronouns in Oratio Obliqua.....	227
		Virtual Oratio Obliqua.....	228
		Indirect Questions.....	228
		Causal Clauses.....	229

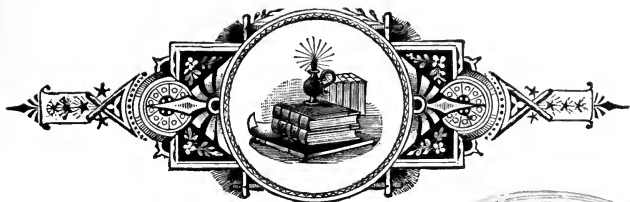
	PAGE		PAGE
Quod meaning the Fact That.....	229	The Imperative Future.....	236
Sequence of Tenses.....	230	Substitutes for the Affirmative Imperative.....	236
Infinitive Defined.....	231	Substitutes for the Negative Imperative.....	237
Infinitive as Subject, Predicate, or Appositive.....	231	Periphrases of the Imperative.....	237
Infinitive as Object.....	231	Participles.....	237
Infinitive with a Subject Accusative.....	231	The Circumstantial Participle.....	238
Infinitive after Verbs of Will, Power, Duty.....	233	Some Participial Constructions.....	239
Infinitive, Accusative with Infinitive, or Ut with Subjunctive.....	233	Gerunds and Gerundives.....	240
Historic Infinitive.....	234	Accusative Supine.....	242
Special Uses of the Infinitive.....	234	Ablative Supine.....	243
Personal Construction of Passives for Impersonal.....	235	Adverbs.....	243
Tenses of the Infinitive.....	235	Two Negatives.....	243
The Imperative Present.....	236	Conjunctions.....	244
		Interrogative Particles.....	244
Order of Words.....	246	Periods.....	251
Position of Subordinate Sentences.....	251	Arrangement of Clauses.....	251

PROSODY.

Quantity in Verse.....	253	List of Feet.....	264
Quantity by Position.....	254	Technical Terms.....	264
Diphthongs and Contracted Syllables.....	255	The Dactylic Hexameter.....	266
Derivatives and Compounds.....	255	Caesura.....	267
Monosyllables.....	256	Hypermetrical Verses.....	268
Final Syllables in Polysyllables.....	257	The Elegiac Distich.....	268
Increments.....	258	Other Dactylic Metres.....	268
Penults and Antepenults.....	260	Trochaic Metres.....	269
Natural Quantity.....	260	Dactylo-Trochaic or Logaoedic Verses.....	270
Authority.....	261	Trochaeo-Dactylic Metres.....	270
Elision.....	261	Choriambic Metres.....	271
Hiatus.....	261	Cretic and Greater Ionic Metres.....	272
Synaerêsis.....	262	Anapaestic Metres.....	272
Dialysis or Diaeresis.....	262	Iambic Metres.....	272
Syncope.....	262	Anapaesto-Iambic Metre.....	273
Systole.....	262	Bacchiac and Lesser Ionic Metres.....	273
Diastole.....	263	Iambs and Dactyls.....	273
Tmesis.....	263	Iambico-Trochaic Metre.....	274
Synaphia.....	263	Horatian Metres.....	274
Versification.....	263	Early Dramatic Verse.....	275
Arsis and Thesis.....	263	Metrical Reading.....	276

APPENDIX.

Grammatical Terms and Figures.....	277	Measures of Surface.....	284
Rhetorical Terms or Figures of Speech.....	279	Measures of Capacity.....	284
Value of Coins.....	282	Computation of Time.....	285
The Naming of Sums of Money.....	283	Roman Calendar.....	287
Interest.....	283	Principal Extant Latin Authors.....	288
Weights.....	284	Abbreviations.....	291
Measures of Length.....	284	Index of Subjects.....	295



LATIN GRAMMAR.



THE ALPHABET.

1. THE Latin Alphabet now in use has the same letters as the English, except that it has no W.

1. I and J were originally represented by one character, I, as were also U and V by V.

2. X and Y are found only in words derived from the Greek.

3. K is used chiefly in abbreviations, or as the initial letter of a few words, as *Kalendae*, *Karthago*.

4. Q always blends with U (V).

5. The letters have two forms: the **capital**, which alone was used in ancient times; and the **small**.

VOWELS AND CONSONANTS.

2. The vowels, *sounding by themselves*, are A, E, I, O, U, Y. The remaining letters are called consonants, as *sounding with* vowels.

1. The diphthongs are AE (Æ), OE (Œ), AU, EI, EU, and UI. The first three occur the most frequently.

2. AI, OI, and OU are found as diphthongs in early Latin, and YI in some Greek words (as *Harpyia*).

3. When two vowels meet, but are not to be taken as a diphthong, the mark of *diæresis* (..) is sometimes placed over the second; as, *poëta*, pronounced *po-ë-ta*.

4. The consonants are divided (as in the following table) into *labials*, *linguals* (or *lingual-dentals*), and *palatals* (or *gutturals*), according as they

are spoken principally with the lip, tongue, or palate; and into *surds* (or *hard*), *sonants* (or *soft*), and *nasal*, according to the mode of utterance.

	MUTES.		NASALS.
	<i>Surd.</i>	<i>Sonant.</i>	
LABIALS,	P	B	M
LINGUALS,	T	D	N
PALATALS,	C, K, Q	G	N

5. The *surds* and *sonants* in the above table are called *mutes*; L, M, N, and R are called *liquids*; F, (PH,) (TH,) H, S, and Z are called *fricatives* (or *spirants*); S and Z, *sibilants*; H, an *aspirate*; J, R, L, and V, *semi-vowels*; X (CS) and Z (DS), *double consonants*.

PRONUNCIATION.

3. By most nations Latin is pronounced substantially as words so spelled would be pronounced in the language of the nation itself; in America, however, at least three different methods are found:

I. THE PROBABLE ANCIENT OR ROMAN METHOD,

which attempts to give the pronunciation in use in the best ages of the living language. In it

a long is pronounced as *a* in *father*, **a** short with the same sound shorter, or as the *a* in *dogma*;

e long as *e* in *they*; **e** short as *e* in *set*;

i long as *i* in *machine*; **i** short as *i* in *sit*;

o long as *o* in *tone*; **o** short as *o* in *domestic*;

u long as *u* in *rude* (i. e., as *oo* in *too*); **u** short as *oo* in *boot*;

y like the French *u*, with the proper distinction as long or short;

ae and **ai** like *ai* in *aisle*;

au like *ow* in *owl*;

oe and **oi** nearly like *oi* in *spoil*;

ei as *ei* in *eight*;

eu like *ěh-oo* rapidly spoken;

ui like the English word *we*;

j (*i* consonans) like *y* in *year*, but stronger;

- v** (u consonans) nearly like *w*, or more exactly like *ou* in the French word *oui* ;
- c** always hard, as in *can* ;
- g** always hard, as in *get* ;
- r** should be trilled ;
- s** always hard, as in *sin*, and never like *z* or *sh* ;
- t** always hard, like *t* in *tin* ;
- x** always hard, as in *axe* ;
- z** nearly like *s* (or like *dz*) ;
- gu** and **su**, when making one syllable with the following vowel, like *gw*, *sw*, as in *lingua*, *suasor* ;
- qu** as *qu* in English ; before *u* like *k* ;
- bs** like *ps* ;
- bt** like *pt* ;
- ch** like *k* followed by *h* ;
- i** for *ji* in the compounds of *jacio* (as *eicit*, *reicit*), like *yi* (thus, *ē-yīcit*, *rē-yīcit*).

Letters not named in this table are sounded as in English.

1. In the imperial period AE acquired the sound of long E (*i. e.*, that of *e* in *they*).

2. If students find any difficulty in giving to Y the sound of the French *u*, it may be pronounced like I (*i. e.*, where long, as in *machine* ; short, as in *sit*).

3. In some schools which use the Roman pronunciation Latin V is pronounced as in English.

II. THE ENGLISH METHOD,

in which words are spoken in accordance with the ordinary laws of regular English pronunciation, with a few special rules: viz., **es** at the end of a word is pronounced like the English word *ease* ; **os** at the end of plural cases like *ose* in *dose* ; **a** at the end of a word like the final *a* in *America* (or like *short a* in the Roman method) ; **ch** always like **k**, as in *Magna Charta* (kar-tăh) ; **ti** when followed by a vowel like **sh**, if the accent is on the preceding syllable, as *rătio*, pr. *ră-shŭ-o* ; but the hard sound is retained (1) after *s*, *t*, and *x*, as in *injusťior*,

Attius, Sextius; (2) when the accent is on the *i*, as in *totius*; (3) in the antique form of the infinitive passive of verbs, as *flectier*; and (4) in Greek words.

III. THE CONTINENTAL METHOD,

(inexactly so called), in which, in its most consistent form, the vowels are pronounced as in Italian (substantially as in the ancient method), and the consonants as in English (except that, immediately succeeding the accent, and before *i* followed by another vowel, *c* and *s* are sounded like *s* pure, and *t* as in *tin*, and not like *sh*).

4. Whatever system of pronunciation is adopted, proper names, in translating into English, should always take the English sound. Latin phrases used in ordinary speech, as *sine die*, *viva voce*, should also be pronounced in the English method.

SYLLABLES.

5. In every Latin word there are as many **syllables** as there are separate vowels and diphthongs.

1. In printing and writing Latin, and in the Roman pronunciation, the following rules are observed in the **division of syllables**:

1. A single consonant between two vowels is joined to the second: as, *rō-sa*, *a rose*.

2. If several consonants come between two vowels, as many of them as can begin a word in Greek or Latin are joined to the latter: as, *pa-tris*, *a-cris*, *i-gnis*, *o-mnis*, *pun-ctus*, *pro-pter*, *po-sco*, *i-ste*, *ar-tus*, *sal-tus*, *men-sa*.

3. Evident and uncontracted compounds are divided into their component parts: as, *post-ea*, *res-publica*; but we write *vae-neo*, *ma-gnanimus*.

4. In the English method of pronunciation, English analogy is followed in the division of syllables.

QUANTITY.

6. The **Quantity** of syllables is short (◡), long (—), or common (◓, by preference long; ◑, by preference short).

1. A syllable may be (1) short or long by nature: *ămās*; (2) short by nature, but long by position: *vīndēx*; (3) short by nature, but doubtful by position: *quădruplo*.

7. GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

1. When a short vowel stands before two or more consonants, or a double consonant, or the letter *j*, the syllable is counted *long by position*.

Exc. 1. A vowel naturally short before a **mute** followed by *l* or *r* is *common*; that is, in verse it may be either long or short.

Exc. 2. In the compounds of *jūgūm*, the vowel before *J* is short.

Exc. 3. *H* is regarded only as a breathing.

2. Diphthongs and contracted syllables are long.

3. One vowel before another vowel, or before *h*, is short.

4. Derivative and compound words follow the quantity of their primitives.

8. RULES FOR FINAL SYLLABLES

1. **a** final is short in declinable words, but long in others. It is also long in the ablative singular of nouns of the first declension.

2. **e** and **y** final are short; but **e** is long in the first and fifth declensions, and in adverbs derived from adjectives in **-us**.

3. **i** and **u** final are long.

4. **o** final is *variable*, but long in datives and ablatives.

5. The terminations **as**, **es**, and **os** are usually long.

6. The terminations **is**, **us**, and **ys** are usually short; but **us** in the genitive singular, and nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, of the fourth declension is always long; also in words like *virtūs*, *virtūtis*, of the third declension.

7. When a word ends in **b**, **d**, **l**, **r**, or **t**, the final syllable is generally short.

8. When a word ends in **c** or **n**, the last syllable is generally long; but words like *carmēn*, *carmīnis*, have the **ēn** short.

ACCENTUATION.

9. The last syllable but one is called the *penult*, the syllable before it the *antepenult*.

In words of two syllables, the accent is on the first syllable: as, **hómō**. In words of three or more syllables, if the penult is long, it is accented; if the penult is short or common, the accent is on the antepenult: as, **ámīcūs**, **Ōcéānūs**, **ténēbrae**.

Exc.—In compounds of **fācio** in which the vowel is not changed, and in contracted genitives and vocatives, the accent remains on the penult: as, **benefācis**, **ingēni**, **Vergíli**.

10. Monosyllables have the circumflex accent (^) if the vowel is long by nature; otherwise, the acute accent ('): as, **ô**s (mouth), **mô**s, **lê**x, **ô**s (bone), **vír**, **dû**x. The accent on the penult is a circumflex, if the vowel be long by nature and the last syllable short; otherwise, an acute: as, **mâtê**r, **í**nter, **á**mant. The antepenult, if accented, takes always the acute. A syllable having the circumflex was dwelt upon by the voice longer than one which has only the acute. The accent *signs* are not used (as they are in Greek) in printing and writing Latin.

1. The sign of the circumflex is sometimes used also to indicate that a vowel is long (as **Româ**, abl.), or that a syllable is formed by contraction.

2. The sign of the grave accent is sometimes used to distinguish certain particles from other words of the same spelling: as, **quò**d, "because," or "that," from **quod**, "which."

11. The **Enclitics** (**quê**, **nê**, **vê**, etc.) add an accent to the last syllable of words which are accented on the antepenult, as **moénia**que, **perícúl**ave. If the preceding word is a dissyllable, it has been the general custom in England and America to retain the accent on its first syllable if the last syllable is short, but drop that accent and place an accent on the last syllable if that syllable is long, or becomes long by position: as, **Róm**aque, **Róm**amque.

1. The ancient grammarians, however, always place an accent on the syllable preceding the enclitic: as, **mí**hímet, **mūs**aque, **mūs**aque; except when the proper meaning of the enclitic is lost or obscured, when it is treated as a part of the word: as, **ít**aque, *therefore*; but **ít**aque, *and so*. Yet they said **utr**aque and **plér**aque, to keep the accent of the masculine.

2. The enclitic may aid in giving length by position, as in the second syllable of *virumque*.

3. The enclitics are *quē, nē, vē, mēt, cē, ptē, dūm, quando, inde*.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

12. The parts of speech may be grouped in three classes: **Nouns**, including the Noun, Adjective, and Pronoun; **Verbs**, including the Finite Verb, Infinitives or Verbal Nouns, and Participles or Verbal Adjectives; and **Particles**, including the Adverb, the Preposition, the Conjunction, and the Interjection.

1. Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Verbs undergo changes in their terminations, called **Inflection**. Thus from the stem (§ 15) *mulier*, we have *mulier-is*, *woman's*; *mulier-es*, *women*; *mulier-um*, *women's*; from the stem *ama*, *ama-t*, *love-s*; *ama-sti*, *love-dst*; *ama-tus*, *love-d*; *ama-ns*, *lov-ing*.

The inflection of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns is called **Declension**; that of Verbs, **Conjugation**.

GENDER.

13. I. By natural gender the names and titles of male beings are masculine; those of female beings, feminine: as, masculine, *Cāto*; *vīr*, *a man*; *consūl*; *āriēs*, *a ram*; and feminine, *Jūliā*; *mūliēr*, *a woman*; *nūtrix*, *a nurse*; *vaccā*, *a cow*.

1. Many nouns denote both the male and the female, and are therefore called *common*: as, *sācerdōs*, *priest* or *priestess*. These are for the most part really adjectives.

2. Often the male and female are distinguished by different terminations: as, *ēquūs*, *horse*; *ēquā*, *mare*.

3. Sometimes the natural gender of animals is forgotten for a fanciful gender. Thus *ānās*, *duck*, *āquīlā*, *eagle*, *vulpēs*, *fox*, are feminine; *corvūs*, *raven*, *passēr*, *sparrow*, *piscīs*, *fish*, are masculine. Such nouns are called *epicene*, *i. e.*, common to both genders. If the real gender is to be denoted, the words *mās* or *masculūs*, *male*, or *fēmīnā*, *female*, are added.

II. Grammatical gender is determined partly by the meaning, partly by the termination.

1. Months, winds, and rivers are generally masculine.

The names of the months are really adjectives, agreeing with *mensīs* (*month*), understood.

2. Countries, islands, and trees are generally feminine.

3. Nouns undeclined, as *fās*, *right*; other parts of speech, used for the time as nouns, as *scīrē tūm*, *thy knowledge*; *hōc ipsūm diū*, *this very word "diu;"* sentences used as nouns; and the produce of trees, are generally neuter.

Exceptions.—1. The following names of rivers are feminine: *Alliā*, *Albūlā*, *Mātrōnā*, *Styx*, and *Lēthē*.

2. Names of countries ending in *-ūm* or *-ā* (plur.) are neuter: as, *Lātiūm*, *Bactrā*.

Pōntūs, *Hellespontūs*, *Isthmūs*, are masculine.

3. Names of trees in *-ēr* and *-ūr* of the third declension are neuter: as, *sīlēr*, *an osier*; *rōbūr*, *an oak*; those in *-ēr*, of the second declension, are usually masculine, as are also many of those in *-ūs*.

NUMBERS AND CASES.

14. There are in Latin two numbers, the Singular and Plural; and six cases, viz.:

The Nominative, which names the *subject* of the verb, answering the question, *Who?* or *What?* As, *Quīs dedit?* *who gave?* *Vīr*, *a man*.

The Genitive, the case of possession or connection, answering the question, *Whose?* or *Whereof?* As, *Cūjūs dōnūm?* *whose gift?* *Vīrī*, *a man's*.

The Dative, the case of remoter object, or personal interest, answering the question, *To whom* or *what?* For *whom* or *what?* As, *Cuī dātūm?* *To whom given?* *Vīrō*, *to a man*.

The Accusative, the case of direct object, answering the question, *Whom?* *What?* As, *Quēm vīdēō?* *Whom see I?* *Vīrūm*, *A man*. It may also answer the questions, *To what place?* *During what time?* *How far?*

The Vocative, the case of direct address. As, *Vīr*, *O man!* or *Thou man!*

The Ablative, which denotes means, source, circumstances, translated by the prepositions *with*, *in*, *from*, *by*, *at*, etc., and answering the questions, *Wherewith?* *Whence?* *When?* *By*, *with*, etc., *whom* or *what?* As, *Ā quō dātūm?* *By whom given?* *Ā vīrō*, *By a man*.

1. A seventh case, the **Locative**, is still found in a few words: as, *dŏmī*, *in the house, at home*; *hŭmī*, *on the ground*.
2. The Sanskrit has also an eighth case, the **Instrumental**.
3. The Nominative and Vocative are called **independent cases**; the other four, **dependent or oblique**.

ROOTS AND STEMS.

15. The endings of declension and conjugation are attached to the **Stem**, which is the fundamental part of the word.

1. The Stem of a Noun is usually seen on casting off *-rum* or *-um* from the Genitive Plural: as, *mensa-*, *dŏmīno-*, *lēon-*, *māri-*, *grādu-*, *dīe-*.

2. The Stem of a Verb is shown in the Imperative Mood: as, *āma-*, *audi-*, *mōne*. But in the Third Conjugation *-ē* is cast off (for convenience): as, *reg-*; and in a Deponent Verb *-rē* or *-ēre*: as, *fa-*, *re-*, *lab-*.

16. The **Root** (which is always a monosyllable) is that part which a word has in common with kindred words. Thus in the noun *stātio*, *standing*, *station-* is the Stem, but *sta-* (originally *stā*, sometimes *stā*) is the Root, as may be seen by comparing *stā-re*, *stā-tuo*, *stā-men*, *stā-tūra*, *stātim*, *to stand*, *stablish*, *standing-thread* (i. e., *warp*), *standing-height*, *instantly*. A root may be used as a stem, or the stem may contain the root with alterations or additions.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

17. Latin nouns have five Declensions, known by the endings of their Genitives:

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
GEN. SING.	<i>ae</i>	<i>ī</i>	<i>īs</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>ēi</i>
GEN. PLUR.	<i>ārŭm</i>	<i>ōrŭm</i>	<i>ŭm</i> or <i>īŭm</i>	<i>ŭŭm</i>	<i>ērŭm</i>

1. In Neuter Nouns the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative are the same in each Number, severally; and in the Plural they end in *ā*.

2. The Vocative of Latin words is the same as the Nominative, except in the Singular of the Second Declension.

3. The Dative and Ablative Plural are always the same.

18. Table of Endings of Latin Nouns in the Five Declensions.

Singular.				
I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
NOM. ā	ūs, ěr, ĭr, ūm	(various endings.)	ūs ū	ēs
GEN. æ	ī ī	īs	ūs ūs (ū)	ĕī
DAT. æ	ō ō	ī	uī ū (uī)	ĕī
ACC. ām	ūm ūm	ēm, ĭm (neut. like nom.)	ūm ū	ēm
VOC. ā	ě (ī), ěr, ĭr, ūm	like nom.	ūs ū	ēs
ABL. ā	ō ō	ĕ, ī	ū ū	ē
(Loc.) æ (<i>āī</i>)	ī ī	ī, ě		

Plural.				
NOM. æ	ī ā	ēs (īs), ā, iā	ūs uā	ēs
GEN. ārūm	ōrūm ōrūm	ūm, iūm	uūm uūm	ērūm
DAT. īs (<i>ābūs</i>)	īs īs	ībūs	ībūs (<i>ūbūs</i>)	ībūs ĕbūs
ACC. ās	ōs ā	ēs (īs), ā, iā	ūs uā	ēs
VOC. æ	ī ā	like nom.	ūs uā	ēs
ABL. īs (<i>ābūs</i>)	īs īs	ībūs	ībūs (<i>ūbūs</i>)	ībūs ĕbūs
(Loc.) īs	īs īs			

THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Ā-STEMS.

19. The First Declension contains Latin Nouns, mostly Feminine, with Nominative in **ā**; and a few Greek words, chiefly Proper Names, in **ās**, **ēs**, Masculine, and **ē** Feminine.

Those in **a** are thus declined:

Singular.	Plural.
NOM. mensā , a table.	mensae , tables.
GEN. mensae , of a table.	mensārūm , of tables.
DAT. mensae , to or for a table.	mensīs , to or for tables.
ACC. mensām , a table.	mensās , tables.
VOC. mensā , O table or thou table!	mensae , O tables or ye tables!
ABL. mensā , by, with, or from a table.	mensīs , by, with, or from tables.

Note.—As there is no Article in Latin, **mensā** may be translated *table*, *a table*, or *the table*, according to the context.

1. In this way are declined also the adjectives and participles in *a* (fem.): as, *magnă, great; pictă, painted; mensă rō-tundă, a round table; mensae rōtundae, of a round table.*

2. An old genitive and dative in *āī* are sometimes found in inscriptions and in the poets: as, *aulāi, of a hall; āquāi, of water.*

3. An old genitive in *ās* remains in *pătēr fāmīliās, the father of a family; mătēr fāmīliās, fīliūs fāmīliās.*

4. The genitive plural is found in *-ūm* rather than *-ārūm* in (1) patronymics in *-des*, as, *Aenēādēs, Aenēādūm*; (2) many names of tribes or people, as *Lăpīthae, Lăpīthūm*; (3) compounds of *cōl-* or *gēn-*, in poetry, as *caelicōlă, caelicōlūm, terrīgēnă, terrīgēnūm*; (4) and in *amphōrūm*, from *amphōră*, and *drachmūm*, from *drachmă*, when used with numerals: as, *terna millia amphōrūm, 3000 amphors; millē drachmūm, a thousand drachms.*

5. The locative case of *mīlītīă* and names of towns ends in the singular in *ae* (for *āī*), in the plural in *īs*: as, *mīlītīae, at the wars; Rōmae, at Rome; Āthēnīs, at Athens.*

6. The dative and ablative plural of *deă, goddess, and fīliă, daughter*, end often in *-ăbūs*, to distinguish them from the like cases of corresponding masculine names of the second declension. So sometimes *nătă, ănīmă, libertă, conservă, dō-mīnă, ără, mīmă, nymphă, ăsīnă, ăquă, mūla.*

7. Stems in *-ia* sometimes have *-īs* in the dative and ablative plural instead of *-īīs*. Thus *grătīīs, for thanks*, is ordinarily written *grătīs*.

8. The exceptions to the rule that Latin nouns of the first declension are feminine are mostly from natural gender; thus *agrīcōlă, a farmer, naută, a sailor*, are masculine. Names of rivers in *a* are masculine, according to the general rule; but *Alliă, Albūlă, and Matrōnă* are feminine. *Hadriă, the Adriatic Sea*, is masculine.

20. GREEK NOUNS.

	Aenēas, m.	Anchīses, m.	Cybēle, f.
NOM.	Aenēās,	Anchīsēs,	Cybēlē,
GEN.	Aenēae,	Anchīsae,	Cybēlēs or Cybēlāe,
DAT.	Aenēae,	Anchīsae,	Cybēlāe,
ACC.	Aenēān or Aenēām,	Anchīsēn or Anchīsām,	Cybēlēn
VOC.	Aenēā,	Anchīsē or Anchīsā (ă),	Cybēlē,
ABL.	Aenēā.	Anchīsā.	Cybēlē or Cybēlā.

1. The plural of Greek nouns of the first declension, when used, follows that of *mensā*.

THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Ů-STEMS.

21. The Second Declension contains Latin Nouns in *ūs*, *ēr*, and *īr*, mostly Masculine, and *ūm*, Neuter, and Greek Nouns in *os*, Masculine, and *on*, Neuter.

1. The nominative adds *s* or *m* to the stem, the characteristic *Ů* being generally weakened to *ū*.

2. Some stems in *-ĕro* drop *o*, rejecting *s*: as, *puer* for *puĕros*, *tener* for *tenĕros*; and stems in which *-ro* follows a mute or *f*, drop *o*, reject *s*, and insert *e* before *r*; as, *magister* for *magistrŏs*, *niger* for *nigrŏs*.

Dominus, a lord, m.

Singular.	Plural.
NOM. <i>dŏmīnūs</i> , <i>lord</i> .	<i>dŏmīnī</i> , <i>lords</i> .
GEN. <i>dŏmīnī</i> , <i>of a lord</i> .	<i>dŏmīnŏrum</i> , <i>of lords</i> .
DAT. <i>dŏmīnŏ</i> , <i>to or for a lord</i> .	<i>dŏmīnīs</i> , <i>to or for lords</i> .
ACC. <i>dŏmīnūm</i> , <i>lord</i> .	<i>dŏmīnŏs</i> , <i>lords</i> .
VOC. <i>dŏmīnĕ</i> , <i>O lord</i> .	<i>dŏmīnī</i> , <i>O lords</i> .
ABL. <i>dŏmīnŏ</i> , <i>by, with, or from a lord</i> .	<i>dŏmīnīs</i> , <i>by, with, or from lords</i> .

Puer, a boy, m.

NOM. <i>pŭĕr</i> , <i>boy</i> .	<i>pŭĕrī</i> , <i>boys</i> .
GEN. <i>pŭĕrī</i> , <i>of a boy</i> .	<i>pŭĕrŏrŭm</i> , <i>of boys</i> .
DAT. <i>pŭĕrŏ</i> , <i>to or for a boy</i> .	<i>pŭĕrīs</i> , <i>to or for boys</i> .
ACC. <i>pŭĕrŭm</i> , <i>boy</i> .	<i>pŭĕrŏs</i> , <i>boys</i> .
VOC. <i>pŭĕr</i> , <i>O boy</i> .	<i>pŭĕrī</i> , <i>O boys</i> .
ABL. <i>pŭĕrŏ</i> , <i>by, with, or from a boy</i> .	<i>pŭĕrīs</i> , <i>by, with, or from boys</i> .

Ager, a field, m.

Singular.	Plural.
NOM. <i>āġĕr</i> ,	<i>āġrī</i> ,
GEN. <i>āġrī</i> ,	<i>āġrŏrŭm</i> ,
DAT. <i>āġrŏ</i> ,	<i>āġrīs</i> ,
ACC. <i>āġrŭm</i> ,	<i>āġrŏs</i> ,
VOC. <i>āġĕr</i> ,	<i>āġrī</i> ,
ABL. <i>āġrŏ</i> .	<i>āġrīs</i> .

Vir, a man, m.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>vīr</i> ,	<i>vīrī</i> ,
<i>vīrī</i> ,	<i>vīrŏrŭm</i> ,
<i>vīrŏ</i> ,	<i>vīrīs</i> ,
<i>vīrŭm</i> ,	<i>vīrŏs</i> ,
<i>vīr</i> ,	<i>vīrī</i> ,
<i>vīrŏ</i> .	<i>vīrīs</i> .

Fīlīūs, a son, m.

Singular.	Plural.
NOM. fīlīūs,	fīlīī,
GEN. fīlī or fīlī,	fīlīōrūm,
DAT. fīlīō,	fīlīīs,
ACC. fīlīūm,	fīlīōs,
VOC. fīlī,	fīlīī,
ABL. fīlīō.	fīlīīs.

Bellum, war, n.

Singular.	Plural.
bellūm,	bellā,
bellī,	bellōrūm,
bellō,	bellīs,
bellūm,	bellā,
bellūm,	bellā,
bellō.	bellīs.

22. For the sake of brevity, the declension of neuters may be given as follows :

Singular.	Plural.
NOM., ACC., and VOC. bellūm,	bellā,
GEN. bellī,	bellōrum,
DAT. and ABL. bellō.	bellīs.

23. The masculine form in ūs of adjectives and participles of the second declension is declined like dōmīnūs, the neuter in ūm like bellūm ; the masculine of most adjectives in ěr of the second declension is declined like āgěr, that of the rest like pŭěr. Thus horridūs (masc.), horridūm (neut.), *dreadful* ; pīgěr (masc.), pīgrūm (neut.), *lazy* ; mīsěr (masc.), mīsěrūm (neut.), *wretched* ; horridā bellā, *dreadful wars* ; pŭěrīs pīgrīs, *to lazy boys* ; dōmīnī mīsěrī, *of a wretched lord*.

Note.—The masc. of the adj. sātŭr, *full*, is the only word in the second declension ending in -ŭr.

1. Like pŭěr are declined (1) ādultěr, gĕnĕr, Lībĕr, lībĕrī (children), sōĉĕr, vespĕr, sometimes Mulcībĕr ; (2) words ending in fĕr and gĕr from fĕro and gĕro : as, si-gnīfĕr, armīgĕr ; (3) Celtībĕrī and Ibĕrī (plural).

2. The endings ōs, ōm, were used even to the Augustan age after v, u, qu : as, servōs, equōs (or ěcūs).

3. Proper names in -īūs, also fīlīūs, *son*, and gĕnīūs, *familiar spirit*, contract the vocative into ī : as, Claudī, Vergīlī. So mĕūs, *my*, in the vocative sing. masc., as mī fīlī, *my son*.

Pompĕī (*O Pompĕius*) is further contracted by Horace into Pompĕī ; so Vultĕī, *O Vultĕius*.

Foreign proper names in īus do not contract the vocative : as, Darīĕ, *O Darīus* !

4. The genitive singular of nouns having -īūs, -īūm in the nominative, was contracted into i till the Augustan age, and is so written by Vergil (except in two instances) and Horace.

Propertius and Ovid are the first who wrote constantly ii, which then became the usual form: but Manilius, Persius, and Martial prefer i.

5. The genitive plural in ūm for ōrūm appears in (1) names of coins, weights, measures, and trades: nummus, sestertius, medimnus, modius, talentum, jugerum, stadium, faber: so dēnūm tālentūm, praefectūs fābrūm, (fabrōrūm is also found); (2) in some names of people: Argīvūm (ōm), of the Argives; Dānāūm, of the Dānaāns. Poets often use it in words of short penult, and in numeral and compound adjectives; as, vīrūm, for virōrum; magnānīmūm Rūtūlūm.

6. A contracted dative and ablative plural is found; as, Grāīs, from Grāīūs; dīs, from dēūs.

7. Pēlāgūs, sea, vīrūs, poison, being neuter, have acc. and voc. the same as the nom. Vulgūs, common people, is generally neuter, but sometimes masculine. Pēlāgūs has a Greek plural, pēlāgē; vīrūs and vulgūs have no plural.

8. The locative form in the second declension ends in the singular in ī, in the plural in īs: as, bellī, at war; hūmī, on the ground; vespērī, at evening; Cōrinthī, at Corinth; Veīīs, at Veii.

9. Dēūs, a god, is thus declined:

Singular.	Plural.
NOM. dēūs,	dēī, dīī, or dī,
GEN. dēī,	dēōrūm,
DAT. dēō,	dēīs, dīīs, or dīs,
ACC. dēūm,	dēōs,
VOC. dēūs,	dēī, dīī, or dī,
ABL. dēō.	dēīs, dīīs, or dīs.

Note.—In poetry, and in solemn religious forms (as treaties, etc.), the voc. sing. of other words in -ūs is sometimes like the nominative: as, audī tū, pōpūlūs Albānūs, hear thou, people of Alba!

24. **Exceptions in Gender.**—Names of towns, and many names of trees, plants, and gems are feminine: as, Cōrinthūs, Corinth: pōpūlūs, a poplar tree; smaragdūs, an emerald. Feminine also are alvūs, paunch; cōlūs, distaff; hūmūs, ground, and vannūs, a winnowing-fan: and some Greek words, of which the most frequent are Arctūs (ōs), the Great Bear; ātōmus, an atom; carbāsūs, fine flax, a linen curtain, etc. (the pl. carbāsā is neuter); diālectūs, dialect, and phārūs, light-house. For the neuter, see § 23, 7.

25. GREEK NOUNS.

Dēlōs, f.	Andrōgeos, m.	Iliōn (or Ilium), n.
NOM. Dēlōs,	Andrōgēōs,	Iliōn,
GEN. Dēlī,	Andrōgēō or ī,	Iliī,
DAT. Dēlō,	Andrōgēō,	Iliō,
ACC. Dēlōn or Dēlūm,	Andrōgēō or ōn,	Iliōn,
VOC. Dēlē,	Andrōgēōs,	Iliōn,
ABL. Dēlō.	Andrōgēō.	Iliō.

1. The Greek genitive plural **ōn** is sometimes found : as, **Gēorgīcōn**, of the *Georgics*; **Philāenōn**, of the *Philæni*. Other plural forms are the same as in Latin nouns.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

26. CONSONANT STEMS AND **Ī-** STEMS.

1. The Consonant-Nouns, with few exceptions, have more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative Singular. Nouns thus increasing in the Genitive are called **Imparisyllables**.

2. The **I-** Nouns have, for the most part, the same number of syllables in the Genitive as in the Nominative. Nouns not increasing in the Genitive are called **Parisyllables**.

3. In the consonant stems the final stem consonant is in most cases preceded by a vowel, and this vowel is generally short.

4. A very large proportion of the **i-** stems have the syllable which precedes the **i** long.

5. Most of the **i-** nouns have not more than two syllables in the genitive singular.

CONSONANT NOUNS.

Jūdex, c., a judge.

Singular.	Plural.
NOM. jūdex,* a judge.	jūdicēs, judges.
GEN. jūdicīs, of a judge.	jūdicūm, of judges.
DAT. jūdicī, to or for a judge.	jūdicībūs, to or for judges.
ACC. jūdicēm, a judge.	jūdicēs, judges.
VOC. jūdex, thou judge.	jūdicēs, O judges, or ye judges.
ABL. jūdicē, by, with, or from a judge.	jūdicībūs, by, with, or from judges.

* **x** standing for **cs**.

Rēx, m.,
a king.

Aetās, f.,
age.

Cōmēs, c.,
a companion.

Pēs, m.,
a foot.

Singular.

NOM. rēx,	aetās,	cōmēs,	pēs,
GEN. rēgīs,	aetātīs,	cōmītīs,	pēdīs,
DAT. rēgī,	aetātī,	cōmītī,	pēdī,
ACC. rēgēm,	aetātēm,	cōmītēm,	pēdēm,
VOC. rēx,	aetās,	cōmēs,	pēs,
ABL. rēgē.	aetātē.	cōmītē.	pēdē.

Plural.

NOM. rēgēs,	aetātēs,	cōmītēs,	pēdēs,
GEN. rēgūm,	aetātūm (ium),	cōmītūm,	pēdūm,
DAT. rēgībūs,	aetātībūs,	cōmītībūs,	pēdībūs,
ACC. rēgēs,	aetātēs,	cōmītēs,	pēdēs,
VOC. rēgēs,	aetātēs (īs),	cōmītēs,	pēdēs,
ABL. rēgībūs.	aetātībūs.	cōmītībūs.	pēdībūs.

Princeps, c.,
a chief.

Lēō, m.,
a lion.

Virgō, f.,
a virgin.

Pāter, m.,
a father.

Singular.

NOM. princeps,	lēō,	virgō,	pāter,
GEN. principīs,	lēōnīs,	virgīnīs,	pātrīs,
DAT. principī,	lēōnī,	virgīnī,	pātrī,
ACC. principēm,	lēōnēm,	virgīnēm,	pātrēm,
VOC. princeps,	lēō,	virgō,	pāter,
ABL. principē.	lēōnē.	virgīnē.	pātrē.

Plural.

NOM. principēs,	lēōnēs,	virgīnēs,	pātrēs,
GEN. principūm,	lēōnūm,	virgīnūm,	pātrūm,
DAT. principībūs,	lēōnībūs,	virgīnībūs,	pātrībūs,
ACC. principēs,	lēōnēs,	virgīnēs,	pātrēs,
VOC. principēs,	lēōnēs,	virgīnēs,	pātrēs,
ABL. principībūs.	lēōnībūs.	virgīnībūs.	pātrībūs.

Căpăt, n.,
a head.

Nōmēn, n.,
a name.

Ōpūs, n.,
work.

Corpūs, n.,
a body.

Singular.

NOM. căpăt,
GEN. căpătīs,
DAT. căpătī,
ACC. căpăt,
VOC. căpăt,
ABL. căpătě.

nōmēn,
nōmīnīs,
nōmīnī,
nōmēn,
nōmēn,
nōmīně.

ōpūs,
ōpērīs,
ōpērī,
ōpūs,
ōpūs,
ōpērě.

corpūs,
corpōrīs,
corpōrī,
corpūs,
corpūs,
corpōrě.

Plural.

NOM. căpătă,
GEN. căpătūm,
DAT. căpătībūs,
ACC. căpătă,
VOC. căpătă,
ABL. căpătībūs.

nōmīnă,
nōmīnūm,
nōmīnībūs,
nōmīnă,
nōmīnă,
nōmīnībūs.

ōpěră,
ōpěrūm,
ōpěrībūs,
ōpěră,
ōpěră,
ōpěrībūs.

corpōră,
corpōrūm,
corpōrībūs,
corpōră,
corpōră,
corpōrībūs.

Note.—For the sake of brevity, the declension of neuters may be given as follows :

Singular.

NOM., ACC., and VOC. căpăt,
GEN. căpătīs,
DAT. căpătī,
ABL. căpătě.

Plural.

NOM., ACC., and VOC. căpătă,
GEN. căpătūm,
DAT. and ABL. căpătībūs.

I- NOUNS.

Tussīs, f.,
a cough.

Clāvīs, f.,
a key.

Imbēr, m.,
a shower.

Singular.

NOM. tussīs,
GEN. tussīs,
DAT. tussī,
ACC. tussīm,
VOC. tussīs,
ABL. tussī.

clāvīs,
clāvīs,
clāvi,
clāvēm or clāvīm,
clāvīs,
clāvě or clāvī.

imbēr,
imbrīs,
imbrī,
imbrēm,
imbēr,
imbrě or imbrī.

Plural.

NOM. tussēs,	clāvēs,	imbrēs,
GEN. tussiūm,	clāviūm,	imbriūm,
DAT. tussībūs,	clāvībūs,	imbrībūs,
ACC. tussēs (īs),	clāvēs (īs),	imbrēs (īs),
VOC. tussēs,	clāvēs,	imbrēs,
ABL. tussībūs.	clāvībūs.	imbrībūs.

Ōvīs, f.,
a sheep.

Nūbēs, f.,
a cloud.

Dens, m.,
a tooth.

Singular.

NOM. ōvīs,	nūbēs,	dens,
GEN. ōvīs,	nūbīs,	dentīs,
DAT. ōvī,	nūbī,	dentī,
ACC. ōvēm,	nūbēm,	dentēm,
VOC. ōvīs,	nūbēs,	dens,
ABL. ōvē.	nūbē.	dentē.

Plural.

NOM. ōvēs,	nūbēs,	dentēs,
GEN. ōviūm,	nūbiūm,	dentīūm,
DAT. ōvībūs,	nūbībūs,	dentībūs,
ACC. ōvēs or ōvīs,	nūbēs or nūbīs,	dentēs or dentīs,
VOC. ōvēs,	nūbēs,	dentēs,
ABL. ōvībūs.	nūbībūs.	dentībūs.

Rētē, n.,
a net.

Ānīmāl, n.,
an animal.

Mără, n.,
the sea.

Ōs, n.,
a bone.

Singular.

NOM. rētē,	ānīmāl,	mără,	ōs,
GEN. rētīs,	ānīmālīs,	mārīs,	ossīs,
DAT. rētī,	ānīmālī,	mārī,	ossī,
ACC. rētē,	ānīmāl,	mără,	ōs,
VOC. rētē,	ānīmāl,	mără,	ōs,
ABL. rētī (ē).	ānīmālī.	mārī (ē).	ossē.

Plural.

NOM. rētiā,	ānīmālīa,	māriā,	ossā,
GEN. rētiūm,	ānīmāliūm,	māriūm,	ossiūm,
DAT. rētibūs,	ānīmālībūs,	māribūs,	ossībūs,
ACC. rētiā,	ānīmālīā,	māriā,	ossā,
VOC. rētiā,	ānīmālīā,	māriā,	ossā,
ABL. rētibūs.	ānīmālībūs.	māribūs.	ossībūs.

27. For the sake of brevity, the declension of neuters may be given as follows :

Singular.

NOM., ACC., VOC. ōs,	ānīmāl,	mārē,
GEN. ossīs,	ānīmālīs,	mārīs,
DAT. ossī,	ānīmālī,	mārī,
ABL. ossē.	ānīmālī.	mārī (ē).

Plural.

NOM., ACC., VOC. ossā,	ānīmālīā,	māriā,
GEN. ossiūm,	ānīmāliūm,	māriūm,
DAT., ABL. ossībūs.	ānīmālībūs.	māribūs.

28. Adjectives and participles of the third declension are declined like nouns of similar terminations : as, *fēlīx*, *fēlīcīs*, *happy* ; *āmans*, *āmantis*, *loving* ; *puēris fēlīcībūs*, *for happy boys* ; *patrīs āmantīs*, *of a loving father*.

29. CASE TERMINATIONS.

I. The nominative singular in masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension, except liquids, regularly adds *s* to the stem ; but various modifications are introduced.

II. The terminations of the genitive singular in the third declension are as follows :

1. Nouns in *a* have their genitive in *ātis* : as, *poēma*, *poēmātis*, *a poem*. These nouns are neuter, and from the Greek.

2. Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is* : as, *sēdīle*, *sēdīlis*, *a seat*.

3. The nouns in *i* are Greek neuters. They are generally indeclinable, but some have the regular genitive in *is*. The compounds of *mēli*, *honey*, have their genitive in *ītis* : as, *hydromēli*, *hydromelītis*, *mead*.

4. Nouns in *o* have their genitive in *ōnis* : as, *pāvo*, *pavōnis*, *a peacock*.

Exc. 1.—Nouns in *do* and *go* have their genitive in *īnis*: as, *hirundo*, *hīrundīnis*, a swallow; *imāgo*, *imagīnis*, a likeness.

Exc. 2.—*Homo*, a man; *nemo*, no man; *turbo*, a whirlwind; and *Apollo* also have their genitive in *īnis*.

Exc. 3.—The following nouns in *do* and *go* have their genitive in *ōnis*: *praedo*, *cudo*, *udo*, *ligo*, *mango*, *spado*, *harpāgo*, *comēdo*, *unēdo*.

Exc. 4.—The names of peoples in *o* have generally *ōnis* in the genitive: as, *Macēdo*, *Macedōnis*. But *o* is long in *Iōnes*, *Lacōnes*, *Nasamōnes*, *Suessōnes*, and *Vettōnes*.

Exc. 5.—*Caro*, *flesh*, has its genitive *carnis*. *Anio*, the name of a river, has *Aniēnis*; *Nerio*, the wife of Mars, has *Neriēnis*.

5. Nouns in *y* are Greek neuters, and form their genitive by adding *is*, *s*, or *os*: as, *misy*, *misŷis* and *misys* or *misŷos*, *vitriol*.

6. There are only two nouns in *c*, viz.: *lac*, *lactis*, and *ālēc*, *alēcis*.

7. Nouns in *l* add *is* in the genitive: as, *sol*, *solis*, the sun.

Note.—*Mel*, *honey*, and *fel*, *poison*, double the *l*, making *mellis*, *fellis*.

8. Nouns in *ēn* have their genitive in *īnis*: as, *flūmēn*, *flūmīnis*.

9. Nouns in *ēn* add *is* in the genitive: as, *rēn*, *rēnis*, *kidney*.

10. Nouns in *r* add *is* in the genitive: as, *calcar*, *calcāris*, a spur; *nectar*, *nectāris*, *nectar*; *carcer*, *carcēris*, a prison.

Exc. 1.—Nouns in *ter* drop *e* in the genitive: as, *pāter*, *patris*, *father*; so also *imber*, a shower, and names of months in *ber*.

But *lāter*, *crātēr*, and *sōter* retain *e*.

Exc. 2.—*Lar* or *Lars* has for its genitive *Lartis*; *far*, *farris*; *hēpar*, *hepātis*; *iter*, *itinēris* (from an old nominative); *Jupīter*, *Jōvis*.

Exc. 3.—*Ebur*, *fēmur*, *jēcūr*, and *robur* have their genitive in *ōris*: as, *ebōris*; *fēmur* has also *fēmīnis*, and *jēcūr*, *jecinōris*, *jocinōris*, and *jocinēris*.

Note.—Most nouns in *or* have *ōris*: as, *āmor*, *amōris*, *love*. But *arbor*, *ador*, *aequor*, *marmor*, and the adjective *memor* have *ōris*. *Cor* has *cordis*.

11. Nouns in *as* have their genitive in *ātis*: as, *piētas*, *pietātis*, *dutiful affection*.

Exc. 1.—*Anas* has *anātis*; *as*, *assis*; *mas*, *māris*; *vas* (a surety), *vādis*, *vās* (a vessel), *vāsis*.

Exc. 2.—Greek masculines have *antis*: as, *Pallas*, the name of a warrior, *Pallantis*; feminines, *ādis*, as *Pallas*, a name of Minerva, *Pallādis*; and neuters, *ātis*, as, *artocrēas*, *artocreātis*.

Arcas, an *Arcadian*, and **Nōmas**, a *Numidian*, have **ādis**. **Mēlas**, the name of a river, has **Melānis**.

12. Nouns in **es** have their genitive in **is**, **ītis**, **ētis**, or **ētis**: as, **rūpes**, **rupis**, a *rock*; **mīles**, **milītis**, a *soldier*; **pāries**, **pariētis**, a *wall*; **quies**, **quiētis**, *rest*.

Exc. 1.—**Obses**, **praeses**, and the adjectives **deses** and **reses** have **īdis**; **pes** and its compounds have **ēdis**; **heres** and **merces** have **ēdis**.

Exc. 2.—The genitive of **bes** is **bessis**; of **Ceres**, **Cerēris**; of **pūbes** and **impūbes**, **pubēris** and **impubēris**. **Caeres** has **Caerītis** and **Caerētis**.

13. Nouns in **is** have their genitive the same as the nominative: as, **pānis**, **panis**, *bread*.

Exc. 1.—The following have **īdis**: **cassis**, **cuspis**, **lāpis**, and the Greek words **aegis** and **pyrāmis**.

Exc. 2.—The following have **ītis**: **Dis**, **lis**, **Quiris**, and **Samnis**.

Exc. 3.—**Cīnis** and **pulvis** have **ērīs**: as, **cinēris**. **Cucūmis** has **cucumērīs** and **cucūmis**.

Exc. 4.—**Glīs** has **glīris**; **pollis** (or *pollen*), **pollīnis**; **sanguis** (or *sanguen*), **sanguīnis**; **semis**, **semissis**.

Note.—Greek nouns in **is** have generally **is** or **īdis** in the genitive. **Chāris** has **Charītis**; **Salāmis**, **Salamīnis**; **Sīmōis**, **Simoentis**.

14. Of nouns in **os**, some have **ōtis**: as, **nepos**, **nepōtis**, a *grandson*, and some **ōris**: as, **flos**, **flōris**, a *flower*.

Exc.—**Custos** has **custōdis**; **ōs**, **ossis**; **bos**, **bōvis**. The adjectives **compos** and **impos** have **ōtis**. The Greek nouns **hērōs**, **Mīnōs**, and **Trōs** have **ōis**.

15. Nouns in **us** have their genitive in **ērīs** or **ōris**: as, **lātus**, **latēris**, *side*; **nēmus**, **nemōris**, a *grove*.

Exc. 1.—**Incus**, **pālus**, and **subscus** have **ūdis**; **pēcus**, a *single head of cattle*, a *beast*, has **pecūdis** (while **pēcus**, **pecōris** means *cattle* collectively); **tellus** has **tellūris**, and **Vēnus**, **Venēris**.

Exc. 2.—Monosyllables which have a long **u** have their genitive in **ūris**; as, **crūs**, *the leg*. **Grus** and **sus** have **uis**; the adjective **vētus**, **vetēris**; and **intercus**, **intercūtis**.

Exc. 3.—Some Greek proper names in **us** have **untis**: as, **Trāpēzūs**. Compounds ending in **pūs** (πούς) have **pōdis**: as, **tripus** and **Ædīpus**; but the latter is sometimes, and **polypūs** always, made in the second declension. **Rhūs** has **rhois** and **roris**.

16. Greek nouns in **ys** have the genitive in **yis**, contracted **ys**, or in the Greek form **yos**. A few, as **chlamys**, have **ŷdis**.

17. The only nouns ending in **aes** are **aes**, **aeris**, and **praes**, **praedis**.

18. There are only two words in *aus*; *laus*, *laudis*, and *fraus*, *fraudis*.

19. Nouns in *ls*, *ns*, or *rs* have their genitive in *tis*: *as*, *puls*, *pultis*; *fons*, *fontis*; *pars*, *partis*. Nouns in *s*, *bs*, *ms*, or *ps* have their genitive in *is*: *as*, *urbs*, *urbis*; *hiem(p)s*, *hiēmis*; *stirps*, *stirpis*.

Exc. 1.—*Frons*, *glans*, *juglans*, *lens*, and *librīpens* have *dis*: *as*, *frondis*. *Tiryns* has *Tirynthis*.

Exc. 2.—*Gryps* has *grýphis*. Compounds in *ceps* (from *capio*) have *īpis*, as *princeps*, *prīncīpis*. But *anceps* has *aucūpis*.

Exc. 3.—Adjectives in *ceps*, derived from *caput*, have their genitive in *cīpītis*: *as*, *anceps*, *ancipītis*.

20. Nouns in *t* have their genitive in *ītis*. They are *caput*, *capītis*, and its compounds, *occīput* and *sincīput*.

21. Nouns in *x* have their genitive in *cis* or *gis*: *as*, *vōx*, *vōcis*, *voice*; *lēx*, *lēgis*, *law*.

1. Latin nouns in *ax* have *ācis*, except *fax*, *fācis*. Most Greek nouns in *ax* have *ācis*, a few *ācis*; Greek names of men in *nax* have *nactis*; *as*, *Astyānax*, *Astyanactis*.

2. Words in *ex* generally have *īcis*: *as*, *judex*, *judīcis*; but *rex* and *lex* have *ēgis*; *aquīlex*, *grex*, and *lelex* have *ēgis*; *nex*, *foenisex*, and the obsolete *prex* have *ēcis*; *vervex* and *Myrmex*, *ēcis*. *Remex* has *remīgis*; *senex*, *senis*; *supellex*, *suppellectīlis*.

3. Nouns in *ix* have *īcis*, less frequently *īcis*. *Nix* has *nīvis*, and *strix*, *strīgis*.

4. The words in *ox* have *ōcis*; but *Cappādox* and the adjective *praecox* have *ōcis*. *Nox* has *noctis*; *Allōbrox*, *Allobrōgis*.

5. *CruX*, *dux*, *nux*, and the adjective *trux* have the genitive in *ūcis*; the *u* before *c* is long only in the genitive of *lux*, *lūcis*, and *Pollux*, *Pollūcis*. *Conjunnx* (or *conjux*) has *conjūgis*; the obsolete *frux* has *frūgis*.

6. The words in *yx* are Greek; the genitive may be *ŷcis*, *ŷcis*, *ŷgis*, *ŷgis*, or *ŷchis*.

7. *Faex*, *faecis* is the only word ending in *aex*; the only word in *aux* is *faux*, *faucis*.

III. The dative singular had an old form in *ē*, retained in some phrases.

IV. The termination *-im* in the accusative singular is retained

1. *Always* in *āmussis*, *būris*, *rāvis*, *tussis*, *cūcūmis*, *sītis*, *vīs*, and the adverb *partim* (originally an accusative);

2. *For the most part*, but interchanging with *-em*, in *fēbris*, *pelvis*, *puppis*, *restis*, *sēcūris*, *turris*;

3. Sometimes, but more often changed to -em, in *clāvis*, *nāvis*, and *sēmentis* ;

4. In some Greek nouns and names of rivers.

V. The termination -i in the ablative singular is retained.

1. In nouns which have -im in the accusative (*restī* is doubtful) ;

2. Often in *amnis*, *āvis*, *axis*, *bīlis*, *bīpennis*, *cānālis*, *cīvis*, *fustis*, *imber*, and (in certain formulas) in *ignis* ;

3. In neuter nouns in -e, -al, and -ar ; with the exception of *jūbar*, *baccar*, and *nectar*, names of towns ending in *ě*, and sometimes *māre* and *rēte* ;

4. In nouns in -is (-ālis, -āris, -ilis, -ensis), and names of months in -is, -er, which were originally adjectives ; but such nouns often (*aedīlis* generally), and proper names of this kind almost always, have e. *Jūvēnis* has always *juvēne*.

VI. The pure locative in -ī is found in such forms as *orbī*, *rūrī*, *Lacedaemōnī*, *Tībūrī*.

VII. The nominative and accusative plural of neuter nouns generally end in a ; but nouns in e, al, and ar, have ia.

VIII. A nominative plural in is or eis occurs sometimes in Plautus and Lucretius.

IX. The genitive plural in ium is found

1. In parisyllabic nouns in -es and -is ; except *cānis*, *jūvēnis*, *mensis*, *sēdēs*, *struēs*, *sūbōlēs*, *vātēs*, sometimes *āpis*, and usually *vōlūcris* ;

2. In *imber*, *linter*, *ūter*, *venter*, *sēquester*, *Insūber* ;

3. In gentile nouns in -as and -is, as *Arpīnās*, *Quīrīs* (but not in names of men ; thus, *Maecēnātum*, of *Maecenases*) ;

4. In *dos*, *lis*, often in abstracts in -tas, as *cīvitas*, less frequently in abstracts in -tus, as *virtus* ;

5. In *ars*, *as*, *dens*, *nox*, *ōs*, *puls*, *sēmis* ; most frequently in original participles in -ns, as *pārens*, *sāpiens* ; in *fraus*, *frons*, *laus* ; rarely in *compes*, *pālus* ;

6. In *arx*, *falx*, *faux*, *merx* ;

7. In *urbs*, *stirps* ;

8. In *glis*, *vis*, *mas*, *lar*, *nix*, and sometimes in *lien*, *mus*, *rēnēs*.

X. Some plural words in -ālia, -īlia, -āria, follow the second declension in their genitive plural : as, *Compitali-orum* ; *ancili-orum*.

XI. Nouns which have **-ium** in the genitive plural have in the classical period **-is** as well as **-es** in the **accusative plural**. A still older form in **-eis** occurs.

30. RULES FOR GENDER.

1. Concrete nouns in **-io** are **masculine**; as, *scorpio*, a scorpion; *pūgio*, a dagger.

2. Abstract and collective nouns in **-io** are **feminine**; as, *rātio*, reason; *lēgio*, a legion.

3. Nouns in **-do** and **-go**, with the genitive in **-īnis**, are **feminine**: as, *magnitūdo*, greatness; *īmāgo*, a likeness.

4. Other nouns in **-o**, together with *ordo*, *cardo*, and *margo*, are **masculine**.

5. Nouns in **-ās -ātis**, **-ēs -ētis**, **-īs -ītis**, **-ōs -ōtis**, **-ūs -ūtis**, and **-ūs -ūdis**, are **feminine**.

6. Parisyllables in **-ēs** are **feminine**.

7. Parisyllables in **-is** are **feminine**. But the following are **masculine**: nouns ending in **-nis**; also *axis*, *būris*, *caulis*, *collis*, *ensis*, *fascis*, *follis*, *fustis*, *mensis*, *mūgīlis*, *orbis*, *piscis*, *postis*, *sentis*, *torris*, *unguis*, *vectis*, *vermis*.

8. Nouns in **-īs -īdis** are **feminine**; except *lāpis*, **masculine**.

9. Nouns in **-īs -ēris**, and **-īs -īnis** are **masculine**.

10. Nouns in **-ēs -ītis** are **masculine**; except *merges*, **feminine**.

11. Nouns in **s** with a consonant before it are **feminine**; except *dens*, *fons*, *mons*, and *pons*, which are **masculine**.

12. Nouns in **x** are **feminine**; but *cālīx*, *fornīx*, *grex*, and most in **-ex -īcis** and **-ix -īcis** are **masculine**.

13. Nouns in **-ōs -ōris**, **-ōr -ōris**, **-ēr -ris** are **masculine**.

14. Nouns in **-ēr -ēris**; **-ōr -ōris**; **-ūr -ūris** and *ōris*; **-ūs -ēris** and **-ōris**; **-ūs -ūris** (monosyllabic); **-āl -ālis**; **-ār -āris**; **-ē -is**; and **-ēn -īnis** are **neuter**. But *arbor* is **feminine**; and *agger*, *carcer*, *furfur*, *lāter*, and *pecten*, are **masculine**.

15. The monosyllables *as*, *mus*, *ren*, *sol*, and *sal*, are **masculine**; *fraus*, *grus*, *laus*, *sus*, and *vis*, **feminine**; *aes*, *cor*, *far*, *fel*, *lac*, *mel*, *ōs*, *ōs*, *vas*, and *ver*, **neuter**.

16. *Pāriēs* and *pēs* are **masculine**; *ānās*, *pēcūs*, *sēgēs*, and *tēgēs*, **feminine**; and *cāput*, **neuter**.

Note 1.—Names of animals with neuter terminations are **masculine** : as, *lěpūs, lěpōris*, a hare.

Note 2.—Nouns derived from the Greek retain their original gender.

Note 3.—No rules of this kind can supersede the use of the Lexicon.

31. NOUNS IRREGULAR IN DECLENSION.

Note.—The stems of *bōs*, *grūs*, and *sūs* end in *u* (*v*). So the stem *Jōv* in *Jūpīter* (for *Jovpāter*).

Bōs, m. or f.,
ox or cow.

Jūpīter, m.,
Jupiter.

Sūs, m. or f.,
a swine.

Singular.

NOM. <i>bōs</i> ,	<i>Jūpītēr</i> ,	<i>sūs</i> ,
GEN. <i>bōvīs</i> ,	<i>Jōvīs</i> ,	<i>sūīs</i> ,
DAT. <i>bōvī</i> ,	<i>Jōvī</i> ,	<i>sūī</i> ,
ACC. <i>bōvēm</i> ,	<i>Jōvēm</i> ,	<i>sūēm</i> ,
VOC. <i>bōs</i> ,	<i>Jūpītēr</i> ,	<i>sūs</i> ,
ABL. <i>bōvē</i> .	<i>Jōvē</i> .	<i>sūě</i> .

Plural.

NOM. <i>bōvēs</i> ,	<i>sūēs</i> ,
GEN. <i>bōūm</i> ,	<i>sūūm</i> ,
DAT. <i>būbūs or bōbūs</i> ,	<i>sūībūs or sūbūs</i> ,
ACC. <i>bōvēs</i> ,	<i>sūēs</i> ,
VOC. <i>bōvēs</i> ,	<i>sūēs</i> ,
ABL. <i>būbūs or bōbūs</i> .	<i>sūībūs or sūbūs</i> .

Vīs, f.,
strength.

Nix, f.,
snow.

Sēnex, c.,
old man or woman.

Singular.

NOM. <i>vīs</i> ,	<i>nix</i> ,	<i>sēnex</i> ,
GEN. (<i>vīs</i> , <i>rare</i>),	<i>nīvīs</i> ,	<i>sēnīs</i> ,
DAT. (<i>vī</i> , <i>rare</i>),	<i>nīvī</i> ,	<i>sēnī</i> ,
ACC. <i>vīm</i> ,	<i>nīvēm</i> ,	<i>sēněm</i> ,
VOC. (<i>wanting</i>),	<i>nix</i> ,	<i>sēnex</i> ,
ABL. <i>vī</i> .	<i>nīvě</i> .	<i>sēně</i> .

	Plural.	
NOM. vīrēs,	nīvēs,	sēnēs,
GEN. vīriūm,	nīviūm,	sēnūm,
DAT. vīrībūs,	nīvībūs,	sēnībūs,
ACC. vīrēs,	nīvēs,	sēnēs,
VOC. vīrēs,	nīvēs,	sēnēs,
ABL. vīrībūs.	nīvībūs.	sēnībūs.

32. GREEK NOUNS.

Tēthŷs, f.	Atreus, m.	Sōcrātēs, m.	Achillēs, m.
NOM. Tēthŷs,	Atrēus,	Sōcrātēs,	Achillēs or Achilleūs,
GEN. Tēthŷis or Tēthŷōs,	Atrēī (ēī) or Atrēōs,	Socrātī or Socrātis,	Achillīs, -ī or Achillēōs, -ēī,
DAT. Tēthŷī,	Atrēō (ēō),	Socrātī,	Achillī or Achillēī,
ACC. Tēthŷm or Tēthŷn,	Atrēūm or Atrēā,	Socrātēm or Socrātēn,	Achillēm, -ēn or Achillēā,
VOC. Tēthŷ,	Atrēū,	Socrātēs or Socrātē,	Achillē, -ēs or Achilleū,
ABL. Tēthŷē.	Atrēō (ēō).	Socrāte,	Achillē or Achillī.

Hērōs, m.,
hero.

Tigrīs,
a tiger.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM. hērōs,	hērōēs,	tigrīs,	tigrēs,
GEN. hērōīs,	hērōūm,	tigrīs or tigrīdīs,	tigrīūm,
DAT. hērōī,	hērōībūs (īsīn),	tigrī (tigrīdī),	tigrībūs,
ACC. hērōēm or hērōā,	hērōēs, -ās,	tigrim or tigrin,	tigrēs or tigrīdas,
VOC. hērōs,	hērōēs,	tigrīs,	tigrēs,
ABL. hērōē.	hērōībūs (īsīn).	tigrē or tigrīdē.	tigrībūs.

33. Many Greek nouns of the third declension prefer the gen. in -ī (as of the second declension) to that in -īs: as, **Pericles**, gen. **Periclī** (rather than **Periclis**).

1. The Greek gen. in -ōs, the acc. in -ā, the nom. plur. in ēs, ē, and the acc. plur. in -ās, ē, are often preferred to the Latin terminations.

2. As the Greek gen. plur. in -ōn is sometimes found in the second declension, so is that in -eōn in the third: as, **Metamorphoseōn**, of the *Metamorphoses*.

3. In poetry, the dat. and abl. plur. sometimes end in -sī, before vowels -sīn.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

U- STEMS.

34. Nouns of the Fourth Declension end in *us*, Masculine or Feminine, and *u*, Neuter. They are thus declined :

Grādūs, m., a step.

Singular.	Plural.
NOM. grādūs,	grādūs,
GEN. grādūs,	grādūŭm,
DAT. grādūī,	grādībūs,
ACC. grādūm,	grādūs,
VOC. grādūs,	grādūs,
ABL. grādū.	grādībūs.

Gĕnū, n., knee.

Singular.	Plural.
gĕnū,	gĕnūā,
gĕnūs,	gĕnūŭm,
gĕnū,	gĕnībūs,
gĕnū,	gĕnūā,
gĕnū,	gĕnūā,
gĕnū.	gĕnībūs.

1. Several nouns of this declension have also forms belonging to the second : as, *caestūs*, abl. plur. *caestībūs* and *caestīs*.

Dōmūs, a house, f., is thus declined :

Singular.

Plural.

NOM. dōmūs,	dōmūs,
GEN. dōmūs,	dōmūŭm or dōmōrŭm,
LOC. dōmī (rarely dōmūī),	
DAT. dōmūī (rarely dōmō),	dōmībūs,
ACC. dōmūm,	dōmōs or dōmūs,
VOC. dōmūs,	dōmūs,
ABL. dōmō (rarely dōmū).	dōmībūs.

2. Many *u* stems in the earlier Latin had the genitive singular in *i* : as, *sĕnātūs*, gen. *sĕnātī*.

3. The dative in *ui* is often contracted into *ū* : as, *parce mētū*, Verg.

4. The dative and ablative plural in *ūbus* is retained always by *ācus*, *arcus*, and *tribus* ; usually by *artus*, *lācus*, *partus*, *portus*, *spĕcus*, and *vĕru* ; and sometimes by *gĕnu*, *tōnītrus*, and *Quinquātrūs*.

5. Most nouns of this declension in *us* are masculine ; but the following are feminine : *ācus*, *dōmus*, *mānus*, *porticus*,

tribus, *Idūs* (plural), *Quinquātrūs* (plural); and words denoting females or plants. *Spēcus*, m., is rarely feminine.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

E- STEMS.

35. Nouns of the Fifth Declension end in *ēs*, and are of the Feminine Gender.

They are thus declined :

<i>Diēs</i> , c., <i>a day.</i>	<i>Rēs</i> , f., <i>a thing.</i>	<i>Fīdēs</i> , f., <i>faith.</i>
Singular.		
NOM. <i>diēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	<i>fīdēs</i> ,
GEN. <i>diēī</i> ,	<i>rēī</i> ,	<i>fīdēī</i> ,
DAT. <i>diēī</i> ,	<i>rēī</i> ,	<i>fīdēī</i> ,
ACC. <i>diēm</i> ,	<i>rēm</i> ,	<i>fīdēm</i> ,
VOC. <i>diēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	<i>fīdēs</i> ,
ABL. <i>diē</i> .	<i>rē</i> .	<i>fīdē</i> .
Plural.		
NOM. <i>diēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	(no plural.)
GEN. <i>diērūm</i> ,	<i>rērūm</i> ,	
DAT. <i>diēbūs</i> ,	<i>rēbūs</i> ,	
ACC. <i>diēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	
VOC. <i>diēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	
ABL. <i>diēbūs</i> .	<i>rēbūs</i> .	

1. *Diēs* and *rēs* are the only nouns of the fifth declension which have all the cases in both numbers.

2. In the termination *ei* of the genitive and dative, *e* is long after *i*, as, *prōgēniēi*; but short, in the classical period, after a consonant.

3. The termination *ei* was also contracted into *ē*, and anciently into *ī*, as *dīē*, *dīī*. Examples: *constantis jūvēnem fīdē*, and *commissa fīdē*, Hor.; *mūnēra laetītiāque dii*, Verg.

4. The phrases *die crastīni*, *die proxīmi*, *die septīmi*,

are examples of the locative case in this declension. So *cōtīdie*, *postrīdie*.

5. All nouns of the fifth declension are feminine; except *dies*, which, if it means *a day*, is in the singular usually, and in the plural always, masculine; but if it means *time*, *dies* is feminine.

36. GENERAL VIEW OF ALL THE DECLENSIONS.

Singular.				
1st Decl.	2d Decl.	3d Decl.	4th Decl.	5th Decl.
NOM. <i>mensā,</i>	<i>servūs,</i>	<i>hōnōr,</i>	<i>fructūs,</i>	<i>dīēs,</i>
GEN. <i>mensae,</i>	<i>servī,</i>	<i>hōnōris,</i>	<i>fructūs,</i>	<i>diēi,</i>
DAT. <i>mensae,</i>	<i>servō,</i>	<i>hōnōrī,</i>	<i>fructūī,</i>	<i>diēī,</i>
ACC. <i>mensām,</i>	<i>servūm,</i>	<i>hōnōrēm,</i>	<i>fructūm,</i>	<i>diēm,</i>
VOC. <i>mensā,</i>	<i>servē,</i>	<i>hōnōr,</i>	<i>fructūs,</i>	<i>dīēs,</i>
ABL. <i>mensā.</i>	<i>servō.</i>	<i>hōnōrē.</i>	<i>fructū.</i>	<i>diē.</i>
Plural,				
NOM. <i>mensae,</i>	<i>servī,</i>	<i>hōnōrēs,</i>	<i>fructūs,</i>	<i>dīēs,</i>
GEN. <i>mensārum,</i>	<i>servōrūm,</i>	<i>hōnōrūm,</i>	<i>fructūm,</i>	<i>diērūm,</i>
DAT. <i>mensīs,</i>	<i>servīs,</i>	<i>hōnōrībūs,</i>	<i>fructībūs,</i>	<i>diēbūs,</i>
ACC. <i>mensās,</i>	<i>servōs,</i>	<i>hōnōrēs,</i>	<i>fructūs,</i>	<i>dīēs,</i>
VOC. <i>mensae,</i>	<i>servī,</i>	<i>hōnōrēs,</i>	<i>fructūs,</i>	<i>dīēs,</i>
ABL. <i>mensīs.</i>	<i>servīs.</i>	<i>hōnōrībūs.</i>	<i>fructībūs.</i>	<i>diēbūs.</i>

37. DEFECTIVE AND IRREGULAR NOUNS.

1. Some nouns are defective in number, or case, or both.

2. The following have the singular, but rarely the plural:

a Most proper names: as, *Cīcēro*, *Rōma*.

b Abstract nouns: as, *justītia*, *justice*.

c Words which indicate material: as, *aurum*, *gold*; *hordeum*, *barley*.

d Words signifying a whole, without reference to the individual: as, *plebs*, *the people*; *sūpellex*, *furniture*.

e Other words which from their signification are never used in the plural: as, *pontus*, *the sea*; *sanguis*, *blood*; *sōpōr*, *sleep*; *līmus*, *mud*; *hūmus*, *the ground*.

Note 1.—But proper names have a plural when several of one name are mentioned: as, *duodēcim Caesārēs*, *the twelve Caesars*; also when they are used as common nouns: as, *multi Cātīlīnae*, *many Catilines*, i. e., *many abandoned men*.

Note 2.—When different things of a kind, or different manifestations of the same thing, are specified, the plural is used: as, *vīna*, *wines*; *ōdia*, *various instances of hatred*.

Note 3.—The poets often use plurals which are not met with in prose: as, *sīlentia*, *silences* or *silence*.

3. The following are used almost solely in the plural:

a Words denoting individuals appearing in great numbers, in groups, or in pairs: as, *majōres*, *ancestors*; *lībēri*, *children* (also sing.); *excūbiae*, *night-watch*; *artus*, *limbs* (rarely sing.); *līia*, *the loins*.

b Names of things which have many parts: as, *arma*, *armor*; *balneae*, *a bath-house*; *exūviae*, *spoils* (stripped from the dead); *moenia*, *fortifications*.

c Names of festivals and periods: as, *Sāturnālia*, *the feast of Saturn*; *Kālendae*, *the Calends*; *Nōnae*, *the Nones*; *Idus*, *the Ides*.

d The following, with many more, come under one or other of the above heads; those marked *s.* are sometimes, though rarely, used in the sing.:

ambāges, *a round-about way* (see 5, below); *evasive language* or *conduct*.

angustiae, *a strait*, *s.*

argūtiae, *witticisms*, *acuteness*, *s.*

bīgae (*quadrīgae*), etc., *a chariot and pair* (or *and four*), *s.*

blandītia, *flattery*, *s.*

clītellae, *a pack-saddle*.

compēdes, *shackles*, *s.*

crēpundi-a, *-ōrum*, *n.*, *a (child's) rattle*.

cūnābūl-a, and *incūnābūl-a*, *ōrum*, *n.*, *a cradle*.

cūnae, *a cradle*.

dēlīciae, *darling*, *s.*

dīvītia, *wealth*, *s.*

ēpūlae, *a banquet*, *s.*

exsēquiae, *funeral rites*.

ext-a, *-orum*, *n.*, *entrails*.

fasti, *a calendar*.

fauces, *the throat*, *s.*

grātes, *thanks*.

hābēnae, *reins*, *s.*

indūciae, *a truce*.

infēriae, *offering to the dead*.

īnīmīcītia, *enmity*, *s.*

insīdiae, *ambush*, *s.*

lībēri, *m.*, *children*, *s.*

mīnae, *threats*.

mūni-a, *-orum*, *n.*, *duties*.

nūgae, *trifles*.

nuptiae, *a marriage-feast*.

prēces, *prayers*, *s.*

rēlīquiae, *remnant*, *s.*

sālīnae, *salt-pits*.

scālae, *a ladder*, *s.*

tēnēbrae, *darkness*, *s.*

valvae, *folding-doors*, *s.*

4. Many names of towns (as consisting of parts), mountains (as groups or ridges), and hills, have no singular; as,

Acrōcērauni-a, -orum, n.
Alp-es, -ium (s. rare).
Am̄ycl-ae, -arum.
Athēn-ae, -arum.
Ecbātān-a, -orum.
Esquili-ae, -arum.

Gābi-i, -orum.
Pārīsi-i, -orum.
Phīlipp-i, -ōrum.
Sŷrācūs-ae, -arum.
Thermōpŷl-ae, -arum.
Vēi-i, -ōrum.

5. The following nouns, among others, want some of their cases :

admōnītu, abl. only, *admonition*.
aes, *brass*; wants gen. plur.
ambāge, abl., *a round-about*; plur. complete.
aplustre, nom. and acc., *curved stern of a ship*; plur., **aplustr-a**, or **-ia**.
astu, nom., acc., abl. s., *a city*.
astus, nom. sing., and acc. plur., *craft*; abl. sing., **astu**.
cācōēthes, nom. and acc., *bad habit*; plur., nom. and acc., **cacoethē**; acc., also **-es**.
caelīte, abl., *inhabitant of heaven*; plur. complete.
cānīties, **-em** (acc.), **-e** (abl.), *hoariness*.
chaos, nom. and acc.; **chao**, abl.; *chaos*.
compēdis, gen., and **compēde**, abl., *a fetter*; plur. complete.
(daps), nom. wanting, *a feast*; rest of sing. and plur. complete.
(dīcio), nom. wanting; rest of sing. complete; no plur.; *power*.
diu, abl., *by day*.
far, *corn*; wants gen., dat., and abl. plur.
fas, *right*; only nom. and acc. s.
fauce, abl., *the throat*; plur. complete.
fōras, (to) *out of doors*; **fōris**, *abroad*; acc. and abl.
fors, *chance*; abl. **forte**.
(frux), *fruit*; nom. wanting.

grātes, *thanks*; nom., acc., and abl. plur. (**grātibus**).
hiemps, *winter*; wants gen., dat., and abl. plur.
impētis, gen., and **impete**, abl., *vehemence*; plur. **impetibus**.
infītias, acc. plur., *a denial*.
ingrātīis, abl. plur., *against one's will*.
injussu, abl., *without orders*.
instar, nom. and acc., *likeness*.
jūgēris, gen., and abl. **jūgēre**, *an acre*; plur. **-a**, **-um**, **-ibus**, etc.
jussu, abl., *by command*.
lux, *light*; wants gen. plur.
māne, nom. and acc.; abl., rarely **māne** or **māni**, *the morning*.
mel, *honey*; wants gen., dat., and abl. plur.
mēlōs, *melody*, nom. and acc.; **mēlo**, dat.; plur., nom. and acc., **mēle**.
mētus, *fear*; wants gen., dat., and abl. plur.
mōnītu, abl., *admonition*.
nātu, abl., *by birth*.
nauci, gen., as in the phrase, *Non nauci est*, *It is not worth a nutshell*.
nēfas, nom. and acc., *wrong* (by divine law).
nēmo, *nobody*; wants voc. sing. and all the plur. The gen. and abl. are rare.
nīhīl, nom. and acc., *nothing*.

noctu, abl., *by night*.

ōpis, gen.; ōpem, acc.; ōpe, abl.,
help; plur. complete.

ōpus, *need*, nom. and acc.

ōs, *the mouth*; wants gen. plur.

pax, *peace*; wants gen. plur.

pessum, *to the bad*; acc.

prēci, dat.; prēcem, acc.; and prēce,
abl., *prayer*; plur. complete.

promptu, abl., *with readiness*.

pūs, *matter from suppuration*; wants
gen., dat., and abl. plur.

rēpētundārum, gen. plur.; and rē-
pētundis, abl., *extortion*. (Supply
rerum, rebus.)

rōgātu, abl., *by request*.

rūs, *the country*; wants gen., dat.,
and abl. plur.

sēcus, *sex*; only nom. and acc.

sītus, *situation*, nom.; -um, acc.;
-u, abl.; -ūs, nom. and acc. plur.

sōl, *the sun*; wants gen. plur.

sordis, gen.; sordem, acc.; sord-e
and -i, abl., *filth*; plur. complete.

spontis, gen. (very rare); sponte,
abl., *of one's own accord*.

sūbōles, *offspring*; wants gen. plur.

Tempē, *a valley in Thessaly*; only in
nom., acc., and voc. plur.

thūs, *frankincense*; wants gen., dat.,
and abl. plur.

vēnui and vēno, dat.; vēnum, acc.;
and vēno, abl., *sale*.

veprem, acc.; vepre, abl., *a brier*;
plur. complete.

vesper, *evening*; vesp̄rum, acc.;
vesp̄r-e, -i, or -o, abl.

vesp̄r-a, -am, -a (abl.), *the even-
ing*.

vīcis, gen.; vīci, dat.; vīcem, acc.;
and vīce, abl., *change*; plur. com-
plete except gen.

vīs, vim, vi; gen. and dat. rare;
plur., vīres, vīrium, etc., *strength*.

6. Some nouns have a plural differing in gender and in formation from the singular. These are called **Metaplasts** or **Heterogeneous**:

Singular.

Masc.

Avernus, *Avernus (lake)*.

Dindŷmus, *Dindymus (mt.)*.

Ismārus, *Ismarus (mt.)*.

Maenālus, *Maenalus (mt.)*.

Tartārus, *Tartarus*.

Masc.

intŭbus, *(the plant) endive*.

jōcus, *a joke*.

lōcus, *a place*.

sībīlus, *a hissing*.

Fem.

carbāsus, *a species of flax*.

Hiērōsōlŷm-a, -ae, *Jerusalem*.

Plural.

Neut.

Averna.

Dindŷma.

Ismāra.

Maenāla.

Tartāra, etc.

Masc. or Neut.

intŭba and intŭbi.

jōci and jōca. [*sages in books*].

lōca, places, and lōci, spots, or pas-

sībīla (and sībīli).

Fem. or Neut.

(carbāsi) and carbāsa (n.).

Hiērōsōlŷm-a, -ōrum (n.).

Neut.
Argos, *Argos*.
caelum, *Heaven*.
Elýsium, *Elysium*.
porrum, *a leek*.
sĭser, (*the plant*) *skirret*.

Masc.
Argi.
caeli.
Elysii.
porri.
sĭsĕres.

Neut.
frĕnum, *a bridle*.
rastrum, *a rake*.

Masc. or Neut.
frĕni and **frĕna**.
rastri and **rastra**.

Neut.
balneum, *a bath*.
ĕpŭlum, *a feast*.
nundĭnum, *a market*.
 So also **vās**, **vāsis**, *n.*, *a vessel* (3d Decl.).

Fem.
balneae and **balnea** (*n.*).
ĕpŭlae.
nundĭnae, *a fair*.
vās-a, **-ōrum** (2d Decl.), *n.*

7. Some nouns have two or more forms in one or more of the oblique cases, derivable from the same form in the nom. These are called **Heteroclites**: as,

dŏmus, *f.*, *a house* (see § 34).
fāmes, *f.*, *hunger*; *abl.*, **famĕ** (3d Decl.), or **famē** (5th).
pecŭs, **pecŭdis**, *f.*, *a single head of cattle*; and **pecus**, **pecŏris**, *n.*, *cattle collectively*.
pĭnus, *a pine*; also **fĭcus**, *a fig-tree*; and **laurus**, *a bay* (2d Decl.); but in *abl. sing.*, *nom.* and *acc. plur.* (4th Decl.).
rĕqui-es, **-ĕtis**, *f.*, *rest*; *acc.*, **-em** (5th), or **-etem** (3d).
satrāp-es, **-ae** (1st), and **satrap-es**, **-is** (3d), *a satrap or governor*.
sĕnāt-us, **-i**, or **-us**, *the senate*.

8. Some nouns have two forms of the same or different declensions. They are called **Abundantia**, or **Redundant**: as,

bācŭl-us, or **-um** (2d), *a staff*.
balte-us, or **-um** (2d), *a girdle*.
clĭpe-us, or **-um** (2d), *a shield*.
dilŭvi-um, **-i** (2d); **-o**, **-ōnis** (3d); and **dilŭvi-es**, **-ēi** (5th), *a flood*.
dŭrĭti-a, **-ae** (1st), or **duriti-es**, **-ēi** (5th), *hardness*.
event-us, **-ŭs** (4th), or **-um**, **-i** (2d), *an occurrence*.
jŭvent-ŭs, **-ŭtis** (3d), or **juvent-a**, **-ae** (1st), *youth*.
luxŭri-a, **-ae** (1st), and **luxuri-es**, **-ēi** (5th), *luxury*.
māterĭ-a, **-ae** (1st), or **māterĭ-es**, **ēi** (5th), *material, stuff*.
plebs, **plĕb-is** or **plĕb-ēs**, **plĕb-is** (3d), or **plĕb-ēs**, **-ei** (5th), *the commons*.
sestertius (2d m.), *a sesterce, about four cents*; **sestertium** (2d n.), *a thousand sesterces*.

vesper, gen. **vespĕr-i** (2d); or **vesper**, gen. **vespĕr-is** (3d); or **vespĕr-a, -ae** (1st), *the evening*; with many others.

9. Some nouns have a meaning in the plural more or less different from that of the singular: as,

Singular.

aedes, a temple.
āqua, water.
auxĭlium, help.
bŏnum, a good, a blessing.
carcer, a prison.
castrum, a fort.
cĕra, wax.
cōdĭcillus, a bit of wood.
cōmĭtium, a place of meeting.
cōpia, plenty.
fācultas, a power or faculty.
fĭdes, harp-string.
fĭnis, an end.
fortūna, fortune.
grātia, favor.
impĕdĭmentum, a hindrance.
littĕra, a letter of the alphabet.

lūdus, play, a fencing-school.
lustrum, a period of five years.
nāris, a nostril.
nātālis, a birthday.
ŏpĕra, labor, toil.
ŏpis, *gen.*, help.
pars, a part.

plāga, region.
rostrum, a beak.

sāl, salt.
tābella, tablet.
tābŭla, a board, plank.

tŏrus, a couch.

Plural.

aedes, temples, or a house.
āquae, waters, or medicinal springs.
auxĭlia, auxiliary troops.
bŏna, goods, property.
carcĕres, a starting-post, barriers.
castra, a camp.
cĕrae, waxen tablets or busts.
cōdĭcilli, tablets.
cōmĭtia, the Assembly at Rome.
cōpiae, troops, stores, resources.
fācultates, means or resources.
fĭdes, lyre.
fĭnes, boundaries or territory.
fortūnae, gifts of fortune.
grātiae, thanks.
impĕdĭmenta, baggage.
littĕrae, letters of the alphabet, or an epistle, or literature.
lūdi, public games.
lustra, lairs, dens.
nārēs, the nose.
nātāles, pedigree, descent.
ŏpĕrae, workmen.
ŏpes, wealth, resources, power.
partes, parts; the part of an actor in a play; a party or faction.
plāgae, snares.
rostra, the hustings, or place from which the orators at Rome addressed the people.
sāles, wit, witticisms.
tābellae, documents.
tābŭlae, boards: an account-book, register; writing-tablets.
tŏri, muscles.

Note.—Many nouns in this list have occasionally in the singular the same meaning as that which is found in the plural.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

38. Adjectives and Participles are declined like Nouns of similar terminations.

1. The study of the declension of adjectives is therefore like a *review* of the corresponding declensions of nouns.

39. Adjectives of the **First** and **Second Declension** end in **us** or **er**, Masculine; **a**, Feminine; and **um**, Neuter; and are thus declined:

Bönūs, m., bönă, f., bönŭm, n., good.

	Singular.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	bönūs,	bönă,	bönŭm,
GEN.	bönī,	bönæ,	bönī,
DAT.	bönō,	bönæ,	bönō,
ACC.	bönŭm,	bönăm,	bönŭm,
VOC.	böně,	bönă,	bönŭm,
ABL.	bönō.	bönă.	bönō.

	Plural.		
NOM.	bönī,	bönæ,	bönă,
GEN.	bönōrŭm,	bönārŭm,	bönōrŭm,
DAT.	bönīs,	bönīs,	bönīs,
ACC.	bönōs,	bönās,	bönă,
VOC.	bönī,	bönæ,	bönă,
ABL.	bönīs.	bönīs.	bönīs.

Těněr, těněră, těněrŭm, tender.

	Singular.		
NOM.	těněr,	těněră,	těněrum,
GEN.	těněrī,	těněræ,	těněrī,
DAT.	těněrō,	těněræ,	těněrō,
ACC.	těněrŭm,	těněrăm,	těněrŭm,
VOC.	těněr,	těněră,	těněrŭm,
ABL.	těněrō.	těněră.	těněrō.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Plural.</i> <i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	tĕnĕrĭ,	tĕnĕrae,	tĕnĕră,
GEN.	tĕnĕrōrum,	tĕnĕrārum,	tĕnĕrōrum,
DAT.	tĕnĕrĭs,	tĕnĕrĭs,	tĕnĕrĭs,
ACC.	tĕnĕrōs,	tĕnĕrās,	tĕnĕră,
VOC.	tĕnĕrĭ,	tĕnĕrae,	tĕnĕră,
ABL.	tĕnĕrĭs.	tĕnĕrĭs.	tĕnĕrĭs.

Pĭġĕr, pigră, pigrŭm, lazy.

	<i>Singular.</i>	
NOM.	pĭġĕr,	pigrŭm,
GEN.	pigrĭ,	pigrĭ,
DAT.	pigrō,	pigrō,
ACC.	pigrŭm,	pigrŭm,
VOC.	pĭġĕr,	pigrŭm,
ABL.	pigrō.	pigrō.
	<i>Plural.</i>	
NOM.	pigrĭ,	pigră,
GEN.	pigrōrŭm,	pigrōrŭm,
DAT.	pigrĭs,	pigrĭs,
ACC.	pigrōs,	pigră,
VOC.	pigrĭ,	pigră,
ABL.	pigrĭs.	pigrĭs,

40. Participles ending in ūs, ă, ŭm are declined like bŏnŭs.

1. *Dextĕr, on the right hand*, has the two forms *dextĕră* and *dextră* in the feminine, and *dextĕrŭm* and *dextrŭm* in the neuter.

41. The following adjectives have the genitive singular in ĭŭs and the dative in ĭ: *ălius, nullus, sŏlus, tŏtus, ullus, ūnus, alter, ūter, neuter*. Thus:

Tŏtŭs, tŏtă, tŏtŭm, whole.

	<i>Singular.</i> <i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Masc.</i>		
NOM.	tŏtă,	tŏtŭm,
GEN.	tŏtĭŭs,	tŏtĭŭs,
DAT.	tŏtĭ,	tŏtĭ,
ACC.	tŏtăm,	tŏtŭm,
VOC.	tŏtă,	tŏtŭm,
ABL.	tŏtă.	tŏtŏ.

The plural is regular, like that of *bōnūs*.

1. The *ī* of the penult in these genitives is long, and takes the accent in prose, except in *altĕrĭūs*. In poetry it is sometimes shortened.

2. *Ālĭūs* has in its genitive singular *ālĭūs*, and in the dative *ālĭī*. In the nominative and accusative neuter it has *ālĭūd*.

3. Some of these adjectives and pronominal words are occasionally found with the common endings in the genitive or dative.

42. Adjectives of the **Third Declension** are of three classes: (1) a small number with **three terminations** in the nominative singular, one for each gender, **-ĕr, -rĭs, -rĕ**; (2) many with **two terminations**, **-ĭs** Masculine and Feminine, **-ĕ** Neuter, and comparatives in **-ōr** Masculine and Feminine, **-ūs** Neuter; and (3) many in **r, l, s, or x**, with **one termination** for all genders. They are thus declined:

Ācĕr or ācĭrĭs, ācĭrĭs, ācĕrĕ, sharp.

Singular.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. ācĕr,	ācĭrĭs,	ācĕrĕ,
GEN. ācĭrĭs,	ācĭrĭs,	ācĭrĭs,
DAT. ācĭī,	ācĭī,	ācĭī,
ACC. ācĕrĕm,	ācĕrĕm,	ācĕrĕ,
VOC. ācĕr,	ācĭrĭs,	ācĕrĕ,
ABL. ācĭī.	ācĭī.	ācĭī.

Plural.

NOM. ācĕrĕs,	ācĕrĕs,	ācĭrĭā,
GEN. ācĭrĭūm,	ācĭrĭūm,	ācĭrĭūm,
DAT. ācĭrĭbūs,	ācĭrĭbūs,	ācĭrĭbūs,
ACC. ācĕrĕs, ĭs,	ācĕrĕs, ĭs,	ācĭrĭā,
VOC. ācĕrĕs,	ācĕrĕs,	ācĭrĭā,
ABL. ācĭrĭbūs.	ācĭrĭbūs.	ācĭrĭbūs.

1. *Cĕlĕr, cĕlĕrĭs, cĕlĕrĕ, swift*, is the only adjective of this class which retains *e* before *r* through all the cases. Its genitive plural ends in *ium* when it is used merely as an adjective, but in *um* when it signifies the ancient body-guard at Rome, called *Cĕlĕrĕs*.

43. *Mītīs, mītē, mild.*

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>mītīs,</i>	<i>mītē,</i>	<i>mītēs,</i>	<i>mītiā,</i>
GEN. <i>mītīs,</i>	<i>mītīs,</i>	<i>mītiūm,</i>	<i>mītiūm,</i>
DAT. <i>mītī,</i>	<i>mītī,</i>	<i>mītībūs,</i>	<i>mītībūs,</i>
ACC. <i>mītēm,</i>	<i>mītē,</i>	<i>mītēs, īs,</i>	<i>mītiā,</i>
VOC. <i>mītīs,</i>	<i>mītē,</i>	<i>mītēs,</i>	<i>mītiā,</i>
ABL. <i>mītī.</i>	<i>mītī.</i>	<i>mītībūs,</i>	<i>mītībūs.</i>

1. An ablative singular in *ē* is sometimes found in poetry.

44.—1. *Mītiōr, mītiūs, milder.*

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>mītiōr,</i>	<i>mītiūs,</i>	<i>mītiōrēs,</i>	<i>mītiōrā,</i>
GEN. <i>mītiōrīs,</i>	<i>mītiōrīs,</i>	<i>mītiōrūm,</i>	<i>mītiōrūm,</i>
DAT. <i>mītiōrī,</i>	<i>mītiōrī,</i>	<i>mītiōrībūs,</i>	<i>mītiōrībūs,</i>
ACC. <i>mītiōrēm,</i>	<i>mītiūs,</i>	<i>mītiōrēs, -īs,</i>	<i>mītiōrā,</i>
VOC. <i>mītiōr,</i>	<i>mītiūs,</i>	<i>mītiōrēs,</i>	<i>mītiōrā,</i>
ABL. <i>mītiōrē, -ī.</i>	<i>mītiōrē, -ī.</i>	<i>mītiōrībūs.</i>	<i>mītiōrībūs.</i>

2. The comparative *plūs, more*, plural, *plūrēs, plūrā*, is thus declined :

Singular.	Plural.	
<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>plūs,</i>	<i>plūrēs,</i>	<i>plūrā (-iā),</i>
GEN. <i>plūrīs,</i>	<i>plūriūm,</i>	<i>plūriūm,</i>
DAT. <i>wanting,</i>	<i>plūrībūs,</i>	<i>plūrībūs,</i>
ACC. <i>plūs,</i>	<i>plūrēs, -īs,</i>	<i>plūra (-ia),</i>
ABL. <i>plūrē.</i>	<i>plūrībūs.</i>	<i>plūrībūs.</i>

3. The comparative degree was formed by adding to the clipt stem the termination *-iōs*, which was changed in the nom. sing., masc. and fem., to *iōr*, in the oblique cases to *iōr*, and appears in the neut. nom. sing. as *iūs*.

4. *Complūrēs, several*, is declined like *plūrēs*.

5. The ablative in *-i* in comparatives is rare.

6. *Plūrēs* and *complūrēs* are the only comparatives which have the gen. plur. in *ium*.

45. **Fēlix**, *happy*; (x = cs). **Prūdēns**, *wise*. **Vētūs**, *old*.

Singular.

Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
NOM. fēlix,		prūdēns,		vētūs,	
GEN. fēlicīs,		prūdētīs,		vētērīs,	
DAT. fēlicī,		prūdētī,		vētērī,	
ACC. fēlicēm, fēlix,		prūdētēm, prūdēns,		vētērēm, vētūs,	
VOC. fēlix,		prūdēns,		vētūs,	
ABL. fēlicī, -ē.		prūdētī, -ē.		vētērē.	

Plural.

NOM. fēlicēs, fēliciā,	prūdētēs, prūdētiā,	vētērēs, vētērā,
GEN. fēliciūm,	prūdētiūm,	vētērūm,
DAT. fēlicībūs,	prūdētibūs,	vētēribūs,
ACC. fēlicēs, -īs, fēliciā,	prūdētēs, -īs, prūdētiā,	vētērēs, vētērā,
VOC. fēlicēs, fēliciā,	prūdētēs, prūdētiā,	vētērēs, vētērā,
ABL. fēlicībūs.	prūdētibūs.	vētēribūs.

Āmans, *loving*.

Iens, *going*.

Singular.

Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
NOM. āmans,		iens,	
GEN. āmantīs,		euntīs,	
DAT. āmantī,		euntī,	
ACC. āmantēm, āmans,		euntēm, iens,	
VOC. āmans,		iens,	
ABL. āmantē, -ī.		euntē, -ī.	

Plural.

NOM. āmantēs, āmantīa,	euntēs, euntīa,
GEN. āmantīūm,	euntīūm,
DAT. āmantībūs,	euntībūs,
ACC. āmantēs, āmantia,	euntēs, euntīa,
VOC. āmantēs, āmantia,	euntēs, euntīa,
ABL. āmantībūs.	euntībūs.

1. The **ablative singular** of adjectives of one termination ends commonly in -ī; but when used as nouns they have -ē.

2. **Participles**, used as such, have -ē in the **ablative**; when used as adjectives or nouns, more commonly -ī.

3. **Consonant-stems**, in which the vowel before the final consonant is long, or which end in two consonants, have -ium in the **genitive plural**;

as, *audāc-ium, prūdent-ium*. Those which have a short vowel before the final consonant have *-um*. These rules, however, have some exceptions.

Participles also have *-ium*; but when used as nouns they have sometimes *-um*.

4. Composite adjectives follow in the genitive plural the declension of the nouns or adjectives from which they are derived: as, *concors, concordum*; *anceps, ancīpītum*; *quadrūpes, quadrūpēdum*. Their neuter plural, however, has generally *ia*: as, *ancīpītia, versicōlōria, quadrūpēdia*.

46. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

1. Some adjectives have two forms, one like *bōnūs*, the other like *tristīs* or *prūdēns*:

acclivīs (ūs), steep;

bījūgīs (ūs), two-yoked;

effrēnūs (īs), unbridled;

ūnānīmūs (īs), of one mind;

hīlārīs (ūs), cheerful;

imbēcillūs (īs), weak;

imberbīs (ūs), beardless;

īnermūs (īs), unarmed;

ōpulentūs (ōpūlens), wealthy;

violētūs (violens), violent.

So *exānīm-ūs, īs*; *sēmiānīm-ūs, īs*; *sublīm-īs, ūs*; and others.

The Adverb *lūcūlentēr* implies an old form *lūcūlens*.

2. Some adjectives are defective in Number:

pauci, few, is rarely sing. (Hor. *ad Pis.* 203); *plērīque*, most, is found sing. with collective words: "*plērāque nōbīlitas*" (for *plērīque nōbīles*), Sallust.

3. Some adjectives are defective in Case and Number:

a. Two cases:

Nom. Sing. *pernox*, Abl. *pernocte*, all night. Nom. and Acc. Sing. *nēcessē*, necessary, from *necessis* (obsolete). *Necessum*, from *necessus* (obs.), is found in old poetry.

b. One case:

Nom. sing. *damnas*, condemned (for *damnāt(u)s*), with *esto*: but used also idiomatically as Nom. Pl. with *sunto*; *exspes*, hopeless; *pōtis*, pōte, able, possible.

c. Of some, the Nominatives are not found, but other cases only:

(sons), guilty; *sontes*, the guilty: but *insons*, innocent, has full cases. *Macte*, Voc. Sing., *macti*, Voc. Pl., are used with *esto*, *este*, be blessed, be lucky, etc. *Macte* (*macti*) *virtūte esto* (*este*), good luck to you for your valor.

d. The Dat. Sing. *frūgi*, for *good*, is used as an indeclinable adjective of all cases: *frugi servus*, a *good honest slave*. Opposed to this is the indeclinable adjective *nēquam*, *good for nothing*.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

47. Adjectives are compared regularly by adding to the consonant-stem* of the Positive the terminations **-ior**, Masculine and Feminine, and **-ius**, Neuter, for the **Comparative**, and **-issīmus**, **-a**, **-um**, for the **Superlative**: as,

Pos.	Comp.	Superl.
dūrūs,	dūriōr,	dūriissīmus, <i>hard, harder, hardest.</i>
tristīs,	tristiōr,	tristissīmus, <i>sad, sadder, saddest.</i>
fēlix,	fēliciōr,	fēlicissīmus, <i>happy, happier, happiest.</i>

1. Before Augustus, the superlative ended in *ūmus* instead of *īmus*.

48. Adjectives in **-ēr** form the superlative by adding **-rīmūs** to the nominative: † as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
cēlēr, <i>swift</i> ;	cēlēriōr,	cēlerrīmūs.
pulchēr, <i>beautiful</i> ;	pulchriōr,	pulcherrīmūs.

Note.—*Vētus* has in the superlative *vēterrīmūs* (comparative *vētustior*, rarely *vētērior*); *mātūrus*, *mātūriissīmus* and *māturrīmūs*; *sālūbris*, *sālūberrīmūs*.

1. Six adjectives in *īlis* form the superlative by changing *īs* into *līmūs*; † they are

fācīlīs, <i>easy</i> ;	sīmīlīs, <i>like</i> ;	grācīlīs, <i>slender</i> ;
diffīcīlīs, <i>hard</i> ;	dissīmīlīs, <i>unlike</i> ;	hūmīlīs, <i>lowly</i> .

Thus: Pos. *fācīlīs*, Comp. *fācīliōr*, SUPERL. *fācillīmūs*.

49. IRREGULAR OR DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

1. The following adjectives are either deficient in the positive degree, or form their comparative and superlative irregularly or from a different stem:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bōnus, good,	mēlior, better,	optīmus, best.
mālus, bad,	pējor, worse,	pessīmus, worst.

* That is, the clipt stem, left after the removal from the full stem of the vowel after its last consonant.

† In other words, they double the last consonant of the uncontracted stem, and change the termination to *īmus*.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
māgnus, great,	mājor, greater,	māximus, greatest.
parvus, small,	mīnor, less,	mīnīmus,* least.
multus, much,	plūs (<i>neut.</i>), more,	plūrīmus, most.
nēquam (<i>indecl.</i>), wicked,	nēquior,	nēquissīmus.
dīvēs, } rich,	{ dīvītior,	{ dīvītissīmus (Cic.).
dīs, }	{ dītior,	{ dītissīmus (Aug. and
sēnex, old,	sēnior,	post-Aug.).
jūvēnis, young,	{ jūnior (<i>sometimes</i>	(nātu māxīmus).
	post-Aug. jūvē-	(nātu mīnīmus).
	nior),	(nātu mīnīmus).
ādūlescens, young,	adulescentior,	pōtissīmus, best.
pōtis, pōtē (<i>indecl.</i>), }	pōtior, better,	ōcissīmus.
able, possible, }	ōcīor, swifter,	frūgālissīmus.
(no positive, cf. ὀκτός),	frūgālīor,	egentissīmus.
frūgi (<i>indecl.</i>),	egentior,	benevolentissīmus.
ēgēns, }	benevolentior,	malevolentissīmus.
ēgēnus, }	malevolentior,	maledīcentissīmus.
bēnēvolus,	maledīcentior,	beneficentissīmus.
bēnēvolens (Plaut., Ter.), }	beneficentior,	maleficentissīmus.
mālēvolus,	magnificentior,	magnificentissīmus.
mālēvolens (Plaut.), }		munificentissīmus.
mālēdīcus,		{ mirificissīmus (Ter.
mālēdīcens (Plaut.), }		once).
bēnēfīcus,		honorificentissīmus.
mālēfīcus,		providentissīmus.
magnīfīcus,		cītīmus.
mūnīfīcus,		dētērrīmus.
mīrīfīcus,		{ extrēmū.
hōnōrīfīcus,		{ extīmus.
prōvīdus, }	honorificentior,	
prōvīdens, }	providentior,	
cītrā (<i>adv.</i>), on this side,	cītērior,	
dē (<i>prep.</i>), down from,	dētērior, worse,	
extrā (<i>adv.</i>), extēr (<i>adj.</i>), }	extērior,	
outside (<i>very rare in</i>		
<i>sing.</i>), externus,		
īnfērā (<i>adv.</i>), infēr (<i>adj.</i>), }	infērior,	{ infīmus.
low, (<i>chiefly used in</i>		{ īmus.
<i>plur.</i> , the beings, places,		
etc., below), }		

* Also *parvissīmus* (Varro and Lucretius).

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>intrā</i> (<i>adv.</i>), within,	<i>intērior</i> , inner,	<i>intīmus</i> , inmost.
<i>post</i> , <i>postērus</i> , next (<i>in time</i>),	{ <i>postērior</i> , hinder,	{ <i>postrēmus</i> , last.
	later,	{ <i>postūmus</i> , last-born.
<i>prae</i> (<i>prep.</i>), before,	<i>prīor</i> , former,	<i>prīmus</i> , first.
<i>prōpe</i> (<i>adv.</i>), near,	<i>prōpior</i> ,	<i>proxīmus</i> .
<i>suprā</i> (<i>adv.</i>), <i>sūpēr</i> (<i>adj.</i>),	{ <i>sūpērior</i> ,	{ <i>suprēmus</i> , highest,
high, (<i>chiefly used in plur.</i> the beings, places, etc., above),		
<i>ultrā</i> (<i>adv.</i>), beyond,	<i>ultērior</i> , farther,	<i>ultīmus</i> , farthest.

2. The following have the superlative, but not the comparative: *bellus*, *caesius*, *dīversus*, *falsus*, *inclūtus*, *invictus*, *invītus*, *mēritus*, *nōvus*, *sācer*, *vāfer*.

3. The following have the comparative, but not the superlative:

Verbals in *-īlis* (except *amābilissimus*, *mōbilissimus*, *fertilissimus*, *ūtilissimus*, *nōbilissimus*):

ālācer, *agrestis*, *arcānus*, *caecus*, *diūturnus*, *exīlis*, *jējūnus*, *jūvēnis*, *longinquus*, *oblīquus*, *ōpīmus*, *proclīvis*, *prōnus*, *sātur*, *segnis*, *sēnex*, *sērus*, *sūpīnus*, *surdus*, *tācītus*, *tempestīvus*, *vīcīnus*.

Sīnister has the superlative *sīnistīmus* only in augurial language.

50. Many adjectives, which express an absolute state or quality (as *material*, e. g., *aureus*; *time*, e. g., *nocturnus*; *special relationship*, e. g., *pāternus*), which does not readily admit the idea of a higher or lower degree, have no comparative or superlative. In some others they are wanting without any such apparent reason.

If a comparison is required in such adjectives, the defect is supplied by adding *māgis* and *maxīme*. Thus, *magis mīrus*, *more wonderful*, *maxime mirus*, *most wonderful*.

Adjectives used only in the positive are chiefly of the following classes:

1. Derivatives ending in *-īcus*, *-īnus*, *-īvus*, *-ōrus*, *-tīmus*, *-ūlus*, *-ālis* or *-āris*, *-īlis*, and (from nouns) in *-ātus* and *-ītus*, as *cīvīcus*, *nātūrālis*, etc., *barbātus*, *crīnītus*.

Exceptions: *aequalior*; *capitalior*; *civilior* (Ov.); *familiarior*, *familiarissimus*; *frugalior*, *frugalissimus*; *hospitalissimus* (Cic.); *juvenilior* (Ov.); *liberalior*, *liberalissimus*; *popularior*; *puerilior* (Hor.); *salutarior*.

2. Compounds; as, *inops*, *magnanīmus*, etc.

Except those named above from *volo*, *dico*, *facio* (49, 1).

Except also *amentior*, *amentissimus*; *concordior*, *concordissimus*; *deformior*; *dementior*, *dementissimus*; *immānior*, *immanissimus*; *inertior*, *inertissimus*; *ingentior*; *insignior*; *misericordior*; *perennior*; *sollertior*, *sollertissimus*.

3. Adjectives ending in *-us*, preceded by a vowel.

Exc. a. *U* often is, or becomes, consonantal, and thus allows a comparative or superlative without difficulty; as in *-quus* and *-guis*; *e. g.* *antīquior*, *antiquissimus*; *pinguior*, *pinguissimus*; *propinquior*; *salutarior*; *tenuis*, *tenuior*, *tenuissimus*.

b. *industrior* (Plaut.); *piissimus* (condemned by Cic. *Phil.* 13, 19, but used by Antony, Sen., Curt., Tac.).

4. The following, also, have at least ordinarily only the positive: *albus*, *almus*, *calvus*, *cānus*, *claudus*, *curvus*, *fērus*, *gnārus*, *gnāvus*, *lassus*, *mēdiōcris*, *mēmōr*, *immēmōr*, *mīrus*, *rūdis*, *trux*.

51. Many present and past participles have comparatives and superlatives; as,

1. Present Participle:

amans, *appētens*, *ardens*, *contīnens*, *egens*, *fervens*, *flagrans*, *florens*, *indulgens*, *neglēgens*, *patiens*, *tempērans*, *tuens*, *valens*, etc.

2. Past Participle:

acceptus, *accurātus*, *adstrictus*, *apertus*, *aversus*, *concitātus*, *conjunctus*, *contemptus*, *dissolūtus*, *doctus*, *effusus*, *eruditus*, *exoptātus*, *expeditus*, *instructus*, *intentus*, *munītus*, *obstinātus*, *parātus*, *perdītus*, *perfectus*, *promptus*, *refertus*, *remōtus*, etc.

52. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

1. *Adverbs* in *ē*, *ō*, *ē*, *tēr*, etc., derived from Adjectives, often follow their Comparison, with Comparative ending *ūs*, Superlative *ē* (*ō*, *um*):

Adj.	Adv.		Compar.	Superl.
<i>dignus</i>	<i>dignē</i>	<i>worthily</i>	<i>dignius</i>	<i>dignissimē</i>
<i>vāfer</i>	<i>vāfrē</i>	<i>cunningly</i>	<i>vāfrius</i>	<i>vāferrimē</i>
<i>tūtus</i>	<i>tuto</i>	<i>safely</i>	<i>tutius</i>	<i>tutissimē</i> (<i>ō</i>)
<i>facilis</i>	<i>facilē</i>	<i>easily</i>	<i>facilius</i>	<i>facillimē</i>
<i>fortis</i>	<i>fortiter</i>	<i>bravely</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortissimē</i>
<i>constans</i>	<i>constanter</i>	<i>firmly</i>	<i>constantius</i>	<i>constantissimē</i>
<i>audax</i>	<i>audacter</i>	<i>boldly</i>	<i>audācius</i>	<i>audācissimē</i>
<i>mēritus</i>	<i>mērito</i>	<i>deservedly</i>	—	<i>meritissimō</i> (<i>ē</i>)
<i>uber</i>	<i>ubertim</i>	<i>abundantly</i>	<i>uberius</i>	<i>uberrimē</i>

Adj.	Adv.		Compar.		Superl.	
<i>bōnus</i>	<i>bēnē</i>	<i>well</i>	<i>mēlius</i>	<i>better</i>	<i>optīmē</i>	<i>best</i>
<i>mālus</i>	<i>mālē</i>	<i>ill</i>	<i>pejus</i>	<i>worse</i>	<i>pessīmē</i>	<i>worst</i>
<i>magnus</i>	<i>magnopērē</i>	<i>greatly</i>	<i>māgis</i>	<i>more</i>	<i>maxīmē</i>	<i>most</i>
<i>parvus</i>	<i>paulum</i>	<i>a little</i>	<i>mīnus</i>	<i>less</i>	<i>mīnīmē</i>	<i>very little</i>
	<i>pārum</i>	<i>too little</i>			<i>mīnimum</i>	<i>least</i>
<i>multus</i>	<i>multum</i>	<i>much</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>more</i>	<i>plūrimum</i>	<i>very much</i>
—	—	—	<i>ōcius</i>	<i>quicker</i>	<i>ōcissīmē</i>	<i>very quickly</i>

Adv.		Compar.	Superl.
—	—	prius <i>sooner</i>	{ primum <i>first</i> primo <i>at first</i>
—	—	pōtius <i>rather</i>	potissimum <i>preferably</i>
—	—	dētērius <i>worse</i>	detrēmē <i>very badly</i>
intus	<i>within</i>	interius	intīmē
post	<i>after</i>	posterius	postrēmo
prōpe	<i>nearly</i>	propius	proxīmē

So also : saepē, *often*, saepiūs, saepissīme ; diū, *long*, diūtiūs, diūtissīme ; pēnītūs, *deeply*, pēnītīūs, pēnītissīme ; sātīs, *enough*, sātīūs ; sēcūs, *otherwise*, sētīūs ; tempērī, *betimes*, tempērīūs ; nūpēr, *lately*, nūperrīme.

Note.—Māgīs means *more in degree*; plūs, *more in quantity*.

53. NOTES ON COMPARISON.

1. The **Comparative** may imply a degree *too* high (higher than is right), or *rather* high, *somewhat* high (higher than ordinary) : as, vōluptas cum major est atque longior, etc., when pleasure is *too great* and *too long continued*; sēnectus est lōquāciōr, old age is *rather talkative*.

2. When two adjectives or adverbs are compared with each other, both are often put in the comparative : as, longior quam lātior, *rather long than broad*; fortius quam fēlīciūs, *with more courage than success*. But with māgīs—quam, each word is in the positive : as, māgīs audacter quam parātē.

3. The **Superlative** may denote simply a *very* high degree : as, vir doctissīmus, a *very learned man* (i. e., in the highest grade of learning).

4. Vel, *even*, and quam, with or without possum, *as much as possible*, before the Superlative, render it more emphatic.

5. The Superlative with quisque denotes *each single one* who possesses the quality in the highest degree, but is best translated with *all* or *always* : as, optīmūs quisque, *all the best men*, or *the best man always*.

6. Per and prae in composition often denote a **high degree** of a quality; sub a **low degree**.

NUMERALS.

54. The **Cardinal Numerals** are adjectives answering the question Quot, *how many?* as, ūnus, *one*; quinque, *five*.

1. The **Ordinal Numerals** are adjectives answering the question Quōtus, *which in order of number?* as, quintus, *the fifth*.

2. The **Distributive Numerals** are adjectives answering the question **Quotēni**, *how many each?* or *how many each time?* as, **quini**, *five apiece*, or *by fives*, *five at a time*.

3. The **Numeral Adverbs** answer the question **Quotiens**, *how often?* as, **semel**, *once*; **quinquies** (or **quinqüens**), *five times*.

CARDINAL NUMERALS.

Arabic.	Roman Symbols.	Cardinals.
1	I	ūnus, a, um, <i>one</i> .
2	II	duō, ae, o, <i>two</i> .
3	III	trēs, tria.
4	IIII or IV	quattuor.
5	V	quinque.
6	VI	sex.
7	VII	septem.
8	VIII	octo.
9	VIIII or IX	nōvem.
10	X	dēcem.
11	XI	undēcim.
12	XII	duodēcim.
13	XIII	trēdēcim; decem et tres; tres et decem.
14	XIIII or XIV	quattuordēcim; decem et quattuor.
15	XV	quindēcim.
16	XVI	sēdēcim; sexdēcim; decem et sex.
17	XVII	decem et septem; s. et d.; septemdēcim.
18	XVIII	duōdēviginti (decem et octo).
19	XVIIII or XIX	undēviginti (decem et novem).
20	XX	vīginti.
21	XXI	unus et viginti; viginti unus.
22	XXII	duo et viginti; viginti duo.
28	XXVIII	duodetrīginta (octo et viginti).
29	XXIX	undetrīginta (novem et viginti).
30	XXX	trīgintā.
40	XL	quadrāginta.
50	L	quinqūāginta.
60	LX	sexāginta.
70	LXX	septuāginta.
80	LXXX	octōginta.
90	XC	nōnāginta.
98	IIC	nonaginta octo; octo et nonaginta.
99	IC	nonaginta novem; undēcentum.

CARDINAL NUMBERS—(Continued).

Arabic.	Roman Symbols.	Cardinals.
100	C	centum.
101	CI	centum et unus; centum unus.
136	CXXXVI	centum et triginta sex; c. tr. s.
200	CC	dūcenti, ae, a.
300	CCC	trēcenti, ae, a.
400	CCCC	quadringenti, ae, a.
500	I ₀ or D	quingenti, ae, a.
600	I ₀ C or DC	sescenti, ae, a.
700	I ₀ CC or DCC	septingenti, ae, a.
800	I ₀ CCC or DCCC	octingenti, ae, a.
900	I ₀ CCCC or DCCCC	nongenti, ae, a.
1,000	CI ₀ or M	mille.
2,000	CI ₀ CI ₀ or MM	duo millia (bis mille).
5,000	I ₀₀	quinque millia.
10,000	CCI ₀₀	decem millia.
50,000	I ₀₀₀	quinguaginta millia.
100,000	CCCI ₀₀₀	centum millia; centēna millia.
1,000,000	CCCCI ₀₀₀₀	dēcies centum millia; dēcies.

ORDINALS, DISTRIBUTIVES, AND NUMERAL ADVERBS.

Arabic.	Ordinals. -us, -a, -um.	Distributives. -i, -ae, -a.	Numeral Adverbs. (-ies or -iens.)
1	prīmus, <i>first</i>	singŭli, <i>one by one</i>	sēmēl, <i>once.</i>
2	sēcundus (<i>or alter</i>), <i>second</i>	bīni, <i>two by two</i>	bis, <i>twice.</i>
3	tertius, <i>third</i>	terni <i>or</i> trīni	ter, <i>thrice.</i>
4	quartus	quāterni	quāter, <i>four times.</i>
5	quintus	quīni	quinq̄ies <i>or</i> quinq̄uiens.
6	sextus	sēni	sexies.
7	septīmus	septēni	septies.
8	octāvus	octōni	octies.
9	nōnus	nōvēni	nōvies.
10	dēcīmus	dēni	dēcies.

ORDINALS, DISTRIBUTIVES, AND NUMERAL ADVERBS

(Continued).

Arabic.	Ordinals. -us, -a, -um.	Distributives. -i, -ae, -a.	Numeral Adverbs. (-ies or -iens.)
11	undĕcĭmus	undĕni	undĕcies.
12	duodecĭmus	duodeni	duodecies.
13	tertius decĭmus (decĭmus et tertius)	terni deni	terdecies or trĕdecies.
14	quartus decĭmus (decĭmus et quartus)	quaterni deni	quattuordecies or quater d.
15	quintus decĭmus	quĭni deni	quindecies or quinquies d.
16	sextus decĭmus	seni deni	sĕdecies or sexies decies.
17	septĭmus decĭmus	septeni deni	septiesdecies.
18	duodevicĕsĭmus (octavus decĭmus)	duodevicĕni	duodevicies or octies d.
19	undevicesĭmus (nonus decĭmus)	undeviceni	undevicies or novies d.
20	vĭcĕsĭmus (vigĕsimus) or vicĕsimus	vĭcĕni	vĭcies.
21	unus et vicesĭmus (primus et vic.; vic. pr.)	viceni singuli	semel et vicies or v. s.
22	alter et vicesĭmus (v. a.; duo et vic.)	viceni bini	bis et vicies or v. b.
28	duodetricesĭmus (octāvus et vicesĭmus)	duodetriceni	octies et vicies.
29	undetricesĭmus (nonus et vicesĭmus)	undetriceni	novies et vicies.
30	tricesĭmus (trigĕsimus) or tricĕsimus	triceni	trĭcies.
40	quadragesĭmus	quadrageni	quadrāgies.
50	quinguagesĭmus	quinguageni	quinguāgies.
60	sexagesĭmus	sexageni	sexāgies.
70	septuagesĭmus	septuageni	septuāgies.
80	octogesĭmus	octogeni	octōgies.
90	nonagesĭmus	nonageni	nōnāgies.
98	nonagesĭmus octavus	nonageni octoni	nonagies octies.
99	undĕcentĕsimus	undecĕcenteni	undecĕcenties.

Arabic.	Ordinals. -us, -a, -um.	Distributives. -i, -ae, -a.	Numeral Adverbs. (-ies or -iens.)
100	centēsīmus <i>or</i> centensimus	centēni	centies.
101	centesimus primus	centeni singuli	centies semel.
136	centesimus tricesimus sextus	centeni triceni seni	centies tricies sexies.
200	dūcentesimus	ducenti	ducenties.
300	trēcentesimus	trecenti	trecenties.
400	quadrīngentesimus	quadrīngeni	quadrīngenties.
500	quīngentesimus	quīngeni	quīngenties.
600	sexcentesimus: sesc.	secenti	sescenties.
700	septīngentesimus	septīngeni	septīngenties.
800	octīngentesimus	octīngeni	octīngenties.
900	nongentesimus	nongeni	nongenties.
1,000	millesimus <i>or</i> mil-lensimus	singula millia (mīlia)	millies.
2,000	bis millesimus	bina millia	bis millies.
5,000	quīnquies millesimus	quina millia	quīnquies millies.
10,000	decies millesimus	dena millia	decies millies.
50,000	quīnquagies millesimus	quīnquagena millia	quīnquagies millies.
100,000	centies millesimus	centena millia	centies millies.
500,000	quīngenties millesimus	quīngena millia	quīngenties millies.
1,000,000	millies millesimus	decies centena millia	decies centies millies.

55.—1. Unus, *one*, duo, *two*, and tres, *three*, are thus declined :

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM. ūnūs,	ūnā,	ūnūm,	ūnī,	ūnae,	ūnā,
GEN. ūnīūs,	ūnīūs,	ūnīūs,	ūnōrūm,	ūnārūm,	ūnōrūm,
DAT. ūnī,	ūnī,	ūnī,	ūnīs,	ūnīs,	ūnīs,
ACC. ūnūm,	ūnām,	ūnūm,	ūnōs,	ūnās,	ūnā,
ABL. ūnō.	ūnā.	ūnō.	ūnīs.	ūnīs.	ūnīs.
Plural.					
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.		Neut.
NOM. dūō,	dūae,	dūō,	trēs,		trīā,
GEN. dūōrūm (duum),	dūārūm,	dūōrūm (duum),	trīūm,		trīūm,
DAT. dūōbūs,	dūābūs,	dūōbūs,	trībūs,		trībūs,
ACC. dūōs <i>or</i> dūō,	dūās,	dūō,	trēs (trīs),		trīā,
ABL. dūōbūs.	dūābūs.	dūōbūs.	trībūs.		trībūs.

2. The vocative *ūnē* is found in Catullus xxxvii. 17. *Ambo*, *both*, is declined like *duo*.

3. The other cardinal numbers from *quattuor*, *four*, to *centum*, *a hundred*, are undeclined; the hundreds, beginning with *ducentī*, are declined like the plural of *bōnus*; *mille*, *a thousand*, is an indeclinable adjective (sometimes noun); the neuter plural *millia* (sometimes *mīlia*), *thousands*, is a noun, declined like *māriā*, the plural of *mārē*.

4. The plural of *ūnus* is used with nouns which have only the plural number: as, *ūna castra*, *one camp*; *ūni Ubii*, *the Ubii alone*. For higher numbers, such nouns use the distributives: as, *bīnae littērae*, *two epistles*. *Trīni* is used for *terni*.

a. *Bīni* is used to express a *pair*: as, *bīna manu crispans hastīlia*.

5. Multiplication is expressed by prefixing numeral adverbs to the distributives: as, *bis dēnis nāvībūs*, *with twice ten ships*.

6. In compound numbers above twenty and under one hundred, either the smaller number with *et* comes first, or the larger without *et*.

7. In compound numbers above one hundred, the larger with or without *et* generally precedes the smaller.

8. The thousands are expressed by prefixing the cardinal numbers to *millia*, or (chiefly in poetry) by prefixing the numeral adverbs to *mille*.

9. The numbers above one hundred thousand are expressed by the numeral adverbs joined to *centum millia* (*mīlia*) or *centēna millia* (*mīlia*). *Centēna millia* is often omitted after the numeral adverb; thus, *decies*, may stand for *decies centēna millia*, *one million*.

10. *Unus* is often used in compound numbers for *prīmus*: as, *ūno et octōgēsimo anno*, *in (his) eighty-first year*.

11. The numbers compounded with eight and nine are commonly expressed by a subtraction of *duo* and *unus* from the next multiple of ten: as, *duodeviginti*, *eighteen*; *undecentum*, *ninety-nine*; but *octōdēcim*, *nōvendēcim*, etc., are sometimes found.

12. The ordinal numbers, not the cardinal, are used in giving a date; thus *in the year 1883* is *anno millēsimo octingentēsimo octōgēsimo tertio*.

13. In manuscripts, thousands were sometimes indicated by a line over the Roman numerals: as, *LX̄*, *sixty thousand*; and hundreds of thousands by lines on three sides: as, *XXX̄*, *two millions*.

14. Multiplicatives, compounded with a root of number and *plic-*, answer the question *quōtūplex*, *how many fold*? They are *simplex*, *simple*; *dūplex*, *twofold*; *trīplex*, *quadrūplex*, *quincūplex*, *septemplex*, *decemplex*, *centūplex*, *multīplex*, and *sescūplex* or *sesquīplex*.

15. Proportionals answer the question *how much more*? They are *simplus*, *dūplus*, *trīplus*, *quadrūplus*, *quincūplus*, *septūplus*, *octūplus*, and *sescūplus*.

56. NUMERAL EXPRESSION OF FRACTIONS.

The Romans expressed fractions in words in several ways:

1. All fractions, with 1 for numerator, are denoted by ordinal numbers, with or without *pars*, as $\frac{1}{2}$, *dimidium* (not *dimidia*) or *dimidia pars*; $\frac{1}{3}$, *tertia* or *tertia pars*; $\frac{1}{4}$, *quarta*, etc.

2. All fractions with a numerator less by one than the denominator are denoted by the cardinal with *partes* simply, as $\frac{2}{3}$, *duae partes*; $\frac{2}{4}$, *tres partes*; $\frac{3}{8}$, *quattuor partes*; $\frac{5}{8}$, *quinque partes*.

3. All fractions with 12 or its multiples for a denominator, are denoted by the parts of an *as*, the Roman unit of weight, length, or measure. (The *as* of weight is called *libra*, of length, *pes*, of area, *jugerum*.) The *as* consisted originally of 12 *unciae*,* and there were distinct names and signs for each multiple of the *uncia* and for some fractions of it.

Unciae.		Value.	Sign.
12	<i>assis</i> or <i>as</i> , a pound (etc.),	1 as.	1
11	<i>deunx</i> (de-uncia), an ounce off,	$\frac{11}{12}$	S == —
10	<i>dextans</i> (desextans), a sixth off,	$\frac{5}{6}$	S ==
9	<i>dodrans</i> (dequadrans), a fourth off,	$\frac{3}{4}$	S == —
8	<i>bessis</i> or <i>bes</i> (dui-assis), a two-as †,	$\frac{2}{3}$	S =
7	<i>septunx</i> (septem unciae), a seven-ounce,	$\frac{7}{12}$	S —
6	<i>semissis</i> or <i>semis</i> (semi-assis), a half-as,	$\frac{1}{2}$	S
5	<i>quincunx</i> (quinque unciae), a five-ounce,	$\frac{5}{12}$	== —
4	<i>triens</i> (tri-), a third,	$\frac{1}{3}$	==
3	<i>quadrans</i> (quattuor-) or <i>teruncius</i> , a fourth,	$\frac{1}{4}$	== —
2	<i>sextans</i> (sexto-), a sixth,	$\frac{1}{6}$	=
$1\frac{1}{2}$	<i>sescuncia</i> (sesqui-uncia), one and a half ounce,	$\frac{3}{2}$	Σ —
1	<i>uncia</i> , an ounce,	$\frac{1}{12}$	— or ∞
$\frac{1}{2}$	<i>semuncia</i> , a half ounce,	$\frac{1}{24}$	Σ or £
$\frac{1}{4}$	<i>sicilicus</i> , a Sicilian farthing,	$\frac{1}{48}$	○
$\frac{1}{6}$	<i>sextula</i> , a little sixth,	$\frac{1}{72}$?

Of the above, the *sicilicus* was not used till imperial times. The *scripulum* or *scripulum* (*γραμμή*) was also used for $\frac{1}{24}$ of the *uncia*, = $\frac{1}{288}$ as. The fraction $\frac{1}{36}$ as was denoted by *binæ sextulae*, or *duella*; $\frac{1}{144}$ as by *dimidia sextula*, or *duo scripula*.

The above-named parts of the *as* were used as mere duodecimal fractions, applicable without any specific concrete meaning to any unit. Hence *heres ex asse*, heir to the whole inheritance; *ex triente*, to a third; *ex dimidia et sextante*, to two-thirds (a half and a sixth).

4. Other fractions, not expressible by one of the above methods, are de-

* Hence *inch* as well as *ounce* is derived from *uncia*.

† This term must either have been formed when the *as* was equal to 4 *unciae*; or be short for *two-thirds* of an *as*.

noted by the cardinal for a numerator, and the ordinal for the denominator, as, $\frac{4}{7}$, *quattuor septimae*; $\frac{7}{7}$, *septem nonae*.

5. Some fractions are denoted by resolution into their components, as, $\frac{3}{4}$, *dimidia et quarta*; $\frac{2}{3}$, *pars dimidia et sexta*; $\frac{1}{8}$, *pars tertia et nona*; $\frac{1}{12}$, *pars tertia et septima*.

6. Sometimes further division is resorted to, as, $\frac{1}{10}$, *dimidia quinta*. And *dimidia tertia* is used for *sexta*; *dimidia quarta* for *octava*.

7. *Sesquī*, $1\frac{1}{2}$, is used only in compounds, as, *sesquilibra*, $1\frac{1}{2}$ lbs.

8. *Sesquialtera* ratio is $1\frac{1}{2} : 1 :: 3 : 2$. [ROBY; KENNEDY.]

PRONOUNS.

57.—1. The Personal Pronouns are thus declined:

FIRST PERSON.

Singular.	Plural.
NOM. <i>ēgō, I.</i>	<i>nōs, we.</i>
GEN. <i>mēī, of me.</i>	<i>nostrī or nostrum, of us.</i>
DAT. <i>mīhī, to or for me.</i>	<i>nōbīs, to or for us.</i>
ACC. <i>mē, me.</i>	<i>nōs, us.</i>
ABL. <i>mē, from, with, or by me.</i>	<i>nōbīs, from, with, or by us.</i>

SECOND PERSON.

NOM. <i>tū, thou.</i>	<i>vōs, ye or you.</i>
GEN. <i>tūī, of thee.</i>	<i>vestrī or vestrum, of you.</i>
DAT. <i>tībī, to or for thee.</i>	<i>vōbīs, to or for you.</i>
ACC. <i>tē, thee.</i>	<i>vōs, you.</i>
VOC. <i>tū, O thou.</i>	<i>vōs, O ye.</i>
ABL. <i>tē, from, with, or by thee.</i>	<i>vōbīs, from, with, or by you.</i>

REFLEXIVE.

Singular and Plural.

GEN. <i>sūī, of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
DAT. <i>sībī, to or for himself, etc.</i>
ACC. <i>sē or sēsē, himself, etc.</i>
ABL. <i>sē or sēsē, from, with, or by himself, etc.</i>

2. The nominative and vocative of the reflexive pronoun are wanting.

3. The old genitive of the first and second persons was *mi*, *tis*.

4. *Mī* for *mihi* is found in Cicero and in the poets.

5. The forms *med* and *ted* occur as accusatives and ablatives in Plautus.

6. **Nostrum** and **vestrum** are used only after partitives. They are the contracted genitives plural of the possessive pronouns **noster** and **vester**. In like manner **mei**, **tui**, and **sui** are the genitives singular of the neuter possessive pronouns.

7. The preposition **cum**, *with*, is affixed to the ablative of these pronouns in both numbers: as, **mecum**, *with me*; **vobiscum**, *with you*.

8. The suffix **-mēt** may be joined (1) to **ego** and its cases, except the gen. plural: as, **egōmet**, *I myself*; (2) to the cases of **tu**, except the nom. sing.: as, **vosmet**, *ye yourselves*; (3) to **se** and **sibi**, as **sibīmet**.

9. The suffix **-tē** may be joined to **tu**: as, **tūtē**. We find also **tūtēmēt**, *thou thyself*.

58. The Possessive Pronouns **meus**, **mea**, **meum**, *my* or *mine*; **tuus**, **tua**, **tuum**, *thy* or *thine*; **suus**, **sua**, **suum**, *his own*, *her own*, *its own*, *their own*; and **cujus**, **cuja**, **cujum**, *whose*, *whose?* are declined like **bonus**.

1. **Meus** has **mī**, rarely **meus**, in the vocative singular masculine. **Tuus** and **suus** have no vocative.

2. The Possessive Pronouns **noster**, **nostra**, **nostrum**, *our*, and **vester**, **vestra**, **vestrum**, *your*, are declined like **piger**.

3. The Demonstratives have no corresponding Possessives, but their Genitives supply the want: as, **ejus līber**, *his book*; **eōrum ōpes**, *their wealth*.

4. From the possessives **noster**, **vester**, and **cujus** are derived the **Patrials**, **nostras**, *of our country*; **vestras**, *of your country*; **cūjas**, *of what country?*

5. The intensive suffix **-mēt** may be joined to the cases of **suus**: as, **suāmet facta**; the suffix **-ptē** to the abl. sing. of the possessive pronouns: as, **meopte consilio**, *by my advice*.

59. The Demonstrative Pronouns are thus declined:

I. UNEMPHATIC.

Īs, *that*; or, *he, she, it*.

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM. Īs ,	eā ,	ĭd ,	eī or iī ,	eae ,	eā ,
GEN. ējūs ,	ējūs ,	ējūs ,	eōrūm ,	eārūm ,	eōrūm ,
DAT. eī , ^{him}	eī ,	eī ,	eīs or iīs ,	eīs or iīs ,	eīs or iīs ,
ACC. eūm ,	eām ,	ĭd ,	eōs ,	eās ,	eā ,
ABL. eō ,	eā ,	eō .	eīs or iīs ,	eīs or iīs ,	eīs or iīs .

II. EMPHATIC.

Hīc, *this (near me) ; or, he, she, it.*

Singular.			Plural.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	hīc,	haec,	hōc,	hī,	hae,	haec,
GEN.	hījūs,	hījūs,	hījūs,	hōrūm,	hārūm,	hōrūm,
DAT.	huīc,	huīc,	huīc,	hīs,	hīs,	hīs,
ACC.	hunc,	hanc,	hōc,	hōs,	hās,	haec,
ABL.	hōc,	hāc,	hōc.	hīs,	hīs,	hīs.

Istē, *that (near you) ; or, he, she, it.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	istē,	istā,	istūd,	istī,	istae,	istā,
GEN.	istīus,	istīus,	istīus,	istōrūm,	istārūm,	istōrūm,
DAT.	istī,	istī,	istī,	istīs,	istīs,	istīs,
ACC.	istūm,	istām,	istūd,	istōs,	istās,	istā,
ABL.	istō,	istā,	istō.	istīs,	istīs,	istīs.

Illē, *that (yonder) ; or, he, she, it.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	illē,	illā,	illūd,	illī,	illae,	illā,
GEN.	illīūs,	illīūs,	illīūs,	illōrūm,	illārūm,	illōrūm,
DAT.	illī,	illī,	illī,	illīs,	illīs,	illīs,
ACC.	illūm,	illām,	illūd,	illōs,	illās,	illā,
ABL.	illō,	illā,	illō.	illīs,	illīs,	illīs.

60.—1. The Definitive Pronouns are thus declined :

Idem, *same.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	īdēm,	eādēm,	īdēm,	īīdēm(eīdēm),	eaedēm,	eādēm,
GEN.	ējUSDēm,	ējUSDēm,	ējUSDēm,	eōrundēm,	eārundēm,	eōrundēm,
DAT.	eīdēm,	eīdēm,	eīdēm,	eisdēm or iisdēm,	eisdēm or iisdēm,	eisdēm or iisdēm,
ACC.	eundēm,	eandēm,	īdēm,	eosdēm,	easdēm,	eādēm,
ABL.	eōdēm,	eādēm,	eōdēm.	eisdēm or iisdēm,	eisdēm or iisdēm,	eisdēm or iisdēm.

Ipsē, self.

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. ipsē,	ipsā,	ipsūm,	ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsā,
GEN. ipsiūs,	ipsiūs,	ipsiūs,	ipsōrūm,	ipsārūm,	ipsōrūm,
DAT. ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs,
ACC. ipsūm,	ipsām,	ipsūm,	ipsōs,	ipsās,	ipsā,
VOC. ipsē,	ipsā,	ipsūm,	ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsā,
ABL. ipsō,	ipsā,	ipsō.	ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.

2. The demonstrative affix **c** (for **cē**) is added to **iste** and **ille**, making a pronominal declension as follows :

Singular.					
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. istīc,	istaec,	istōc or istūc,	illīc,	illaec,	illōc or illūc,
ACC. istunc,	istanc,	istōc or istūc,	illunc,	illanc,	illōc or illūc,
ABL. istōc,	istāc,	istōc.	illōc,	illāc,	illōc.

Plural.		
NOM. and Acc.	istaec.	illaec.

Cē sometimes appears in full : as, **istiusce**, **illosce**, etc.

61. The adverbs **ībī**, **hīc**, **illīc**, and **istīc** are locative cases of **is**, **hic**, **illīc**, and **istīc** respectively.

1. Of **hic**, the fuller forms **hosce**, **hasce**, **hujusce** are found in Cicero; the nom. pl. fem. **haec** is found in Varro, Lucretius, and Vergil. Plautus has **hice** (nom. sing. m.), **hoce** (nom. n.), **hisce** (nom. pl. m.), **hībus** (dat. and abl. pl.).

2. Old forms of **ille**, in Ennius, Lucretius, and Vergil, are **olli** (dat. sing. and nom. pl. m.), **ollis** (dat. and abl. pl.), and in Lucretius, **ollas**, **olla**, acc. pl.

3. **Ipsē** is also called an **intensive** pronoun. It has an old nominative, **ipsus**. It is compounded of **is** and **pse** for **pte**; and the **is** was, in the earlier times, declined. Thus, Plautus has **eumpse**, **eampse**, **eāpse**, etc. The phrase, **reapse**, i. e., **re eapse**, *in reality*, occurs in Cicero. **Ipsē** sometimes takes the suffix **met**.

4. A superlative, **ipsissimus**, is found in the comic poets.

5. The interjection **ecce**, **lo** ! coalesces, in comic poetry, with cases of **is**, **ille**, **iste** : as, **ecca**, **eccum**, **eccam**, etc. ; **eccilla**, **eccillum**, etc. ; **eccistam**, etc. **En**, **lo** ! also coalesces with **ille** in the accusative forms **ellum**, **ellam**, **ellos**, **ellas**.

62.—1. The relative pronoun is thus declined :

Qui, who, which.					
Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM. quī,	quae,	quōd,	quī,	quae,	quae,
GEN. cūjūs,	cūjūs,	cūjūs,	quōrūm,	quārūm,	quōrūm,
DAT. cuī,	cuī,	cuī,	quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs,
ACC. quēm,	quām,	quōd,	quōs,	quās,	quae,
ABL. quō,	quā,	quō.	quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs.

2. The interrogative substantive pronoun is thus declined :

Quis, who? what?					
Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM. quis,	(quae),	quīd,	qui,	quae,	quae,
GEN. cūjus,	cūjus,	cūjus,	quōrum,	quārūm,	quōrum,
DAT. cuī,	cuī,	cuī,	quībus,	quībus,	quībus,
ACC. quem,	quam,	quid,	quos,	quas,	quae,
ABL. quō,	quā,	quō.	quībus,	quībus,	quībus.

3. **Quis** is sometimes feminine in the comic poets.

4. The interrogative adjective pronoun, **qui, quae, quod, what? which?** is declined like the relative pronoun.

5. The indefinite substantive pronoun, **quis, (qua), quid, any one, some one,** is declined like the interrogative **quis**, but in the neut. plur. it has **qua** as well as **quae**.

6. The indefinite adjective pronoun, **qui, qua or quae, quod, any, some,** is declined like the relative pronoun, but has **qua** as well as **quae** in the singular and plural.

7. Exceptionally, **quis** is found as an adjective pronoun, and **qui** as an interrogative substantive pronoun.

8. The gen. and dat. sing. **quonius** and **quon** are found in old writers.

9. **Quī** is sometimes found as an abl., in all genders, and in old writers even in the plural, of the relative and interrogative pronouns, also as an adverbial interrogative, *how?* and occasionally as an indefinite adverb, *in any way*.

10. The preposition **cum** is affixed to the ablative, as in the personal pronouns, thus : **quōcum, quācum, quīcum, quībuscum.**

11. A nom. and acc. plural, *ques*, occurs in Cato and Pacuvius; a dat. and abl. plural, *quīs*, in Varro, Sallust, and Tacitus, rarely in Cicero.

12. The compounds of *qui*, *quis*, are mainly declined like them.

13. *Aliquis*, *some one, something*, a compound of the indefinite *quis* with the stem *ali-*, is thus declined :

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM. <i>āliquis</i> ,	<i>āliquā</i> ,	<i>āliquīd</i> ,	<i>āliquī</i> ,	<i>āliquae</i> ,	<i>āliquā</i> ,
GEN. <i>alicūjus</i> ,	<i>alicūjus</i> ,	<i>alicūjus</i> ,	<i>aliquōrum</i> ,	<i>aliquārum</i> ,	<i>aliquōrum</i> ,
DAT. <i>ālicuī</i> ,	<i>ālicuī</i> ,	<i>ālicuī</i> ,	<i>aliquībus</i> ,	<i>aliquībus</i> ,	<i>aliquībus</i> ,
ACC. <i>āliquem</i> ,	<i>āliquam</i> ,	<i>āliquīd</i> ,	<i>āliquos</i> ,	<i>āliquas</i> ,	<i>āliqua</i> .
ABL. <i>āliquō</i> ,	<i>āliquā</i> ,	<i>āliquō</i> .	<i>aliquībus</i> ,	<i>aliquībus</i> .	<i>aliquībus</i> .

Note.—The adj. pronoun has generally *āliqui*, *āliquod*. The fem. sing. *āliquae* occurs rarely.

14. Other relative, interrogative, and indefinite compound pronouns are :

1. *a. quisnam, quidnam* : *quinam, quaenam, quodnam*, *who, what* ?
 - b. uternam, utrānam, utrumnam*, *whether of the two* ?
 2. *ecquis, ecqua, ecquid* : *ecqui, ecquae, ecquod*, *any one* ?
So *numquis, siquis, nē quis*, etc.
 3. *alterūter*, *one or other* ; Gen. *alterutrīus* or *alterīus utrīus*, etc.
 4. *quispiam, quaeipiam, quippiam (quodpiam)*, *any one (positively)*.
 5. *quisquam, quicquam*, *any one at all (with non, haud, vix, etc.)*.
 6. *quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam)*, *a certain one*.
 7. *a. quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque*, *whosoever, whatsoever*.
(Poets often disjoin the affix *cumque* from the relative: *Quae te cumque domat Venus*. Hor.)
 - b. utercumque, utracumque, utrumcumque*, *whichever of two*.
 8. *quisquis, whosoever, quidquid, whatsoever* ; Acc. (*quemquem*), *quidquid* ; Gen. (*cuiquimōdi*) ; Abl. (*quoquo, quaquā, quoquo*), etc. ; Plur., Dat. and Abl. (*quibusquībus*). Some of these forms are rare.
 9. *a. quivis, quaevis, quidvis (quodvis)*, *any you will*.
 - b. utervis, utrāvis, utrumvis*, *whether of the two you will*.
 10. *a. quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet (quodlibet)*, *any you please*.
 - b. uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet*, *whether of the two you please*.
 11. *a. quisque, quaeque, quicque (quodque)*, *each*. (Plaut. and Ter. use *quisque* of a woman ; and in other compounds *quis* occurs as fem.)
 - b. unusquisque, unaquaeque, unumquicque (-quodque)*, *each one* ; Acc. *unumquemque, unamquamque*, etc. Gen. *uniuscujusque*, etc.
 - c. uterque, utrāque, utrumque*, *both, each of two*.
15. These compound pronouns are declined as the simple forms, the undeclined affix or prefix accompanying each case: Gen. *cujuscumque*, *utriusvis*, Abl. *ecquo*, etc.

63. The following is a tabular arrangement of certain pronominal adjectives and adverbs:

1. Correlative (pronominal) adjectives.

Demonstrative.	Relative and Interrogative.	Indefinite Relative.	Indefinite.
īs, that.	quī, which.	quisquis quicunque } whosever.	āliquis, some. quis, any.
	ut̄er, which of two.	{ al̄t̄erut̄er, one or other of two. uterquisque, whichever of the two.	{ quilibet, } any you please, quivis, } any whatever. ut̄ervis, } whichever (of two) uterlibet, } you please.
tālis, such.	quālis { of which quality; as; { of what quality?	quālescunque, of what quality soever.	quālislibet, of any quality you please.
tantus, so great.	quantus { as great. { how great?	quantuscunque, how great soever.	āliquantus, of some considerable size. quantuslibet, } of any size quantusvis, } you please. āliquantulum, a little (subst.).
tantulus, so small.	quantulus, as small.	quantuluscunque, how small soever.	āliquot (indecl.), some.
tōt (indecl.), so many.	{ quōt (indecl.) { as many. { how many ?	{ quotcunque, } how many { quotquot (indecl.) } soever.	
tōtidem (indecl.), just so many.			
tōtus (very rare), such in numerical order.	quōtus { what in numerical order? { which, etc. (rare).		

Quālescunque and quantuscunque are also used as simply indefinite (non-relative) pronouns; āliquantus is commonly only used in the neuter (āliquantum, āliquantō), and then as noun or adverb.

2. Correlative (pronominal) adverbs.

tam, so.	quam, how ? as.	quamquam, } however. quamcunque, }	quamvis, } however much quamlibet, } you please.
tōties, so often.	quōties { how often ? { as often.	quōtiescunque, } however { often.	quōtieslibet, however often you please.

ĩtā, } thus, so.
sīo, }

ũt, how, as.

utuncunqē, however.

ǎlĩquōtĩs, sometimes.

3. The following are the chief (pronominal) adverbs of place.

ō (= om, accus.?)

quō, } whither?
quōlĩbē, } whither.

hūo, hither.

eō, thither.

isto, istūc, to your place.

illo, illūc, to that place.

eōdēm, to the same place.

utrōque, to both places.

ǎlĩquō, to some place or other.

other.

quōvĩs, } to any place you
quōlĩbē, } please.

utrōlĩbē, whithersoever (of
two places) you choose.

quōquā, anywhither (in neg-
ative, etc., sentences).

sīquō, if anywhither.

nēquō, lest anywhither.

aliō, to another place.

quōcunquē, } whithersoever.
quōquō, }

quonām, whither?

adeō, so far.

quorsum (i.e. } whitherwards?
quōversum), } whitherwards.

bĩ or i, dat. or loc.

ũbĩ, } where?
hĩc, } where.

hĩc, here.

ĩbĩ, there.

istĩc, there (where you are).

illĩc, there (where he is).

ĩdēm, in the same place.

utrōlĩquē, in both places.

ũbĩquē, everywhere.

ǎlĩcũbĩ, somewhere or other.

ũbĩvĩs, } where you please.

ũbĩlĩbē, } anywhere whatever

quāvĩs, } by any way you
quālĩbē, } by any way what-
[ever.]

usquam, anywhere (in neg-
ative, etc., sentences).

sīcũbĩ, if anywhere.

nēcũbĩ, lest anywhere.

aliĩbĩ, elsewhere.

ũbĩcunquē, wheresoever.

nusquam, nowhere.

ũbĩnam, where?

ā, abl. fem.

quā, } by what way?
hāc, } by which way.

hāc, by this way.

eā, by that way.

istāc, by your way.

illāc, by that way (near him).

eādēm, by the same way.

ǎlĩquā, by some way.

quāvĩs, } by any way you
quālĩbē, } by any way what-
[ever.]

sīquā, if by any way.

nēquā, lest by any way.

aliā, by another way.

quācunquē, } by whatsoever
quāquā, } way.

usquequāque, everywhere.

quānam, where?

4. The following are the chief (pronominal) adverbs of time:

quandō, { when? when.	quamdiū, { how long? as long as.	quōtiēs, { how often? as often as.
quōm, cūm, when.	āļquamdiū, for some	tōtiēs, so often.
nunc, now.	length of time.	āļquōtiēs, several times.
tunc, } then.	quousquē, till when?	identidēm, repeatedly.
tūm, }	adhūc, hitherto.	nonnunquām, } sometimes
antehāc, before this.		āļquandō, } (i. e., not un-
posthāc, after this.		quandōquē, } frequently).
sūbindē, immediately afterwards.		interdūm, sometimes (i. e.,
nondūm, not yet.		occasionally).
āliās, at another time.		unquām, ever (after nega-
interīm, } meanwhile.		tives, etc.).
intēreā, }		usquē, ever (of progressive
quondām, } sometime, i. e., formerly,		continuance).
olīm, } or hereafter.		

VERBS.

64. Latin Verbs have Two Voices: the Active, as *āmo*, *I love*, and the Passive, as *āmor*, *I am loved*.

1. Deponent Verbs have the meaning of the Active Voice, but the forms chiefly of the Passive: as, *vēnor*, *I hunt*; *vēreor*, *I fear*.

2. The Passive has sometimes a reflexive use, like the Greek Middle Voice: as, *vertor*, *I turn myself*; *lāvor*, *I wash myself, bathe*.

3. A Verb is called Transitive when its action passes on to an Object in the Accusative Case: as, *puērum laudo*, *I praise the boy*; *te hortor*, *I urge thee*.

4. An Intransitive Verb requires no Object: as, *surgo*, *I rise*; *prōficiscor*, *I set out*.

5. Intransitive Verbs are not used in the Passive Voice, except sometimes impersonally: as, *surgitur*, lit. *there is a rising*, i. e., *we rise* or *they rise*.

65. The Indicative Mood states a fact or condition as real or absolute.

1. a The Subjunctive Mood states a fact or condition as thought of or contingent.

b The Subjunctive is also used in various dependent constructions, in which it is rendered in English by the Indicative.

2. The Imperative Mood is used in command or entreaty.

3. **The Infinitive Mood** is strictly a verbal noun, expressing action or state.

4. **The Participles** are verbal adjectives. There are two in the **Active Voice**, the **Present** and the **Future**; and two in the **Passive**, the **Perfect** and the **Gerundive**.

5. **The Gerund** is a verbal noun, of the second declension neuter.

6. **The Supines** are the **Accusative** and **Ablative** of a verbal noun of the fourth declension.

66. Of the **Tenses**, the **Present**, **Future**, and **Imperfect** denote **Incomplete Action**; the **Perfect**, **Future Perfect**, and **Pluperfect** denote **Completed Action**.

1. **The Present Tense** denotes an action as *now going on*. It may also state a *general truth*; an action *attempted*; a *past action*, in lively narration.

2. **The Future** represents an action in future time, either as continuing, or as indefinite; *I shall be reading*, or *I shall read*.

3. **The Imperfect** denotes an action as *going on at some past time* referred to. It may also state a *customary past action*; an action *begun* (and continued) at some definite past time; an action *attempted* at some definite past time. In letters, it is often used where we should use the present, the writer putting himself in the position of the receiver.

4. **The Perfect Definite** corresponds to our **Perfect** with *have*: as, *I have seen*; the **Historical Perfect** or **Aorist** states a past action simply: as, *I saw*.

5. **The Future Perfect** corresponds for the most part to the same tense in English, but is used more frequently and precisely.

6. **The Pluperfect** is used as the same tense in English. In epistolary style it may take the place of the Latin **Perfect**.

7. **The Present, Futures, and Perfect Definite** are called **Primary Tenses**; the **Imperfect, Historical Perfect, and Pluperfect, Secondary Tenses**.

8. The tenses of the **Subjunctive Mood** have peculiar uses, which will be explained under **Syntax**.

67. **The Inflections** of the Verb are attached to the Stem in the following order: inflections of *tense*, of *mood*, of *person*, of *number*, of *voice*.

1. The simplest forms are of the present indicative singular active; thus, *dāt* is the third person singular, present indicative active, of a verbal stem meaning *give*. It is composed of *dā-*, verb stem, and *t*, abbreviated pronoun of the third person; and thus is strictly *give-he* (she, it), for which *give-s* is, originally, the English equivalent, but English, having lost its sense of the meaning of the final *s*, now prefixes in addition the pronoun for the like purpose.

2. *Dā-r-ē-m-us* is the imperfect subjunctive, first person plural, active voice of the same stem, *dā-*, *give*. The sound *r* denotes past time, *ē* the mood of *thought* (instead of *fact*), *m* the speaker himself (it being the same *m* as in our word *me*), *us* the action of others with the speaker. Thus, *daremus* analyzed is *give-did-in-thought-I-they*. If for *-us* we have *-ur* (*dāremur*), the speaker and others are *passive* instead of *active*.—ROBY.

68. The Verb Stem has three forms, the **Present Stem**, the **Perfect Stem**, and the **Supine Stem**.

1. The **Present Stem** is often identical with the Verb Stem, but sometimes more or less modified. From it are formed all the tenses and verbal forms which express *incomplete action*: namely, both in the Active and the Passive Voice, the *Indicative Present, Imperfect, and Future*; the *Subjunctive Present and Imperfect*; the *Imperative*; and the *Present Infinitive*; also the *Present Participle Active*, the *Gerunds*, and the *Gerundive*.

2. The **Perfect Stem** is sometimes identical with the Verb Stem and with the Present Stem, but usually is considerably modified. From it are formed all the tenses in the Active Voice, denoting *completed action*: namely, the *Indicative Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect*; the *Subjunctive Perfect and Pluperfect*; and the *Perfect Infinitive*.

3. The **Supine Stem** is always a modification of the Verb Stem, and from it are formed certain verbal nouns and adjectives, of which the *Future Participle Active*, the *Perfect Passive Participle*, and the *Accusative and Ablative Supines* are reckoned with the Verb. The *Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative*, and the *Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive*, in the *Passive Voice*, are formed with tenses of the auxiliary verb *esse*, *to be*, and the *Perfect Passive Participle*; the *Future Infinitive Passive* is formed by adding to the *Accusative Supine* the auxiliary *iri*.

69. The **Present Indicative**, **Present Infinitive**, **Perfect Indicative**, and **Accusative Supine** are called the

Principal Parts of the Verb, as, they being known, all the other parts of the Verb may be formed from them.

70. The Irregular Verb **sum** is formed from two Roots,* **es-** (Sanskrit *as*, Greek *ἐσ-*), *to be*, and **fu-** (Sanskrit *bhū*, Greek *φύ-*), *to be or become*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind. Pres. Infin. Perf. Ind. Fut. Part.
sūm, *I am*; **essē**, *to be*; **fuī**, *I have been, I was*; **fūtūrū**, *about to be*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING. 1.	sūm , <i>I am</i> ,	sīm , <i>I may be, may I</i>
2.	ēs , <i>thou art (you are)</i> ,	sīs , [<i>be, I am, etc.</i> †]
3.	est , <i>he (she, it) is</i> ,	sīt ,
PLUR. 1.	sūmūs , <i>we are</i> ,	sīmūs ,
2.	estīs , <i>you are</i> ,	sītīs ,
3.	sunt , <i>they are</i> .	sint .

IMPERFECT.

SING. 1.	ērām , <i>I was</i> ,	essēm , <i>I should be, etc.</i> †
2.	ērās , <i>thou wast</i> ,	essēs ,
3.	ērāt , <i>he was</i> ,	essēt ,
PLUR. 1.	ērāmūs , <i>we were</i> ,	essēmūs ,
2.	ērātīs , <i>you were</i> ,	essētīs ,
3.	ērant , <i>they were</i> .	essent .

FUTURE.

SING. 1.	ērō , <i>I shall be</i> ,
2.	ērīs , <i>thou wilt be</i> ,
3.	ērīt , <i>he will be</i> ,
PLUR. 1.	ērīmūs , <i>we shall be</i> ,
2.	ērītīs , <i>you will be</i> ,
3.	ērunt , <i>they will be</i> .

* The English forms *am, art, is, are*, belong to the root **as**; *be* to the root **bhū**.

† The tenses of the Subjunctive have many different translations in English, according to the construction of the sentences in which they stand. Their various uses are explained under *Syntax of the Subjunctive Mood*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT AND AORIST.

SING. 1.	<i>fuī, I have been, I was,</i>	<i>fuērīm,</i>
2.	<i>fuistī, thou hast been, thou wast,</i>	<i>fuērīs,</i>
3.	<i>fuīt, he has been, he was,</i>	<i>fuerīt,</i>
PLUR. 1.	<i>fuīmūs, we have been, we were,</i>	<i>fuerīmūs,</i>
2.	<i>fuistīs, you have been, you were,</i>	<i>fuerītīs,</i>
3.	<i>fuērunt or fuērē, they have been, they were.</i>	<i>fuērint.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

SING. 1.	<i>fuērām, I had been,</i>	<i>fuissēm, I should have been,</i>
2.	<i>fuērās, thou hadst been,</i>	<i>fuissēs,</i> [etc.
3.	<i>fuērāt, he had been,</i>	<i>fuissēt,</i>
PLUR. 1.	<i>fuērāmūs, we had been,</i>	<i>fuissēmūs,</i>
2.	<i>fuērātīs, you had been,</i>	<i>fuissētīs,</i>
3.	<i>fuērant, they had been.</i>	<i>fuissent.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING. 1.	<i>fuērō, I shall have been,</i>
2.	<i>fuērīs, thou wilt have been,</i>
3.	<i>fuērīt, he will have been,</i>
PLUR. 1.	<i>fuērīmus, we shall have been,</i>
2.	<i>fuērītīs, you will have been,</i>
3.	<i>fuērint, they will have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. sing. 2.	<i>ēs, be thou.</i>
FUT. 2.	<i>estō, thou shalt be.</i>
	<i>estō, he shall be or let him be.</i>
PRES. plur. 2.	<i>estē, be ye.</i>
FUT. 2.	<i>estōtē, ye shall be.</i>
	<i>suntō, they shall be or let them be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. <i>essē, to be.</i>	FUT. <i>fūtūrūs, -ā, ūm,</i>
PERF. <i>fuissē, to have been.</i>	<i>about to be.</i>
FUT. <i>fūtūrūs essē, to be about to be.</i>	

1. A form of the pres. subj. *siem, sies, siet* is frequent in Plautus and Terence. The pres. subj. *fuam, fuas, fuat, fuant* is also frequent in Plautus; (G. Curtius regards it as an aorist.) Forms like *fūvit, fūverit, fūvisset*, from the old Perfect stem, are met with in old writers.

2. For the imperf. subj., *fōrēm, fōrēs, fōrēt, fōrent* are frequently used.

3. *Fōre* is often used for the future infinitive.

4. In old writers the forms *escit, escunt* occur, for *erit, erunt*.

5. *Es* in the pres. indic. is always long in Plautus and Terence.

6. When *est* came after a vowel or *m*, the *e* was omitted in speaking and sometimes in writing: as, *nata st, natum st, oratio st*. So sometimes with *es* after a vowel, and perhaps after *m*: as, *nacta's, lignum's*. In the comic writers a short final syllable in *s* coalesces with *est*: as, *factust, opust, similst*, for *factus est, opus est, similis est*; and occasionally with *es*: as, *nactu's, simili's*, for *nactus es, similis es*.

71. Like *sum* are inflected its compounds *absum* (perf. *abfui* or *āfui*), *adsum* or *assum* (perf. *adfui* or *affui*), *dēsum* (*de-est, de-eram*, etc., pronounced *dēst, dēram*, etc.), *insum, intersum, obsum* (perf. *obfui* or *offui*), *praesum* (3d sing. *praest*, often written *praeest*), *prōsum* (which inserts *d* before a vowel: as, *prōdes, prōdēro, prōdesse*), *subsum* (no perfect), *super-sum*. Of these *absum* and *praesum* alone have a present participle, *absens, praesens*.

72. *Possum, I am able* or *I can*, is a compound of *pōt-* (*pōtis, pōtē*) and *sum*, and usually retains the *t* before a vowel, but assimilates it to a following *s*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
possūm,

Pres. Inf.
possē,

Perf. Ind.
potūī.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING. 1. *possūm, I can, I am able,*
2. *pōtēs, thou canst,*
3. *pōtest, he can,*
PLUR. 1. *possūmūs, we can,*
2. *pōtestīs, you can,*
3. *possunt, they can.*

possīm,
possīs,
possīt,
possīmūs,
possītīs,
possint.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

SING. 1.	pōtērām, <i>I could,</i>	possēm,
2.	pōtērās, <i>thou couldst,</i>	possēs,
3.	pōtērāt, <i>he could,</i>	possēt,
PLUR. 1.	pōtērāmūs, <i>we could,</i>	possēmūs,
2.	pōtērātīs, <i>you could,</i>	possētīs,
3.	pōtērant, <i>they could.</i>	possent.

FUTURE.

SING. 1.	pōtērō, <i>I shall be able,</i>
2.	pōtērīs, <i>thou wilt be able,</i>
3.	pōtērīt, <i>he will be able,</i>
PLUR. 1.	pōtērīmūs, <i>we shall be able,</i>
2.	pōtērītīs, <i>you will be able,</i>
3.	pōtērant, <i>they will be able.</i>

PERFECT AND AORIST.

SING. 1.	pōtuī, <i>I have been able, I could,</i>	pōtuērīm,
2.	pōtuistī, <i>thou hast been able, thou couldst,</i>	pōtuērīs,
3.	pōtuīt, <i>he has been able, he could,</i>	pōtuērīt,
PLUR. 1.	pōtuīmūs, <i>we have been able, we could,</i>	pōtuērīmūs,
2.	pōtuistīs, <i>you have been able, you could,</i>	pōtuērītīs,
3.	pōtuērunt, <i>they have been able, they could.</i>	pōtuērīnt.

PLUPERFECT.

SING. 1.	pōtuērām, <i>I had been able,</i>	pōtuissēm,
2.	pōtuērās, <i>thou hadst been able,</i>	pōtuissēs,
3.	pōtuērāt, <i>he had been able,</i>	pōtuissēt,
PLUR. 1.	pōtuērāmūs, <i>we had been able,</i>	pōtuissēmūs,
2.	pōtuērātīs, <i>you had been able,</i>	pōtuissētīs,
3.	pōtuērant, <i>they had been able.</i>	pōtuissent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

- SING. 1. pōtuērō, *I shall have been able*,
 2. pōtuēris, *thou wilt have been able*,
 3. pōtuērit, *he will have been able*,
 PLUR. 1. pōtuērimus, *we shall have been able*,
 2. pōtuēritis, *you will have been able*,
 3. pōtuērint, *they will have been able*.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. possē, *to be able*.

PERFECT. pōtuissē, *to have been able*.

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT. pōtens, *powerful* (used only as an adjective).

1. Early writers have sometimes *potesse* in the infinitive; Plautus and Terence sometimes *possiem* and *possiēs* in the pres. subjunctive. The full forms *potis sum*, etc., are found in prae-Augustan poets; and *pōtis* and *pōte* are even found as predicates without *sum*. *Potestur* occurs once in Lucretius. *Poterint* is found for *poterunt*.

CONJUGATIONS.

73. There are **Four Conjugations**, distinguished by the vowel before **-re** in the **Present Infinitive Active**. This vowel in the **First Conjugation** is a long, as *āmārē*, *to love*;
 in the **Second Conjugation** is e long, as *mōnērē*, *to warn*;
 in the **Third Conjugation** is e short, as *rēgērē*, *to rule*;
 in the **Fourth Conjugation** is i long, as *audīrē*, *to hear*.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

74. In the **First Conjugation** the **Present Stem** is the same as the **Verb Stem**, and ends in ā. Its final vowel is united by contraction with the following vowel: as, *ama-o*, *amo*; *ama-im*, *amem*. The regular **Perfect** is formed by adding **-vi** to the Verb Stem, the regular **Supine** by adding **-tum**: as, *vōco*, *I call*, Pres. Inf. *vocā-re*, Perf. Ind. *vocā-vi*, Supine *vocā-tum*.

THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Ā- VERBS.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
āmō,Pres. Inf.
āmāre,Perf. Ind.
āmāvī,Supine.
āmātum.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

- SING. 1. āmō, *I love,*
 2. āmās, *thou lovest,*
 3. āmāt, *he loves,*
 PLUR. 1. āmāmūs, *we love,*
 2. āmātīs, *you love,*
 3. āmant, *they love.*

āmēm, *let me*
 āmēs, *may*
 āmēt,
 āmēmūs, *let us*
 āmētīs,
 āment.

IMPERFECT.

- SING. 1. āmābam, *I was loving, I loved,*
 2. āmābās, *thou wast loving, etc.,*
 3. āmābāt, *he was loving, etc.,*
 PLUR. 1. āmābāmūs, *we were loving, etc.,*
 2. āmābātīs, *you were loving, etc.,*
 3. āmābant, *they were loving, etc.*

āmārēm, *I were*
 āmārēs, *should*
 āmārēt,
 āmārēmūs,
 āmārētīs,
 āmārent.

FUTURE.

- SING. 1. āmābō, *I shall love,*
 2. āmābīs, *thou wilt love,*
 3. āmābīt, *he will love,*
 PLUR. 1. āmābīmūs, *we shall love,*
 2. āmābītīs, *you will love,*
 3. āmābunt, *they will love.*

SING. PERFECT AND AORIST.

1. āmāvī, *I have loved, I loved,*
 2. āmāvistī, *thou hast loved, thou lovedst,*
 3. āmāvīt, *he has loved, he loved,*

āmāvērīm,
 āmāvērīs,
 āmāvērīt,

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PLUR.

- | | |
|---|--------------------|
| 1. <i>āmāvīmūs, we have loved, we loved,</i> | <i>āmāvērīmūs,</i> |
| 2. <i>āmāvistīs, you have loved, you loved,</i> | <i>āmāvērītīs,</i> |
| 3. <i>āmāvērunt, -ērē, they have loved, they loved.</i> | <i>āmāvērint.</i> |

PLUPERFECT.

- | | |
|---|---------------------|
| SING. 1. <i>āmāvērām, I had loved,</i> | <i>āmāvissēm,</i> |
| 2. <i>āmāvērās, thou hadst loved,</i> | <i>āmāvissēs,</i> |
| 3. <i>āmāvērāt, he had loved,</i> | <i>āmāvissēt,</i> |
| PLUR. 1. <i>āmāvērāmūs, we had loved,</i> | <i>āmāvissēmūs,</i> |
| 2. <i>āmāvērātīs, you had loved,</i> | <i>āmāvissētīs,</i> |
| 3. <i>āmāvērant, they had loved.</i> | <i>āmāvissent.</i> |

FUTURE PERFECT.

- | |
|--|
| SING. 1. <i>āmāvērō, I shall have loved,</i> |
| 2. <i>āmāvērīs, thou wilt have loved,</i> |
| 3. <i>āmāvērīt, he will have loved,</i> |
| PLUR. 1. <i>āmāvērīmūs, we shall have loved,</i> |
| 2. <i>āmāvērītīs, you will have loved,</i> |
| 3. <i>āmāvērint, they will have loved.</i> |

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--|--|
| PRES. 2. <i>āmā, love thou,</i> | <i>āmātē, love ye,</i> |
| FUT. 2. <i>āmātō, thou shalt love</i>
<i>or do thou love,</i> | <i>āmātōtē, you shall love or do</i>
<i>ye love,</i> |
| 3. <i>āmātō, he shall love or</i>
<i>let him love.</i> | <i>āmantō, they shall love or</i>
<i>let them love.</i> |

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

- | | |
|---|---|
| PRES. <i>āmārē, to love,</i> | PRES. <i>āmans, -antis, loving,</i> |
| PERF. <i>āmāvissē, to have loved,</i> | |
| FUT. <i>āmātūrūs essē, to be</i>
<i>about to love.</i> | FUT. <i>āmātūrūs, -a, -um, about</i>
<i>to love.</i> |

GERUND.

GEN. *āmandī*, of loving,
 DAT. *āmandō*, for loving,
 ACC. *āmandūm*, loving,
 ABL. *āmandō*, by loving.

SUPINE.

ACC. *āmātūm*, to love,
 ABL. *āmātū*, in the loving, to be loved.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
āmor,

Pres. Inf.
āmārī,

Perf. Ind.
āmātūs sūm.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING. 1. *āmōr*, I am loved,
 2. *āmārīs* or *-rē*, thou art loved,
 3. *āmātūr*, he is loved,
 PLUR. 1. *āmāmūr*, we are loved,
 2. *āmāmīnī*, you are loved,
 3. *āmantūr*, they are loved.

āmēr,
āmērīs or *-rē*,
āmētūr,
āmēmūr,
āmēmīnī,
āmentūr.

IMPERFECT.

SING. 1. *āmābār*, I was loved,
 2. *āmābārīs* or *-rē*, thou wast loved,
 3. *āmābātūr*, he was loved,
 PLUR. 1. *āmābāmūr*, we were loved,
 2. *āmābāmīnī*, you were loved,
 3. *āmābantūr*, they were loved.

āmārēr,
āmārērīs or *-rē*,
āmārētūr,
āmārēmūr,
āmārēmīnī,
āmārentūr.

FUTURE.

SING. 1. *āmābōr*, I shall be loved,
 2. *āmābērīs* or *-rē*, thou wilt be loved,
 3. *āmābītūr*, he will be loved,
 PLUR. 1. *āmābīmūr*, we shall be loved,
 2. *āmābīmīnī*, you will be loved,
 3. *āmābuntūr*, they will be loved.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT AND AORIST.

SING. 1.	ămătūs sŭm, <i>I have been loved, I was loved,</i>	ămătūs sĭm,
2.	ămătūs ęs, <i>thou hast been loved, etc.,</i>	ămătūs sĭs,
3.	ămătūs est, <i>he has been loved, etc.,</i>	ămătūs sĭt,
PLUR. 1.	ămătī sŭmŭs, <i>we have been loved, etc.,</i>	ămătī sĭmŭs,
2.	ămătī estĭs, <i>you have been loved, etc.,</i>	ămătī sĭtĭs,
3.	ămătī sunt, <i>they have been loved, etc.</i>	ămătī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

SING. 1.	ămătūs ęrām, <i>I had been loved,</i>	ămătūs essĕm,
2.	ămătūs ęrās, <i>thou hadst been loved,</i>	ămătūs essĕs,
3.	ămătūs ęrat, <i>he had been loved,</i>	ămătūs essĕt,
PLUR. 1.	ămătī ęrāmŭs, <i>we had been loved,</i>	ămătī essĕmŭs,
2.	ămătī ęrātĭs, <i>you had been loved,</i>	ămătī essĕtĭs,
3.	ămătī ęrant, <i>they had been loved.</i>	ămătī essent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING. 1.	ămătūs ęrŏ, <i>I shall have been loved,</i>
2.	ămătūs ęrĭs, <i>thou wilt have been loved,</i>
3.	ămătūs ęrĭt, <i>he will have been loved,</i>
PLUR. 1.	ămătī ęrĭmŭs, <i>we shall have been loved,</i>
2.	ămătī ęrĭtĭs, <i>you will have been loved,</i>
3.	ămătī ęrunt, <i>they will have been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

	Singular.	Plural.
PRES. 2.	ămārĕ, <i>be thou loved,</i>	ămāmĭnĭ, <i>be ye loved,</i>
FUT. 2.	ămătŏr, <i>thou shalt be loved,</i>	
3.	ămătŏr, <i>he shall be loved or let him be loved.</i>	ămantŏr, <i>they shall be loved or let them be loved.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ămārĭ, <i>to be loved,</i>
PERF.	ămătŭs essĕ, <i>to have been loved,</i>
FUT.	ămătŭm ĭrĭ, <i>to be about to be loved.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. *āmātūs*, *having been loved*.

GERUNDIVE. *āmandūs*, *to be loved or worthy to be loved*.

Note 1.—In all the conjugations, the auxiliaries *fui*, *fuēram*, *fuēro*, *fuērim*, *fuissem*, and *fuisse* are occasionally found instead of *sum*, *ēram*, *ēro*, *sim*, *essem*, and *esse*: as,

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PERF.	<i>āmātus fui</i> , <i>āmātus fuisti</i> , etc.,	<i>āmātus fuērim</i> , <i>āmātus fuērīs</i> , etc.,
PLUP.	<i>āmātus fuēram</i> , <i>āmātus fuērās</i> , etc.,	<i>āmātus fuissem</i> , <i>āmātus fuissēs</i> , etc.
FUT. PERF.	<i>āmātus fuēro</i> , <i>āmātus fuērīs</i> , <i>āmātus fuērit</i> , etc.	INFINITIVE. PERF. <i>āmātus fuisse</i> .

The meaning of compound tenses thus made is sometimes indistinguishable from that of the more common forms; but sometimes it differs very much as the auxiliaries themselves differ in meaning.

Note 2.—*Fōrem* is sometimes used as an auxiliary with the perfect passive participle, forming either a pluperfect subjunctive, like *essem*, or a future perfect subjunctive. In a very few cases *fōre* is used instead of *esse* as the auxiliary in the future active infinitive. With the perfect participle, *fōre* forms a future perfect infinitive passive.

Note 3.—The participle in compound tenses is varied in gender, to agree with the subject of the verb. (See 83, 1.)

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the present stem, *amā-*, are formed

	Active.	Passive.
IND. PRES.	<i>amo</i> ,	<i>amor</i> ,
IMPERF.	<i>amābam</i> ,	<i>amābar</i> ,
FUT.	<i>amābo</i> ,	<i>amābor</i> ,
SUBJ. PRES.	<i>amem</i> ,	<i>amer</i> ,
IMPERF.	<i>amārem</i> ,	<i>amārer</i> ,
IMPERAT. PRES.	<i>amā</i> ,	<i>amāre</i> ,
FUT.	<i>amāto</i> ,	<i>amātor</i> ,
INF. PRES.	<i>amāre</i> ,	<i>amāri</i> ,
PRES. PART.	<i>amans</i> ,	
GERUNDIVE.	<i>amandi</i> .	<i>amandus</i> .

From the perfect stem, *ămāv-*, are formed

	Active.
IND. PERF.	<i>amāvi</i> ,
PLUP.	<i>amavēram</i> ,
FUT. PERF.	<i>amavēro</i> ,
SUBJ. PERF.	<i>amavērim</i> ,
PLUP.	<i>amavissem</i> ,
INF. PERF.	<i>amavisse</i> .

From the supine stem, *ămāt-*, are formed

	Passive.
	<i>amātus sum</i> ,
	<i>amātus eram</i> ,
	<i>amātus ero</i> ,
	<i>amātus sim</i> ,
	<i>amātus essem</i> ,
	<i>amātus esse</i> .

From the supine stem, *ămāt-*, are formed

INF. FUT.	<i>amatūrus esse</i> ,	<i>amātum irī</i> ,
FUT. PART.	<i>amatūrus</i> ,	
PERF. PART.		<i>amātus</i> ,
SUPINE.	(<i>Acc.</i>) <i>amātum</i> .	(<i>Abl.</i>) <i>amātu</i> .

75. In the Second Conjugation, the Present Stem is the same as the Verb Stem, and ends in *e*; the Perfect drops the vowel characteristic of the Verb Stem, and adds *ui* (as *mōn-ui*), or adds *vi* to the full Stem (as *dēlē-vi*); the Supine drops the characteristic and adds *ītum* (as *mōn-ītum*), or adds *tum* to the full Verb Stem (as *dēlē-tum*).

THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

E- VERBS.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
<i>mōneō</i> ,	<i>mōnērē</i> ,	<i>mōnūī</i> ,	<i>mōnītum</i> .

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING.	1. <i>mōneō</i> , <i>I remind</i> ,	<i>mōneām</i> ,
	2. <i>mōnēs</i> , <i>thou remindest</i> ,	<i>mōneās</i> ,
	3. <i>mōnēt</i> , <i>he reminds</i> ,	<i>mōneāt</i> ,
PLUR.	1. <i>mōnēmūs</i> , <i>we remind</i> ,	<i>mōneāmūs</i> ,
	2. <i>mōnētīs</i> , <i>you remind</i> ,	<i>mōneātīs</i> ,
	3. <i>mōnent</i> , <i>they remind</i> .	<i>mōneant</i> .

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

SING. 1.	mŏnēbām, <i>I was reminding, I reminded,</i>	mŏnērēm,
2.	mŏnēbās, <i>thou wast reminding, etc.</i>	mŏnērēs,
3.	mŏnēbāt, <i>he was reminding, etc.</i>	mŏnērēt,
PLUR. 1.	mŏnēbāmūs, <i>we were reminding, etc.</i>	mŏnērēmūs,
2.	mŏnēbātīs, <i>you were reminding, etc.</i>	mŏnērētīs,
3.	mŏnēbant, <i>they were reminding, etc.</i>	mŏnērent.

FUTURE.

SING. 1.	mŏnēbo, <i>I shall remind,</i>
2.	mŏnēbīs, <i>thou wilt remind,</i>
3.	mŏnēbīt, <i>he will remind,</i>
PLUR. 1.	mŏnēbīmūs, <i>we shall remind,</i>
2.	mŏnēbītīs, <i>you will remind,</i>
3.	mŏnēbunt, <i>they will remind.</i>

PERFECT AND AORIST.

SING. 1.	mŏnuī, <i>I have reminded, I reminded,</i>	mŏnuērīm,
2.	mŏnuistī, <i>thou hast reminded, etc.</i>	mŏnuērīs,
3.	mŏnuīt, <i>he has reminded, etc.</i>	mŏnuērīt,
PLUR. 1.	mŏnuīmūs, <i>we have reminded, etc.</i>	mŏnuērīmūs,
2.	mŏnuistīs, <i>you have reminded, etc.</i>	mŏnuērītīs,
3.	mŏnuērunt (rē), <i>they have reminded, etc.</i>	mŏnuērint.

PLUPERFECT.

SING. 1.	mŏnuērām, <i>I had reminded,</i>	mŏnuissēm,
2.	mŏnuērās, <i>thou hadst reminded,</i>	mŏnuissēs,
3.	mŏnuērāt, <i>he had reminded,</i>	mŏnuissēt,
PLUR. 1.	mŏnuērāmūs, <i>we had reminded,</i>	mŏnuissēmūs,
2.	mŏnuērātīs, <i>you had reminded,</i>	mŏnuissētīs,
3.	mŏnuērant, <i>they had reminded.</i>	mŏnuissent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING. 1.	mŏnuērō, <i>I shall have reminded,</i>
2.	mŏnuērīs, <i>thou wilt have reminded,</i>
3.	mŏnuērīt, <i>he will have reminded,</i>
PLUR. 1.	mŏnuērīmūs, <i>we shall have reminded,</i>
2.	mŏnuērītīs, <i>you will have reminded,</i>
3.	mŏnuērint, <i>they will have reminded.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

PRES. 2. mǎnē, *remind thou,*FUT. 2. mǎnētō, *thou shalt remind or do thou remind,*3. mǎnētō, *he shall remind or let him remind.*

Plural.

PRES. 2. mǎnētē, *remind ye,*FUT. 2. mǎnētōtē, *ye shall remind or do ye remind,*3. mǎnentō, *they shall remind or let them remind.*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. mǎnērē, *to remind,*PRES. mǎnens, *reminding,*PERF. mǎnuissē, *to have re-*
 *minded,*FUT. mǎnītūrūs, *about to remind.*FUT. mǎnītūrūs essē, *to be about to remind.*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

GEN. mǎnendī, *of reminding,*DAT. mǎnendō, *for reminding,*ACC. mǎnendūm, *reminding,* mǎnītūm, *to remind,*ABL. mǎnendō, *by reminding.* mǎnītū, *in the reminding, to be*
reminded.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

mǎneōr,

Pres. Inf.

mǎnērī,

Perf. Ind.

mǎnītūs sūm.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING. 1. mǎneōr, *I am reminded,*

mǎneār,

2. mǎnērīs (rē), *thou art reminded,*

mǎneāris (rē),

3. mǎnētūr, *he is reminded,*

mǎneātūr,

PLUR. 1. mǎnēmūr, *we are reminded,*

mǎneāmur,

2. mǎnēmīnī, *you are reminded,*

mǎneāmīnī,

3. mǎnentūr, *they are reminded,*

mǎneāntūr.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

SING. 1.	mōnēbār, <i>I was reminded,</i>	mōnērēr,
2.	mōnēbārīs (rē), <i>thou wast reminded,</i>	mōnērērīs (rē),
3.	mōnēbātūr, <i>he was reminded,</i>	mōnērētūr,
PLUR. 1.	mōnēbāmūr, <i>we were reminded,</i>	mōnērēmūr,
2.	mōnēbāmīnī, <i>you were reminded,</i>	mōnērēmīnī,
3.	mōnēbantūr, <i>they were reminded.</i>	mōnērentūr.

FUTURE.

SING. 1.	mōnēbōr, <i>I shall be reminded,</i>
2.	mōnēbērīs (rē), <i>thou wilt be reminded,</i>
3.	mōnēbītūr, <i>he will be reminded,</i>
PLUR. 1.	mōnēbīmūr, <i>we shall be reminded,</i>
2.	mōnēbīmīnī, <i>you will be reminded,</i>
3.	mōnēbuntūr, <i>they will be reminded.</i>

PERFECT AND AORIST.

SING. 1.	mōnītūs sūm, <i>I have been reminded,</i> <i>I was reminded,</i>	mōnītūs sīm,
2.	mōnītūs ēs, <i>thou hast been reminded,</i> <i>thou wast reminded,</i>	mōnītūs sīs,
3.	mōnītūs est, <i>he has been reminded, he</i> <i>was reminded,</i>	mōnītūs sīt, -
PLUR. 1.	mōnītī sūmūs, <i>we have been reminded,</i> <i>we were reminded,</i>	mōnītī sīmūs,
2.	mōnītī estīs, <i>you have been reminded,</i> <i>you were reminded,</i>	mōnītī sītīs,
3.	mōnītī sunt, <i>they have been reminded,</i> <i>they were reminded,</i>	mōnītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

SING. 1.	mōnītūs ērām, <i>I had been reminded,</i>	mōnītūs essēm,
2.	mōnītūs ērās, <i>thou hadst been re-</i> <i>minded,</i>	mōnītūs essēs,
3.	mōnītūs ērāt, <i>he had been reminded,</i>	mōnītūs essēt,
PLUR. 1.	mōnītī ērāmūs, <i>we had been re-</i> <i>minded,</i>	mōnītī essēmūs,
2.	mōnītī ērātīs, <i>you had been reminded,</i>	mōnītī essētīs,
3.	mōnītī ērant, <i>they had been reminded.</i>	mōnītī essent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

- SING. 1. mōnītūs ērō, *I shall have been reminded,*
 2. mōnītūs ēris, *thou wilt have been reminded,*
 3. mōnītūs ērit, *he will have been reminded,*
 PLUR. 1. mōnītī ērimūs, *we shall have been reminded,*
 2. mōnītī ēritīs, *you will have been reminded,*
 3. mōnītī ērunt, *they will have been reminded.*

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

- PRES. 2. mōnērē, *be thou reminded,*
 FUT. 2. mōnētōr, *thou shalt be reminded,*
 3. mōnētōr, *he shall be reminded or let him be reminded.*

Plural.

- PRES. 2. mōnēmīnī, *be ye reminded,*
 FUT. 3. mōnentōr, *they shall be reminded or let them be reminded.*

INFINITIVE.

- PRES. mōnērī, *to be reminded,*
 PERF. mōnītūs essē, *to have been reminded,*
 FUT. mōnītum īrī, *to be about to be reminded.*

PARTICIPLES.

- PERF. mōnītūs, *having been reminded,*
 GERUNDIVE. mōnendūs, *to be reminded or worthy to be reminded.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the present stem, mōnē-, are formed

	Active.	Passive.
IND. PRES.	moneo,	moneor,
IMPERF.	monēbam,	monēbar,
FUT.	monēbo,	monēbor,
SUBJ. PRES.	moneam,	monear,
IMPERF.	monērem,	monērer,
IMPERAT. PRES.	monē,	monēre,
FUT.	monēto,	monētor,
INF. PRES.	monēre,	monēri,
PRES. PART.	monens,	
GERUNDIVE.		monendus.
GERUND.	monendi.	

From the perfect stem, **mōnŭ-**, are formed From the supine stem, **mōnīt-**, are formed

	Active.	Passive.
IND. PERF.	monui,	monītus sum,
PLUP.	monuēram,	monītus eram,
FUT. PERF.	monuēro,	monītus ero,
SUBJ. PERF.	monuērim,	monītus sim,
PLUP.	monuisssem,	monītus essem,
INF. PERF.	monuisse,	monītus esse.

From the supine stem, **mōnīt-**, are formed

INF. FUT.	monitūrus esse,	monītum iri,
FUT. PART.	monitūrus,	
PERF. PART.		monītus,
SUPINES.	(Acc.) monītum.	(Abl.) monītū.

76. In the Third Conjugation, the Present Stem is sometimes the same as the Verb Stem, and sometimes modified (94). It ends (or is regarded as ending) in a consonant, or in u or i. The endings of the Perfect and Supine are various.

THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

CONSONANT VERBS.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
rēgō,	rēgērē,	rexī,	rectūm.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING.	1. rēgō, <i>I rule,</i>	rēgam,
	2. rēgīs, <i>thou rulest,</i>	rēgās,
	3. rēgīt, <i>he rules,</i>	rēgāt,
PLUR.	1. rēgīmūs, <i>we rule,</i>	rēgāmūs,
	2. rēgītīs, <i>you rule,</i>	rēgātīs,
	3. rēgunt, <i>they rule.</i>	rēgant.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

SING.	1. rĕgĕbām, <i>I was ruling, I ruled,</i>	rĕgĕrĕm,
	2. rĕgĕbās, <i>thou wast ruling, etc.,</i>	rĕgĕrēs,
	3. rĕgĕbāt, <i>he was ruling, etc.,</i>	rĕgĕrēt,
PLUR.	1. rĕgĕbāmūs, <i>we were ruling, etc.,</i>	rĕgĕrēmūs,
	2. rĕgĕbātīs, <i>you were ruling, etc.,</i>	rĕgĕrētīs,
	3. rĕgĕbant, <i>they were ruling, etc.</i>	rĕgĕrent.

FUTURE.

SING.	1. rĕgām, <i>I shall rule,</i>
	2. rĕgēs, <i>thou wilt rule,</i>
	3. rĕgēt, <i>he will rule,</i>
PLUR.	1. rĕgēmūs, <i>we shall rule,</i>
	2. rĕgētīs, <i>you will rule,</i>
	3. rĕgent, <i>they will rule.</i>

PERFECT AND AORIST.

SING.	1. rexī, <i>I have ruled, I ruled,</i>	rexĕrĭm,
	2. rexistī, <i>thou hast ruled, thou ruledst,</i>	rexĕrīs,
	3. rexīt, <i>he has ruled, he ruled,</i>	rexĕrīt,
PLUR.	1. rexīmūs, <i>we have ruled, we ruled,</i>	rexĕrĭmūs,
	2. rexistīs, <i>you have ruled, you ruled,</i>	rexĕrītīs,
	3. rexērunt or (rĕ), <i>they have ruled, they ruled.</i>	rexĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

SING.	1. rexĕrām, <i>I had ruled,</i>	rexissĕm,
	2. rexĕrās, <i>thou hadst ruled,</i>	rexissēs,
	3. rexĕrāt, <i>he had ruled,</i>	rexissēt,
PLUR.	1. rexĕrāmūs, <i>we had ruled,</i>	rexissēmūs,
	2. rexĕrātīs, <i>you had ruled,</i>	rexissētīs,
	3. rexĕrant, <i>they had ruled.</i>	rexissent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING.	1. rexĕrō, <i>I shall have ruled,</i>
	2. rexĕrīs, <i>thou wilt have ruled,</i>
	3. rexĕrīt, <i>he will have ruled,</i>
PLUR.	1. rexĕrĭmus, <i>we shall have ruled,</i>
	2. rexĕrītīs, <i>you will have ruled,</i>
	3. rexĕrint, <i>they will have ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

PRES. 2. *rĕgĕ*, rule thou,FUT. 2. *rĕgītō*, thou shalt rule or do thou rule,3. *rĕgītō*, he shall rule or let him rule.

Plural.

PRES. 2. *rĕgītĕ*, rule ye,FUT. 2. *rĕgītōtĕ*, ye shall rule or do ye rule,3. *rĕguntō*, they shall rule or let them rule.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. *rĕgĕrĕ*, to rule,PERF. *rexissĕ*, to have ruled,FUT. *rectūrŭs essĕ*, to be about to rule.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. *rĕgens*, ruling,FUT. *rectūrŭs*, about to rule.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

GEN. *rĕgendī*, of ruling,DAT. *rĕgendō*, for ruling,ACC. *rĕgendŭm*, ruling,ABL. *rĕgendō*, by ruling.ACC. *rectŭm*, to rule,ABL. *rectŭ*, in the ruling, to be ruled.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

rĕgŏr,

Pres. Inf.

rĕgĭ,

Perf. Inf.

rectus sŭm.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING. 1. *rĕgŏr*, I am ruled,2. *rĕgĕrĭs (rĕ)*, thou art ruled,3. *rĕgĭtŭr*, he is ruled,PLUR. 1. *rĕgĭmŭr*, we are ruled,2. *rĕgĭmĭnĭ*, you are ruled,3. *rĕguntŭr*, they are ruled.*rĕgĕr*,*rĕgĕrĭs (rĕ)*,*rĕgĕtŭr*,*rĕgĕmŭr*,*rĕgĕmĭnĭ*,*rĕgantŭr*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

SING. 1. rēgēbār, <i>I was ruled,</i>	rēgērēr,
2. rēgēbārīs (rē), <i>thou wast ruled,</i>	rēgērērīs (rē),
3. rēgēbātūr, <i>he was ruled,</i>	rēgērētūr,
PLUR. 1. rēgēbāmūr, <i>we were ruled,</i>	rēgērēmūr,
2. rēgēbāmīnī, <i>you were ruled,</i>	rēgērēmīnī,
3. rēgēbantūr, <i>they were ruled.</i>	rēgērentūr.

FUTURE.

SING. 1. rēgār, <i>I shall be ruled,</i>
2. rēgērīs (rē), <i>thou wilt be ruled,</i>
3. rēgētūr, <i>he will be ruled,</i>
PLUR. 1. rēgēmūr, <i>we shall be ruled,</i>
2. rēgēmīnī, <i>you will be ruled,</i>
3. rēgentūr, <i>they will be ruled.</i>

PERFECT AND AORIST.

SING. 1. rectūs sūm, <i>I have been ruled, I was ruled,</i>	rectūs sīm,
2. rectūs ēs, <i>thou hast been ruled, etc.,</i>	rectūs sīs,
3. rectūs est, <i>he has been ruled, etc.,</i>	rectūs sīt,
PLUR. 1. rectī sūmūs, <i>we have been ruled, etc.,</i>	rectī sīmūs,
2. rectī estīs, <i>you have been ruled, etc.,</i>	rectī sītīs,
3. rectī sunt, <i>they have been ruled, etc.</i>	rectī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

SING. 1. rectūs ērām, <i>I had been ruled,</i>	rectūs ēssēm,
2. rectūs ērās, <i>thou hadst been ruled,</i>	rectūs essēs,
3. rectūs ērāt, <i>he had been ruled,</i>	rectūs essēt,
PLUR. 1. rectī ērāmūs, <i>we had been ruled,</i>	rectī essēmūs,
2. rectī ērātīs, <i>you had been ruled,</i>	rectī essētīs,
3. rectī ērant, <i>they had been ruled.</i>	rectī essent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING. 1. rectūs ērō, <i>I shall have been ruled,</i>
2. rectūs ērīs, <i>thou wilt have been ruled,</i>
3. rectūs ērīt, <i>he will have been ruled,</i>
PLUR. 1. rectī ērīmūs, <i>we shall have been ruled,</i>
2. rectī ērītīs, <i>you will have been ruled,</i>
3. rectī ērunt, <i>they will have been ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

PRES. 2. *rĕgĕrĕ*, *be thou ruled*,FUT. 2. *rĕgĭtŏr*, *thou shalt be ruled*,3. *rĕgĭtŏr*, *he shall be ruled or let him be ruled*.

Plural.

PRES. 2. *rĕgĭmĭnĭ*, *be ye ruled*,FUT. 3. *rĕguntŏr*, *they shall be ruled or let them be ruled*.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. *rĕgĭ*, *to be ruled*,PERF. *rectŭs essĕ*, *to have been ruled*,FUT. *rectŭm ĭrĭ*, *to be about to be ruled*.

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. *rectŭs*, *ruled, having been ruled*,GERUNDIVE. *rĕgendŭs*, *to be ruled, worthy to be ruled*.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the present stem, *rĕg-*, are formed

	Active.	Passive.
IND. PRES.	<i>rego</i> ,	<i>regor</i> ,
IMPERF.	<i>regĕbam</i> ,	<i>regĕbar</i> ,
FUT.	<i>regam</i> ,	<i>regar</i> ,
SUBJ. PRES.	<i>regam</i> ,	<i>regar</i> ,
IMPERF.	<i>regĕrem</i> ,	<i>regĕrer</i> ,
IMPERAT. PRES.	<i>rege</i> ,	<i>regĕre</i> ,
FUT.	<i>regĭto</i> ,	<i>regĭtor</i> ,
INF. PRES.	<i>regĕre</i> ,	<i>regi</i> ,
PRES. PART.	<i>regens</i> ,	
GER. AND GERUNDIVE.	<i>regendi</i> .	<i>regendus</i> .

From the perfect stem, *rex-*,
are formedFrom the supine stem, *rect-*,
are formed

	Active.	Passive.
IND. PERF.	<i>rexĭ</i> ,	<i>rectus sum</i> ,
PLUP.	<i>rexĕram</i> ,	<i>rectus eram</i> ,
FUT. PERF.	<i>rexĕro</i> ,	<i>rectus ero</i> ,
SUBJ. PERF.	<i>rexĕrim</i> ,	<i>rectus sim</i> ,
PLUP.	<i>rexissem</i> ,	<i>rectus essem</i> ,
INF. PERF.	<i>rexisse</i> .	<i>rectus esse</i> .

From the Supine stem, *rect-*, are formed

	Active.	Passive.
INF. FUT.	<i>rectūrus esse</i> ,	<i>rectum iri</i> ,
FUT. PART.	<i>rectūrus</i> ,	
PERF. PART.		<i>rectus</i> ,
SUPINES.	(<i>Acc.</i>) <i>rectum</i> .	(<i>Abl.</i>) <i>rectu</i> .

77. In Verbs in *-io* of the Third Conjugation, the *i* falls out when an *i* or *er* follows : as, *capis*, for *capi-is*; *capērem*, for *capi-ērem*. They are inflected as follows :

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Sup.
<i>căpiŏ</i> ,	<i>căpērē</i> ,	<i>cēpī</i> ,	<i>căptūm</i> .

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING.	1. <i>căpiŏ</i> , <i>I take</i> ,	<i>căpiām</i> ,
	2. <i>căpīs</i> , <i>thou takest</i> ,	<i>căpiās</i> ,
	3. <i>căpīt</i> , <i>he takes</i> ,	<i>căpiāt</i> ,
PLUR.	1. <i>căpīmūs</i> , <i>we take</i> ,	<i>căpiāmūs</i> ,
	2. <i>căpītīs</i> , <i>you take</i> ,	<i>căpiātīs</i> ,
	3. <i>căpiunt</i> , <i>they take</i> .	<i>căpīant</i> .

IMPERFECT.

SING.	1. <i>căpiēbām</i> , <i>I was taking, I took</i> ,	<i>căpērēm</i> ,
	2. <i>căpiēbās</i> , <i>thou wast taking, thou didst take</i> ,	<i>căpērēs</i> ,
	3. <i>căpiēbāt</i> , <i>he was taking, he took</i> ,	<i>căpērēt</i> ,
PLUR.	1. <i>căpiēbāmūs</i> , <i>we were taking, we took</i> ,	<i>căpērēmūs</i> ,
	2. <i>căpiēbātīs</i> , <i>you were taking, you took</i> ,	<i>căpērētīs</i> ,
	3. <i>căpiēbant</i> , <i>they were taking, they took</i> .	<i>căpērent</i> .

FUTURE.

SING.	1. <i>căpiām</i> , <i>I shall take</i> ,
	2. <i>căpiēs</i> , <i>thou wilt take</i> ,
	3. <i>căpiēt</i> , <i>he will take</i> ,
PLUR.	1. <i>căpiēmūs</i> , <i>we shall take</i> ,
	2. <i>căpiētīs</i> , <i>you will take</i> ,
	3. <i>căpient</i> , <i>they will take</i> .

PERFECT AND AORIST, *I have taken, I took*.

cēpī, etc.

căpērīm, etc.

PLUPERFECT, *I had taken.*

cēpērām, etc.

cēpissēm, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have taken.*

cēpērō, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

PRES. 2. cāpě,
 FUT. 2. cāpītō,
 3. cāpītō,

Plural.

cāpītě,
 cāpītōtě,
 cāpiuntō.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. cāpěrě,
 PERF. cēpissě,
 FUT. captūrūs essě.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. cāpiens,
 FUT. captūrūs.

GERUND.

cāpiendī, etc.

SUPINES.

Acc. captūm; ABL. captū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
 cāpiōr,

Pres. Inf.
 cāpī,

Perf. Ind.
 captūs sūm.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING. 1. cāpiōr, *I am taken*,
 2. cāpěrīs (rě), *thou art taken*,
 3. cāpītūr, *he is taken*,
 PLUR. 1. cāpīmūr, *we are taken*,
 2. cāpīmīnī, *you are taken*,
 3. cāpiuntūr, *they are taken*.

cāpiār,
 cāpiārīs (rě),
 cāpiātūr,
 cāpiāmūr,
 cāpiāmīnī,
 cāpīantūr.

IMPERFECT.

SING. 1. cāpiēbār, *I was taken*,
 2. cāpiēbārīs (rě), *thou wast taken*,
 3. cāpiēbātūr, *he was taken*,

cāpěrēr,
 cāpěrērīs (rě),
 cāpěrētūr,

INDICATIVE.

- PLUR. 1. cāpiēbāmūr, *we were taken*,
 2. cāpiēbāmīnī, *you were taken*,
 3. cāpiēbantūr, *they were taken*.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

- cāpērēmūr,
 cāpērēmīnī,
 cāpērentūr.

FUTURE.

- SING. 1. cāpiār, *I shall be taken*,
 2. cāpiēris (rē), *thou wilt be taken*,
 3. cāpiētūr, *he will be taken*,
 PLUR. 1. cāpiēmūr, *we shall be taken*,
 2. cāpiēmīnī, *you will be taken*,
 3. cāpientūr, *they will be taken*.

PERFECT AND AORIST, *I have been taken, I was taken.*

captūs sūm,

captūs sim.

PLUPERFECT, *I had been taken.*

captūs ērām,

captūs essēm.

FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have been taken.*

captūs ērō.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

- PRES. 2. cāpērē,
 FUT. 2. cāpītōr,
 3. cāpītōr.

Plural.

- cāpīmīnī,
 cāpiuntōr.

INFINITIVE.

- PRES. cāpī,
 PERF. captūs essē,
 FUT. captūm īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

- PERF. captūs, ā, ūm.
 GERUNDIVE. cāpiendūs, ā, ūm.

78. In the **Fourth Conjugation**, the **Verb Stem** and the **Present Stem** end in **ī**; to this termination the **Perfect** adds **vi**, and the **Supine**, **tum**.

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

I- VERBS.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
audiō,	audīrē,	audīvī,	audītūm.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING.	1. audiō, <i>I hear,</i>	audiām,
	2. audīs, <i>thou hearest,</i>	audiās,
	3. audīt, <i>he hears,</i>	audiāt,
PLUR.	1. audīmūs, <i>we hear,</i>	audiāmūs,
	2. audītīs, <i>you hear,</i>	audiātīs,
	3. audiunt, <i>they hear.</i>	audiant.

IMPERFECT.

SING.	1. audiēbām, <i>I was hearing, I heard,</i>	audīrēm,
	2. audiēbās, <i>thou wast hearing, etc.,</i>	audīrēs,
	3. audiēbāt, <i>he was hearing, etc.,</i>	audīrēt,
PLUR.	1. audiēbāmūs, <i>we were hearing, etc.,</i>	audīrēmūs,
	2. audiēbātīs, <i>you were hearing, etc.,</i>	audīrētīs,
	3. audiēbant, <i>they were hearing, etc.</i>	audīrent.

FUTURE.

SING.	1. audiām, <i>I shall hear,</i>
	2. audiēs, <i>thou wilt hear,</i>
	3. audiēt, <i>he will hear,</i>
PLUR.	1. audiēmūs, <i>we shall hear,</i>
	2. audiētīs, <i>you will hear,</i>
	3. audient, <i>they will hear.</i>

PERFECT AND AORIST.

SING.	1. audīvī, <i>I have heard, I heard,</i>	audivērim,
	2. audivistī, <i>thou hast heard, thou heardst,</i>	audivērīs,
	3. audivīt, <i>he has heard, he heard,</i>	audivērīt.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PLUR. 1. audivīmūs, <i>we have heard, we heard,</i>	audivērimūs,
2. audivistīs, <i>you have heard, you heard,</i>	audivērītīs,
3. audivērunt (rě), <i>they have heard, they heard.</i>	} audivērint.

PLUPERFECT.

SING. 1. audivērām, <i>I had heard,</i>	audivissēm,
2. audivērās, <i>thou hadst heard,</i>	audivissēs,
3. audivērāt, <i>he had heard,</i>	audivissēt,
PLUR. 1. audivērāmūs, <i>we had heard,</i>	audivissēmūs,
2. audivērātīs, <i>you had heard,</i>	audivissētīs,
3. audivērant, <i>they had heard.</i>	audivissent.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING. 1. audivērō, <i>I shall have heard,</i>
2. audivērīs, <i>thou wilt have heard,</i>
3. audivērīt, <i>he will have heard,</i>
PLUR. 1. audivērimūs, <i>we shall have heard,</i>
2. audivērītīs, <i>you will have heard,</i>
3. audivērint, <i>they will have heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.	Plural.
PRES. 2. audī, <i>hear thou,</i>	audītē, <i>hear ye,</i>
FUT. 2. audītō, <i>thou shalt hear</i>	audītōtē, <i>ye shall hear or do</i>
<i>or do thou hear,</i>	<i>ye hear,</i>
3. audītō, <i>he shall hear or</i>	audiuntō, <i>they shall hear or</i>
<i>let him hear.</i>	<i>let them hear.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. audīrē, <i>to hear,</i>	PRES. audiens, <i>hearing,</i>
PERF. audivissē, <i>to have heard,</i>	
FUT. audītūrūs essē, <i>to be about to hear.</i>	FUT. audītūrūs, <i>about to hear.</i>

GERUND.

GEN. audiendī, <i>of hearing,</i>	Acc. audiendūm, <i>hearing,</i>
DAT. audiendō, <i>for hearing,</i>	ABL. audiendō, <i>by hearing.</i>

SUPINE.

ACC. audītūm, *to hear,*ABL. audītū, *in the hearing, to be heard.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
audiōr,Pres. Inf.
audīrī,Perf. Ind.
audītūs sūm.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

- SING. 1. audiōr, *I am heard,*
 2. audīrīs (rě), *thou art heard,*
 3. audītūr, *he is heard,*
- PLUR. 1. audīmūr, *we are heard,*
 2. audīmīnī, *you are heard,*
 3. audiuntūr, *they are heard.*

audiār,
 audiārīs (rě),
 audiātūr,
 audiāmūr,
 audiāmīnī,
 audiantūr.

IMPERFECT.

- SING. 1. audiēbār, *I was heard,*
 2. audiēbārīs (rě), *thou wast heard,*
 3. audiēbātūr, *he was heard,*
- PLUR. 1. audiēbāmūr, *we were heard,*
 2. audiēbāmīnī, *you were heard,*
 3. audiēbantūr, *they were heard.*

audīrēr,
 audīrērīs (rě),
 audīrētūr,
 audīrēmūr,
 audīrēmīnī,
 audīrentur.

FUTURE.

- SING. 1. audiār, *I shall be heard,*
 2. audiārīs (rě), *thou wilt be heard,*
 3. audiētūr, *he will be heard,*
- PLUR. 1. audiēmūr, *we shall be heard,*
 2. audiēmīnī, *you will be heard,*
 3. audientūr, *they will be heard.*

PERFECT AND AORIST.

- SING. 1. audītūs sūm, *I have been heard, I*
 was heard,
 2. audītūs ēs, *thou hast been heard, etc.,*
 3. audītūs est, *he has been heard, etc.,*

audītūs sīm,
 audītūs sīs,
 audītūs sīt,

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT AND AORIST.

- | | |
|---|---------------|
| PLUR. 1. auditī sūmūs, <i>we have been heard, etc.,</i> | auditī sīmūs, |
| 2. auditī estīs, <i>you have been heard, etc.,</i> | auditī sitīs, |
| 3. auditī sunt, <i>they have been heard, etc.,</i> | auditī sint. |

PLUPERFECT.

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| SING. 1. auditūs ērām, <i>I had been heard,</i> | auditūs essēm, |
| 2. auditūs ērās, <i>thou hadst been heard,</i> | auditūs essēs, |
| 3. auditūs ērāt, <i>he had been heard,</i> | auditūs essēt, |
| PLUR. 1. auditī ērāmūs, <i>we had been heard,</i> | auditī essēmūs, |
| 2. auditī ērātīs, <i>you had been heard,</i> | auditī essētīs, |
| 3. auditī ērant, <i>they had been heard.</i> | auditī essent. |

FUTURE PERFECT.

- | |
|--|
| SING. 1. auditūs ērō, <i>I shall have been heard,</i> |
| 2. auditūs ērīs, <i>thou wilt have been heard,</i> |
| 3. auditūs ērit, <i>he will have been heard,</i> |
| PLUR. 1. auditī ērīmūs, <i>we shall have been heard,</i> |
| 2. auditī ēritīs, <i>you will have been heard,</i> |
| 3. auditī ērunt, <i>they will have been heard.</i> |

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

- | |
|---|
| PRES. 2. audīrē, <i>be thou heard,</i> |
| FUT. 2. audītōr, <i>thou shalt be heard,</i> |
| 3. audītōr, <i>he shall be heard or let him be heard.</i> |

Plural.

- | |
|---|
| PRES. 2. audīmīnī, <i>be ye heard,</i> |
| FUT. 3. audiuntōr, <i>they shall be heard or let them be heard.</i> |

INFINITIVE.

- | |
|---|
| PRES. audīrī, <i>to be heard,</i> |
| PERF. auditūs essē, <i>to have been heard,</i> |
| FUT. auditūm irī, <i>to be about to be heard.</i> |

PARTICIPLES.

- | |
|---|
| PERF. auditūs, <i>heard, having been heard,</i> |
| GERUNDIVE. audiendūs, <i>to be heard, worthy to be heard.</i> |

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the present stem, *audī-*, are formed

	Active.	Passive.
IND. PRES.	<i>audio,</i>	<i>audior,</i>
IMPERF.	<i>audiēbam,</i>	<i>audiēbar,</i>
FUT.	<i>audiam,</i>	<i>audiar,</i>
SUBJ. PRES.	<i>audiam,</i>	<i>audiar,</i>
IMPERF.	<i>audīrem,</i>	<i>audīrer,</i>
IMPERAT. PRES.	<i>audi,</i>	<i>audīre,</i>
FUT.	<i>audīto,</i>	<i>audītor,</i>
INF. PRES.	<i>audīre,</i>	<i>audīri,</i>
PRES. PART.	<i>audiens,</i>	
GERUNDIVE.		<i>audiendus.</i>
GERUND.	<i>audiendi.</i>	

From the perfect stem, *audīv-*,
are formed

	Active.	Passive.
IND. PERF.	<i>audivi,</i>	<i>auditus sum,</i>
PLUP.	<i>audivēram,</i>	<i>auditus eram,</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>audivēro,</i>	<i>auditus ero,</i>
SUBJ. PERF.	<i>audivērim,</i>	<i>auditus sim,</i>
PLUP.	<i>audivissem,</i>	<i>auditus essem,</i>
INF. PERF.	<i>audivisse.</i>	<i>auditus esse,</i>

From the supine stem, *audīt-*,
are formed

From the supine stem, *audīt-*, are formed

INF. FUT.	<i>auditūrus esse,</i>	<i>auditum iri,</i>
FUT. PART.	<i>auditūrus,</i>	
PERF. PART.		<i>auditus,</i>
ACC. SUPINE.	<i>auditum.</i>	
ABL. SUPINE.		<i>auditu.</i>

79. DEPONENT VERBS.

Deponent verbs have the **inflections** of the **Passive Voice** with the **meanings** of the **Active**, and have also a present and future participle active and the gerunds and supines.

The following synopsis gives the first person singular, or other leading form, of the verbs *prēcōr*, *pray*; *vēreōr*, *fear*; *sēquōr*, *follow*; *partiōr*, *divide*:

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1st Conjugation.

2d Conj.

PRESENT,	<i>prēcōr, I pray or I am praying,</i>	<i>věreor,</i>
IMPERFECT,	<i>prēcābar, I was praying or I prayed,</i>	<i>věrēbar,</i>
FUTURE,	<i>prēcābor, I shall pray,</i>	<i>věrēbor,</i>
PERF. AND AOR.,	<i>prēcātus sum, I have prayed or I prayed,</i>	<i>věrītus sum,</i>
PLUPERFECT,	<i>prēcātus ēram, I had prayed,</i>	<i>věrītus ēram,</i>
FUTURE PERF.,	<i>prēcātus ēro, I shall have prayed.</i>	<i>věrītus ēro.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT,	<i>prēcē, I be praying, I pray, etc.,</i>	<i>věrear,</i>
IMPERFECT,	<i>prēcārē, I were praying, I prayed, etc.,</i>	<i>věrērē,</i>
PERF. AND AOR.,	<i>prēcātus sim, I prayed, etc.,</i>	<i>věrītus sim,</i>
PLUPERFECT,	<i>prēcātus essem, I had prayed, etc.</i>	<i>věrītus essem.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT,	<i>prēcāřē, pray or pray thou,</i>	<i>věrēřē,</i>
FUTURE,	<i>prēcātor, thou shalt pray.</i>	<i>věrētor.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT,	<i>prēcārī, to pray,</i>	<i>věrērī,</i>
PERFECT,	<i>prēcātus esse, to have prayed,</i>	<i>věrītus esse,</i>
FUTURE,	<i>prēcātūrus esse, to be about to pray.</i>	<i>věrītūrus esse.</i>

PARTICIPLES, ETC.

PRESENT,	<i>prēcans, praying,</i>	<i>věrens,</i>
FUTURE,	<i>prēcātūrus, going to pray,</i>	<i>věrītūrus,</i>
PERFECT,	<i>prēcātus, having prayed,</i>	<i>věrītus,</i>
GERUND,	<i>prēcandī, of praying,</i>	<i>věrendī,</i>
GERUNDIVE,	<i>prēcandus, to be prayed,</i>	<i>věrendus,</i>
ACC. SUPINE,	<i>prēcātum, to pray,</i>	<i>věrītum,</i>
ABL. SUPINE,	<i>prēcātū, in praying.</i>	<i>věrītū.</i>

DEPONENT VERBS.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	3d Conjugation.	4th Conj.
PRESENT,	<i>sēquor, I follow or I am following,</i>	<i>partior,</i>
IMPERFECT,	<i>sēquēbar, I was following or I followed,</i>	<i>partiebar,</i>
FUTURE,	<i>sēquar, I shall follow,</i>	<i>partiar,</i>
PERF. AND AOR.,	<i>sēcūtus sum, I have followed or I followed,</i>	<i>partītus sum,</i>
PLUPERFECT,	<i>sēcūtus ēram, I had followed,</i>	<i>partītus ēram,</i>
FUTURE PERF.,	<i>sēcūtus ēro, I shall have followed.</i>	<i>partītus ēro.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT,	<i>sēquar, I be following, I follow, etc.,</i>	<i>partiar,</i>
IMPERFECT,	<i>sēquērer, I were following, I followed, etc.,</i>	<i>partīrer,</i>
PERF. AND AOR.,	<i>sēcūtus sim, I followed, etc.,</i>	<i>partītus sim,</i>
PLUPERFECT,	<i>sēcūtus essem, I had followed, etc.</i>	<i>partītus essem.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT,	<i>sēquēre, follow or follow thou,</i>	<i>partīre,</i>
FUTURE,	<i>sēcūtor, thou shalt follow.</i>	<i>partītor.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT,	<i>sēquī, to follow,</i>	<i>partīrī,</i>
PERFECT,	<i>sēcūtus esse, to have followed,</i>	<i>partītus esse,</i>
FUTURE,	<i>sēcūtūrus esse, to be about to follow.</i>	<i>partītūrus esse.</i>

PARTICIPLES, ETC.

PRESENT,	<i>sēquens, following,</i>	<i>partiens,</i>
FUTURE,	<i>sēcūtūrus, going to follow,</i>	<i>partītūrus,</i>
PERFECT,	<i>sēcūtus, having followed,</i>	<i>partītus,</i>
GERUND,	<i>sēquendī, of following,</i>	<i>partiendī,</i>
GERUNDIVE,	<i>sēquendus, to be followed,</i>	<i>partiendus,</i>
ACC. SUPINE,	<i>sēcūtum, to follow,</i>	<i>partītum,</i>
ABL. SUPINE,	<i>sēcūtū, in following.</i>	<i>partītū.</i>

80. Some Deponents originate in the reflexive use of the Passive, like the Greek Middle: as, *glōrior*, *I boast (myself)*; *vescor*, *I feed (myself)*. Others grow out of Passive verbs: as, *grāvor*, *I grudge*, *I am loth* (literally, *I am burdened*).

1. More than half of the Deponents are of the First Conjugation, mostly derived from nouns.

2. Some Deponents have also an Active form with a similar meaning: as, *pūnior* and *pūnio*, *I punish*; *ādūlor* and *ādūlo*, *I fawn*.

3. Many Deponents are occasionally used in a passive sense: as, *pōpūlāri*, *to plunder or to be plundered*; *partīri*, *to divide or to be divided*.

4. The perfect participle in *us* of Deponent verbs is often used in a passive sense: as, *ādeptus*, *being obtained*, as well as *having obtained*. The passive signification is confined chiefly, however, to material objects: as, *ādeptā libertāte*, but not *ādeptō mārītō*.

5. The gerundive is found only in transitive verbs (as *hortandus*), or in the neuter in impersonal constructions (as *mōriendum est omnībus*).

81. Quasi-Passives.—A few verbs of active form are used in a passive sense, and are called Quasi-Passive or Neutral Passive verbs. These are *exsūlo*, *I am banished*, *vāpūlo*, *I am beaten*, *fio*, when meaning *I am made*, *vēnēo*, *I am on sale*, *I am sold*, *līceo*, *I am put to auction* (but *līceor*, *I bid at an auction*). To this list some add *pēreo*, *I am lost or destroyed*.

1. **Semi-Deponents.**—The intransitive verbs *audeo*, *I dare*, *gaudeo*, *I rejoice*, *sōleo*, *I am wont*, *fīdo*, *I trust*, and *fio*, *I become*, have the passive form in the perfect and its cognate tenses; hence they are called Semi-Deponents or Neuter Passives.

2. The following verbs have an active perfect, with a passive perfect participle, active in sense: *cēno*, *cēnāvi*, *I supped*, *cēnātus*, *having supped*; *jūro*, *jūrāvi*, *I swore*, *jūrātus*, *having sworn*; *prandeo*, *prandi*, *I dined*, *pransus*, *having dined*; *nūbo*, *nupsi*, lit., *I put on the veil*, i. e., *I was wedded*, *nupta*, *wedded*.

3. Other deponent perfect participles from active intransitive verbs are *ādultus*, *grown up*, from *ādōlesco*; *crētus*, *sprung*, from *cresco*; *suētus*, *accustomed*, from *suesco*; *obsōlētus*, *out of date*, from *obsōlesco*; *plācītus*, *pleasing*, from *plāceo*; *pōtus*, *having drunk*, from an old root, *po-*; *pērōsus*, *hating*, from *pērōdi*; *exōsus*, *hating or hating utterly*; *pertaesus*, *tired*, from *pertaedet*; also *coālītus* (from *coālesco*), *dēflagrātus*, *exōlētus*, *inītus*, *invētārātus*, *prōpensus*, and the compounds *conjūrātus*, *injūrātus*.

SCHEME OF THE ACTIVE VOICE.

	PRESENT.	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
		Singular.			Plural.		
		1. <i>I</i> <i>love</i>	2. <i>thou</i>	3. <i>he, etc.</i>	1. <i>we</i> <i>love</i>	2. <i>ye</i> <i>love</i>	3. <i>they</i> <i>love, etc.</i>
		<i>ām</i> -ōk	-ās	-āt	-āmūs	-ātīs	-ant
		<i>mōn</i> -ēōk	-ēs	-ēt	-ēmūs	-ētīs	-ent
		<i>rēg</i> -ōk	-īs	-īt	-īmūs	-ītīs	-unt
		<i>aud</i> -iō	-īs	-īt	-īmūs	-ītīs	-iunt
IMPERFECT.		<i>was</i>	<i>wast</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>were</i>	<i>were</i>	<i>were—loving, etc.</i>
		<i>amā</i> -bām	} -bās	} -bāt	} -bāmūs	} -bātīs	} -bant
		<i>monē</i> -bām					
		<i>regē</i> -bām					
		<i>audiē</i> -bām					
FUTURE.		<i>shall</i>	<i>wilt</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>shall</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>will—love, etc.</i>
		<i>amā</i> -bōk	} -bīs	} -bīt	} -bīmūs	} -bītīs	} -bunt
		<i>monē</i> -bōk					
		<i>reg</i> -ām					
		<i>audi</i> -ām					
PERF. AND AOR.		<i>loved</i>	<i>lovedst</i>	<i>loved</i>	<i>loved</i>	<i>loved</i>	<i>loved, etc.</i>
		<i>or have</i>	<i>hast</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>have—loved, etc.</i>
		<i>amāv</i> -ī	} -istī	} -īt	} -īmūs	} -istīs	} -ērunt or -ērē
		<i>monu</i> -ī					
		<i>rex</i> -ī					
		<i>audīv</i> -ī					
PLUPERFECT.		<i>had</i>	<i>hadst</i>	<i>had</i>	<i>had</i>	<i>had</i>	<i>had—loved, etc.</i>
		<i>amāv</i> -ērām	} -ērās	} -ērāt	} -ērāmūs	} -ērātīs	} -ērant
		<i>monu</i> -ērām					
		<i>rex</i> -ērām					
		<i>audīv</i> -ērām					
FUT. PERFECT.		<i>shall</i>	<i>wilt</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>shall</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>will—have loved, etc.</i>
		<i>amāv</i> -ērōk	} -ērīs	} -ērīt	} -ērīmūs,	} -ērītīs	} -ērint
		<i>monu</i> -ērōk					
		<i>rex</i> -ērōk					
		<i>audīv</i> -ērō					

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Singular.			Plural.		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>I</i>	<i>thou</i>	<i>he, etc.</i>	<i>we</i>	<i>ye</i>	<i>they are</i>
<i>am</i>	<i>art</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>—loved, etc.</i>
am	-ōr	-ārīs	-āmūr	-āmīnī	-antūr
mon	-eōr	-ērīs	-ēmūr	-ēmīnī	-entūr
reg	-ōr	-ērīs	-īmūr	-īmīnī	-untūr
aud	-iōr	-īrīs	-īmūr	-īmīnī	-iuntūr
<hr/>					
<i>was</i>	<i>wast</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>were</i>	<i>were</i>	<i>were—be-</i>
amā	-bār				<i>ing loved, etc.</i>
monē	-bār	} -bār-īs (ě)	-bātūr	-bāmūr	-bāmīnī
regē	-bār				
audiē	-bār				
<hr/>					
<i>shall</i>	<i>wilt</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>shall</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>will be—</i>
amā	-bōr	} -bēr-īs (ě)	-bītūr	-bīmūr	-bīmīnī
monē	-bōr				
reg	-ār				
audi	-ār	-ētūr	-ēmūr	-ēmīnī	-entūr
<hr/>					
<i>was</i>	<i>wast</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>were</i>	<i>were</i>	<i>were—loved, etc.</i>
<i>or have</i>	<i>hast</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>have—been loved,</i>
amātūs, monītūs, rectūs, auditūs			amātī, monītī, rectī, auditī [etc.]		
sūm	ēs	est	sūmūs	estīs	sunt
(fuī)	(fuistī)	(fuīt)	(fuīmūs)	(fuistīs)	(fuērant, ě)
<hr/>					
<i>had</i>	<i>hadst</i>	<i>had</i>	<i>had</i>	<i>had</i>	<i>had—been loved,</i>
amātūs, monītūs, rectūs, auditūs			amātī, monītī, rectī, auditī [etc.]		
ērām	ērās	ērāt	ērāmūs	ērātīs	ērant
(fuērām)	(fuērās)	(fuērāt)	(fuērāmūs)	(fuērātīs)	(fuērant)
<hr/>					
<i>shall</i>	<i>wilt</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>shall</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>will—have been loved,</i>
amātūs, monītūs, rectūs, auditūs			amātī, monītī, rectī, auditī [etc.]		
ērō	ērīs	ērīt	ērīmūs	ērītīs	ērunt
(fuērō)	(fuērīs)	(fuērīt)	(fuērīmūs)	(fuērītīs)	(fuērint)

SCHEME OF THE ACTIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.						
	Singular.			Plural.			
	1	2	3	1	2	3	
am	-ēm	-ēs	-ēt	-ēmūs	-ētīs	-ent	
mone	-ām	-ās	-āt	-āmūs	-ātīs	-ant	
reg	-ām	-ās	-āt	-āmūs	-ātīs	-ant	
audi	-ām	-ās	-āt	-āmūs	-ātīs	-ant	
IMPERFECT.	amā	-rēm	} -rēs	-rēt	-rēmūs	-rētīs	-rent
	monē	-rēm					
	regē	-rēm					
	audī	-rēm					
PERFECT AND AORIST.	amāv	-ērīm	} -ērīs	-ērīt	-ērīmus	-ērītīs	-ērīnt
	monu	-ērīm					
	rex	-ērīm					
	audīv	-ērīm					
PLUPERFECT.	amāv-	} issēm	-issēs	-issēt	-isseēmūs	-issētīs	-issent
	monu-						
	rex-						
	audīv-						

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.			FUTURE.				} must love, shall love, etc.
S. 2.	Pl. 2.		S. 2.	S. 3.	Pl. 2.	Pl. 3.	
<i>love</i>	<i>thou</i>	<i>ye</i>	<i>thou</i>	<i>he</i>	<i>ye</i>	<i>they</i>	
am	-ā	-ātē	am	-ātō	-ātō	-ātōtē	-antō
mon	-ē	-ētē	mon	-ētō	-ētō	-ētōtē	-entō
reg	-ē	-ītē	reg	-ītō	-ītō	-ītōtē	-untō
aud	-ī	-ītē	aud	-ītō	-ītō	-ītōtē	-iuntō

INFINITIVE.

VERB

PRES. (IMPF.)	PERF. (PLUP.)	FUTURE.
<i>to love, etc.</i>	<i>to have loved, etc.</i>	<i>to be about to love, etc.</i>
amā -rē	amāv -issē	amāt -ūrūs
monē -rē	monu -issē	monīt -ūrūs
regē -rē	rex -issē	rect -ūrūs
audī -rē	audīv -issē	audīt -ūrūs
		} essē

GERUNDS.

SUPINES.

PARTIC. PRES.

PARTIC. FUT.

<i>loving, of, by, etc.</i>	<i>to love, in loving, etc.</i>	<i>loving, etc.</i>	<i>about to love, etc.</i>
amand -ī -ō -ūm	amāt -ūm -ū	ama -ns	amatūr -ūs -ā -ūm
monend -ī -ō -ūm	monīt -ūm -ū	mone -ns	monitūr -ūs -ā -ūm
regend -ī -ō -ūm	rect -ūm -ū	rege -ns	rectūr -ūs -ā -ūm
audiend -ī -ō -ūm	audīt -ūm -ū	audie -ns	auditūr -ūs -ā -ūm

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

PASSIVE VOICE.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Singular.			Plural.		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3
am	-ēr	-ēr-īs(ě)	-ēmūr	-ēmīnī	-entūr
mone	-ār	-ār-īs(ě)	-āmūr	-āmīnī	-antūr
reg	-ār	-ār-īs(ě)	-āmūr	-āmīnī	-antūr
audi	-ār	-ār-īs(ě)	-āmūr	-āmīnī	-antūr
amā	-rēr	-rēr-īs(ě)	-rēmūr	-rēmīnī	-rentūr
monē	-rēr				
regē	-rēr				
audī	-rēr				
amātūs, monītūs, rectūs, audītūs			amātī, monītī, rectī, audītī		
sīm	sīs	sīt	sīmūs	sītīs	sint
(fuērīm)	(fuērīs)	(fuērīt)	(fuērīmūs)	(fuērītīs)	(fuērint)
amātūs, monītūs, rectūs, audītūs			amātī, monītī, rectī, audītī		
essēm	essēs	essēt	essēmūs	essētīs	essent
(fuissēm)	(fuissēs)	(fuissēt)	(fuissēmūs)	(fuissētīs)	(fuissent)

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.			FUTURE.		
	S. 2.	Pl. 2.	S. 2.	S. 3.	Pl. 3.
<i>be</i>	<i>thou</i>	<i>ye—loved, etc.</i>	<i>thou</i>	<i>he</i>	<i>they</i>
amā	-rē	-mīnī	amā	-tōr	-ntōr
monē	-rē	-mīnī	monē	-tōr	-ntōr
reg	-ērē	-īmīnī	reg	-ītōr	-untōr
audī	-rē	-mīnī	audī	-tōr	-untōr

} *must be,
shall be,
loved, etc.*

INFINITE.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. (IMPF.)	PERF. (PLUP.)	FUTURE.
<i>to be loved, etc.</i>	<i>to have been loved, etc.</i>	<i>to be about to be loved, etc.</i>
amā -rī	amāt -ūs	amāt -ūm
monē -rī	monīt -ūs	monīt -ūm
reg -ī	rect -ūs	rect -ūm
audī -rī	audīt -ūs	audīt -ūm

} *essē*

} *irī*

GERUNDIVE.

meet to be loved, etc.

amand	-ūs -ā -ūm
monend	-ūs -ā -ūm
regend	-ūs -ā -ūm
audiend	-ūs -ā -ūm

PARTIC. PERF. (PLUP.)

loved, etc.

amāt	-ūs -ā -ūm
monīt	-ūs -ā -ūm
rect	-ūs -ā -ūm
audīt	-ūs -ā -ūm

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

82. The Participles in -urus and -dus may be combined with all the tenses of the verb *sum*. Thus are formed (1) the Periphrastic Future Conjugation and (2) the Periphrastic Gerundive Conjugation.

1. *āmātūrūs, -ā, -ūm essē, to be about to love.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	<i>āmātūrūs sūm, I am about to love,</i>	<i>āmātūrūs sīm,</i>
IMPERF.	<i>āmātūrūs ērām, I was about to love,</i>	<i>āmātūrūs essēm,</i>
FUT.	<i>āmātūrūs ērō, I shall be about to love,</i>	
PERF. AND	<i>āmātūrūs fuī, I have been (was) about to love,</i>	
AOR.		<i>āmātūrūs fuērīm,</i>
PLUPERF.	<i>āmātūrūs fuērām, I had been about to love,</i>	<i>āmātūrūs fuissēm.</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>āmātūrūs fuērō, I shall have been about to love.</i>	

INFINITIVE.

PRES. *āmātūrūs, ā, -ūm essē, to be about to love,*
 PERF. *āmātūrūs, -ā, -ūm fuisse, to have been about to love.*

2. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm essē, to deserve to be loved.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	<i>āmandūs sūm, I have to be loved,</i>	<i>āmandūs sīm,</i>
IMPERF.	<i>āmandūs ērām, I had to be loved,</i>	<i>āmandūs essēm,</i>
FUT.	<i>āmandūs ērō, I shall deserve to be loved,</i>	
PERF. AND	<i>āmandūs fuī, I have had (I had) to be loved,</i>	
AOR.		<i>āmandūs fuērīm,</i>
PLUPERF.	<i>āmandūs fuērām, I had been worthy to be loved.</i>	<i>āmandūs fuissēm.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRES. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm essē, to have (or to deserve) to be loved,*
 PERF. *āmandūs, -ā, -ūm fuisse, to have been worthy to be loved.*

83. The Supine in -um is found in comparatively few verbs,—not more, it is said, than about three hundred,—but is often mentioned in giving the Principal Parts of a verb whenever there is a perfect participle (or, more properly, the neuter of the participle is given in its stead).

1. In the compound tenses of the indicative and subjunctive passive the participle is always in the nominative case, but may be used in both numbers and in all genders to suit the subject: as, *amāta erat, she was*

loved; *negōtium confectum est*, the business has been finished; *laudāti sunt viri*, the men have been (or are) praised; *accepta sunt vulnera*, wounds were received.

2. The participles in the compound infinitive are used either in the nominative or (commonly) in the accusative of both numbers and all genders.

84. SPECIAL FORMS AND ABBREVIATIONS.

1. In the older writers the present subjunctive is occasionally made in -im, -is, -it, etc.: as, *ēdim*, *edīs*, *edit*, *edīmus*, *edītis*, *edint*, for *edam*, *edas*, *edat*, etc. So *comēdim*, *exēdint*. Also from *duo*, *duim*, etc., and *interduim*, *perduim* (as, *Di te perduint* (= *perdant*), *creduis*, etc. This form was retained in *sum* and *volo*, with their compounds.

2. The imperfect indicative of the fourth conjugation is often made by the older writers in -ībam, -ībar, instead of -iēbam, -iēbar. So in the future, -ībo and -ībor were used for -iam and -iar; *ībam* and *ībo* remain in *eo*, *queo*, and *nequeo*.

3. The termination -re (for -ris) in the second person singular of the passive voice is very common in all tenses except the present indicative, in which it is rarely found. In the fourth conjugation it is almost always avoided, unless in deponents, where it could not be taken for the infinitive active.

4. The four verbs *dīco*, *dūco*, *fācio*, and *fēro* take in the second singular imperative the abbreviated forms *dīc*, *dūc*, *fāc*, and *fēr*; so also the compounds of these verbs (except those compounds of *facio* which change a into i; as, *effīce*, *confīce*). The old writers, and the poets occasionally, use the full forms *dice*, *duce*, and *face*. *Scio* has *scito* instead of *sci*, and in the plural usually *scitōte*.

5. The active form of the future imperative was often used by early writers instead of the passive, in deponent verbs: as, *arbītrāto*, for *arbitrator*; *utunto*, for *utuntor*. The forms -mīno, for the second and third persons singular, and -mīnor, for the second person plural were used rarely.

6. The antique infinitive often ended in -ier instead of -i: as, *amārier*, for *amāri*. Vergil and Horace sometimes use this form, as well as older writers.

7. In those verbs which have a *v* in the perfect stem a contraction often takes place, by omitting *v* and absorbing the first vowel of the termination in the final vowel of the stem: as, *amāsti*, for *amāvi-sti*; *amasse*, for *amāvī-sse*; *implessem*, for *implēvi-ssem*; *nosse*, for *novī-sse*; *mostis*, for *movī-stis*; *summosses*, for *submovī-sSES*; *isse*, for *ivī-sse*; *amāram*, for *amāvē-ram*; *implēro*, for *implevē-ro*; *complērunt*, for *complevē-runt*; *nōrunt*, for *novē-runt*; *adjūris*, for *adjuvē-ris*; *admōrunt*, for *admovē-runt*; *sīrīs*, for *sivē-ris* (from *sīno*). But this contraction is never made before the termination *ēre* (for *ērunt*) in the third plural of the perfect indicative.

When the **v** is preceded by **i**, the **v** is frequently omitted without contraction: as, *finiĕro*, for *finĭv-ero*; *audiĕram*, for *audĭv-eram*; *iĕro*, for *ĭv-ĕro*; *iĕram*, for *ĭv-eram*. The **i** also before **v** is sometimes dropped: as, *audisse*, for *aud-iv-isse*; *audisti*, for *aud-iv-isti*.

8. In perfect stems ending in **s** or **x** the letters **is**, **si**, **iss**, and **sis** are occasionally omitted in the perfect and derived tenses, more particularly in verbs of the third conjugation: as, *dixi* for *dixisti*; *evasti* for *evasisti*; *surrexe* for *surrexisse*; *erepsĕmus* for *erepsissĕmus*; *exstinxe* for *extinxisse*; *divisse* for *divisisse*; *accestis* for *accessistis*.

9. In the perfect of the first, third, and fourth conjugations we sometimes find such contracted forms as *fumāt*, *cupīt*, *audīt*, for *fumāvīt*, *cupīvīt* (*cupiīt*), *audīvīt* (*audiīt*). So rarely in the first person, as *sepĕlī*.

10. In the third person plural of the perfect indicative the form in *ĕre* is less common than that in *ĕrunt*, especially in prose.

11. An older form of the termination of the gerund and gerundive in **-undi**, **-undus** is common in Plautus, Terence, and Sallust. The same terminations, after **i**, and in the words *gerundus* and *ferundus*, occur frequently in the manuscripts of Caesar, Cicero, and Livy. The verb *īre*, to go, and its compounds, always have this form: as, *eundum*, *adeundus*. Some law phrases also: as, *rerum repetundarum*; *familiae erciscundae*; *finibus regundis*; *in jure dicundo*. But after **u** or **v** no other form of the suffix is found than **-endi**, **-endus**.

12. In the older language, of Plautus and ancient laws and formularies, a future perfect indicative in **-so** (**-sso**), subjunctive perfect in **-sim** (**-ssim**), future or future perfect infinitive in **-sĕre** (**-ssĕre**), and passive indicative future perfect in **-sītur** (**-ssītur**) are found.

a. Of all these forms *faxo*, *faxim* (= *facso*, *facsim*), and *ausim*, almost alone occur after the time of Terence. Instances are found in laws and other antique documents and formulæ in Livy and Cicero, but these do not belong to the age of their real or feigned recorders.

b. These forms are made by suffixing **s** to the verb-stem, as in the Greek future and aorist, a short **ĭ** or sometimes **e** of the stem being omitted. The double **s** in the forms from **a-** and (a few) **e-** verbs is either a mode of marking the place of the accent, or due to a mistaken etymology, as if the form were analogous to *amasse*, from *amavisse*. Possibly both causes may have combined.

85. IRREGULAR VERBS.

1. **Fero** * (Sansk., *bhar-*; Greek, *φερ-*), *I bear* or *bring*.

The peculiarities of this verb are, (1) that in the forms from the present stem it casts out **i** before **s** and **t**, as *fers* (*feris*), *fertur* (*feritur*); also **e** between **r** and **r**, as *ferre* (*ferere*): (2) it takes its perfect stem, *tŭl-*, from

* The irregular forms are given in italics.

the root *tol-*, and the supine stem *lāt-* (for *t-lat-*) from another form of the same root (*tal-* or *tla-*).

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind., <i>fěřō,</i>	Pres. Inf., <i>ferrě,</i>	Perf. Ind., <i>tŭlī,</i>	Supine. <i>lātŭm.</i>
-----------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------	--------------------------

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING. 1. <i>fěřō, I bear,</i>	<i>fěřām,</i>
2. <i>fers, thou bearest,</i>	<i>fěřās,</i>
3. <i>fert, he bears,</i>	<i>fěřāt,</i>
PLUR. 1. <i>fěřīmŭs, we bear,</i>	<i>fěřāmŭs,</i>
2. <i>fertīs, you bear,</i>	<i>fěřātīs,</i>
3. <i>fěřunt, they bear.</i>	<i>fěřant.</i>

IMPERFECT.

SING. 1. <i>fěřēbām, I was bearing, I bore,</i>	<i>ferrēm,</i>
2. <i>fěřēbās, thou wast bearing, didst bear,</i>	<i>ferrēs,</i>
3. <i>fěřēbāt, he was bearing, he bore,</i>	<i>ferrēt,</i>
PLUR. 1. <i>fěřēbāmŭs, we were bearing, etc.,</i>	<i>ferrēmŭs,</i>
2. <i>fěřēbātīs, you were bearing, etc.,</i>	<i>ferrētīs,</i>
3. <i>fěřēbant, they were bearing, etc.</i>	<i>ferrent.</i>

FUTURE.

SING. 1. <i>fěřām, I shall bear,</i>
2. <i>fěřēs, thou wilt bear,</i>
3. <i>fěřēt, he will bear,</i>
PLUR. 1. <i>fěřēmŭs, we shall bear,</i>
2. <i>fěřētīs, you will bear,</i>
3. <i>fěrent, they will bear.</i>

PERFECT AND AORIST.

SING. 1. <i>tŭlī, I have borne, I bore,</i>	<i>tŭlěřīm,</i>
2. <i>tŭlistī (etc., regularly).*</i>	<i>tŭlěřīs, etc.</i>

* Give the inflections in full : *tuli, tulisti, tulit, tulimus, tulistis, tulērunt* or *tulere*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PLUPERFECT.

tūlēram, etc.

tūlissēm, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

tūlērō, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. 2. *fēr*, bear thou,*fertē*, bear ye,FUT. 2. *fertō*, thou shalt bear or
do thou bear,*fertōtē*, ye shall bear or
do ye bear,3. *fertō*, he shall bear or
let him bear.*fērunto*, they shall bear
or let them bear.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. *ferrē*, to bear,PRES. *fērens*, bearing,PERF. *tūlissē*, to have borne,FUT. *lātūrū* essē, to be about
to bear.FUT. *lātūrū*s, about to bear.

GERUND.

SUPINES.

GEN. *fērendī*, of bearing, etc.ACC. *lātū*m,ABL. *lātū*.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.,
fērō,Pres. Inf.,
ferrī,Perf. Ind.,
*lātū*s sūm.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING. 1. *fērō*, I am borne,*fērār*,2. *ferrīs*, thou art borne,*fērārīs* or -rē,3. *fertūr*; he is borne,*fērātūr*,PLUR. 1. *fērīmūr*, we are borne,*fērāmūr*,2. *fērīmīnī*, you are borne,*fērāmīnī*,3. *fēruntūr*, they are borne.*fērantūr*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

SING. 1.	fěřěbăr, <i>I was borne,</i>	<i>ferrěr,</i>
2.	fěřěbărĭs or -řě, <i>thou wast borne,</i>	<i>ferrěrĭs or -řě,</i>
3.	fěřěbātŭr, <i>he was borne,</i>	<i>ferrětŭr,</i> —
PLUR. 1.	fěřěbāmŭr, <i>we were borne,</i>	<i>ferrēmŭr,</i>
2.	fěřěbāmĭnĭ, <i>you were borne,</i>	<i>ferrēmĭnĭ,</i>
3.	fěřěbantŭr, <i>they were borne.</i>	<i>ferrentŭr.</i>

FUTURE.

SING. 1.	fěřăr, <i>I shall be borne,</i>
2.	fěřěrĭs or -řě, <i>thou wilt be borne,</i>
3.	fěřětŭr, <i>he will be borne,</i>
PLUR. 1.	fěřēmŭr, <i>we shall be borne,</i>
2.	fěřēmĭnĭ , <i>you will be borne,</i>
3.	fěrentŭr, <i>they will be borne.</i>

PERFECT AND AORIST.

lătŭs sŭm, *etc.*lătŭs sĭm, *etc.*

PLUPERFECT.

lătŭs ěřăm, *etc.*lătŭs essĕm, *etc.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

lătŭs ěřŏ, *etc.*

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

PRES. 2.	<i>ferrěr</i> , <i>be thou borne,</i>
FUT. 2.	<i>fertor</i> , <i>thou shalt be borne or do thou be borne,</i>
3.	<i>fertor</i> , <i>he shall be borne or let him be borne.</i>

Plural.

PRES. 2.	fěřĭmĭnĭ, <i>be ye borne,</i>
FUT. 3.	fěrontor, <i>they shall be borne or let them be borne.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. *ferri, to be borne,*PERF. *lātūs essē, to have
been borne,*FUT. *lātūm irī.*PERF. *lātūs, borne, having
been borne,*GERUNDIVE. *fērendūs, to be borne.*

Note 1.—In like manner are inflected the compounds of *fēro*; as, *affēro* (*adfero*), *afferre*, *attūli*, *allātum*; *aufēro* (*ab+fero*), *auferre*, *abstūli*, *ablātum*; *diffēro*, *differre*, *distūli*, *dīlātum*; *rēfēro*, *referre*, *rettūli*, *relātum*, etc.

Note 2.—An archaic perfect, *tētūli*, is found; also *tētūlēro*, *tētūlissem*, *tētūlisse*.

2. **Fīo** (Sansk., *bhū*; Greek, *φύ-*), *I am made, become.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.,
*fīō,*Pres. Inf.,
*fīērī,*Perf. Part.,
factūs.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING. 1. *fīō, I am made, I become,*2. *fīs, thou art made, etc.,*3. *fīt, he is made, etc.,*PLUR. 1. (*fīmūs*),* *we are made, etc.,*2. (*fītīs*), *you are made, etc.,*3. *fīunt, they are made, etc.**fīām,**fīās,**fīāt,**fīamūs,**fīātīs,**fīant.*

IMPERFECT.

SING. 1. *fīēbām, I was made, I became,*2. *fīēbās, thou wast made, etc.,*3. *fīēbāt,*PLUR. 1. *fīēbāmūs,*2. *fīēbātīs,*3. *fīēbant.**fīērēm,**fīērēs,**fīērēt,**fīērēmūs,**fīērētīs,**fīērent.*

* Forms in parentheses are seldom used.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

FUTURE.

- SING. 1. *fīām, I shall be made, I shall become,*
 2. *fīēs, thou wilt be made, thou wilt become,*
 3. *fīēt, etc.*
- PLUR. 1. *fīēmūs,*
 2. *fīētīs,*
 3. *fīent.*

PERFECT AND AORIST.

- | | | |
|----------|---|----------------------|
| SING. 1. | <i>factūs sum, I have been made (or was made), I have become (or became),</i> | } <i>factūs sīm,</i> |
| 2. | <i>factūs ēs, thou hast been made, etc.,</i> | |
| 3. | <i>factūs est,</i> | |
| PLUR. 1. | <i>factī sūmūs,</i> | <i>factī sīmūs,</i> |
| 2. | <i>factī estīs,</i> | <i>factī sītīs,</i> |
| 3. | <i>factī sunt.</i> | <i>factī sint.</i> |

PLUPERFECT.

factūs ērām, etc.

factūs essēm, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

factūs ērō, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

- | | | |
|----------|-------------------|------------------|
| PRES. 2. | <i>fī,</i> | <i>(fītō),</i> |
| FUT. 2. | <i>(fītō),</i> | <i>(fītōtē),</i> |
| | 3. <i>(fītō).</i> | <i>(fīuntō).</i> |

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. *fīērī,*

PERF. *factūs,*

PERF. *factūs essē,*

GERUNDIVE. *fāciendūs.*

FUT. *factūm īrī.*

Note 1.—The *i* is long except before *er* and in *fīt*. In *fierem* and *fieri*, Plautus and Terence often have the *i* of the stem long.

Note 2.—*Fio* (*fu-i-o*) is only a strengthened form of *fu-*. Hence *fore* and *futūrus* may be assigned to *fio* as well as to *sum*. Cf. Cic.: *neque ego ea, quae facta sunt, fore cum dicebam, divinabam futura*; and *quid fiat, factum, futurumve sit*.—[KENNEDY.]

Note 3.—*Fit*, *it happens*, and *fiēbat*, *it happened*, are often used impersonally.

Note 4.—*Fio* is used as the passive of *facio*, from which verb it takes the participles. The compounds of *facio* with verbal roots have *-fio* for their passive: as, *calefacio*, *I warm*, *calefīo*, *I become warm*, *I am warmed*. So *liquefīo*, *satisfīo*. The compounds of *fio* with prepositions are only some forms of *confieri*, *deferī*, *ecfieri*, *interfieri*, *superfieri*, and *infī*, *begins (to speak)*.

3. **Volo** (Sansk., *vri*; Greek, *βολ-, βουλ-*), *I wish, I will*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind., vōlō,	Pres. Inf., vellē,	Perf. Ind. vōluī.
-----------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING. 1. vōlō, <i>I wish, will, or am willing,</i>	vēlīm,
2. vīs, <i>thou wishest, etc.,</i>	vēlīs,
3. vult,	vēlit,
PLUR. 1. vōlūmūs,	vēlīmūs,
2. vultīs,	vēlitīs,
3. vōlunt.	vēlint.

IMPERFECT.

vōlēbām, <i>etc.</i>	vellēm, <i>etc.</i>
-----------------------------	----------------------------

FUTURE.

vōlām,
vōlēs, *etc.*

PERFECT AND AORIST.

vōluī, <i>etc.</i>	vōluērīm, <i>etc.</i>
---------------------------	------------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

vōluērām, <i>etc.</i>	vōluissēm, <i>etc.</i>
------------------------------	-------------------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

vōluērō, *etc.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. *vellĕ*, *to wish*, etc.PERF. *vōluissĕ*.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. *vōlens*.

Special Forms.—*Volt*, *voltis*, were used before the time of Augustus. In conversational language *vin'* is used for *visne*, *will you?*; *sīs*, *sultis* for *si vis*, *si vultis*; *capsīs* for *cape si vis*. (Compare *pergin'* for *pergisne*.)

4. *Nōlo*, *I am unwilling*, is compounded of *nē* (*nōn*) with *volo*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.,
nōlō,Pres. Inf.,
nollĕ,Perf. Ind.,
nōluī.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING. 1. *nōlō*, *I am willing*,
2. *nōn vīs*,
3. *nōn vult*,

PLUR. 1. *nōlūmūs*,
2. *nōn vultīs*,
3. *nōlunt*.

nōlīm,
nōlīs,
nōlīt,
nōlīmūs,
nōlītīs,
nōlint.

IMPERFECT.

nōlēbām, etc.

FUTURE.

SING. 1. (not used).
nōlēs, etc.

PERFECT AND AORIST.

nōluī, etc.*nōluērĭm*, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

nōluērām, etc.*nōluissēm*, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

nōluērō, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.	Plural.
PRES. 2. <i>nōlī</i> ,	<i>nōlītē</i> ,-
FUT. 2. <i>nōlītō</i> ,	<i>nōlītōtē</i> ;
3. <i>nōlītō</i> .	<i>nōluntō</i> .

INFINITIVE.

PRES. <i>nollē</i> ,
PERF. <i>nōluissē</i> .

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. <i>nōlens</i> (<i>rare</i>).

Special Forms.—For *non vis*, *non vult*, Plautus has frequently *nēvis*, *nēvult*; for *nolis*, *nolit*, *nohint*, *nollem*, he has sometimes the full forms *non velis*, etc.

5. **Mālo**, *I am more willing, I prefer*, is compounded of **māgīs** (*mage*, *mā*) with *volō*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.,	Pres. Inf.,	Perf. Ind.,
mālō ,	mallē ,	māluī .

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING. 1. mālō , <i>I prefer</i> ,	<i>mālīm</i> ,
2. <i>māvis</i> ,	<i>mālis</i> ,
3. <i>māvult</i> ,	<i>mālīt</i> ,
PLUR. 1. <i>mālūmus</i> ,	<i>mālīmūs</i> ,
2. <i>māvultīs</i> ,	<i>mālītīs</i> ,
3. <i>mālunt</i> .	<i>mālīnt</i> .

IMPERFECT.

<i>mālēbām</i> , etc.	<i>mallem</i> , etc.
-----------------------	----------------------

FUTURE.

SING. 1. (not used).
<i>mālēs</i> , etc.

PERFECT AND AORIST.

<i>māluī</i> , etc.	<i>māluērīm</i> , etc.
---------------------	------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

<i>māluērām</i> , etc.	<i>māluissēm</i> , etc.
------------------------	-------------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>māluērō</i> , etc.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mallě.

PERF. māluisse.

PARTICIPLE (not used).

Special Forms in old Latin are māvōlo, māvōlet, māvēlim, māvēlis, māvēlit, māvellem, māvelle.

6. Pervōlo, *I wish much*, has pervēlim, pervellem, pervelle.

7. The root of eo (for ĭo), *to go*, is ĭ- (found both in Sanskrit and Greek), which becomes e before a, o, u.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.,
eō,

Pres. Inf.,
īrě,

Perf.,
īvī or īī,

Supine.
ītūm.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING. 1. ēō, *I go*,

eām,

2. īs,

eās,

3. ĭt,

eāt,

PLUR. 1. ĭmūs,

eāmūs,

2. ĭtis,

eātīs,

3. ĕunt.

eant.

IMPERFECT.

ībām, etc.

īrēm, etc.

FUTURE.

ībō,

ībīs, etc.

PERFECT AND AORIST.

īvī or īī,

īvēřim or iērīm,

īvistī or istī, etc.

īvēřīs or iērīs, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

īvēřām or ierām, etc.

īvissēm or issēm, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

īvēřō or iērō, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.	Plural.
PRES. 2. <i>ī</i> ,	<i>itē</i> ,
FUT. 2. <i>itō</i> ,	<i>itōtē</i> ,
3. <i>itō</i> .	<i>euntō</i> .

INFINITIVE.

PRES. *irē*,
 PERF. *ivissē* or *issē*,
 FUT. *ītūrūs* *essē*.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. *iens*, Gen. *euntis*,
 FUT. *ītūrūs*,
 GERUNDIVE. *eundūs* (in composition).

GERUND.

GEN. *eundī*, DAT. *eundō*, ACC. *eundūm*, ABL. *eundō*.

SUPINES.

ACC. *ītūm*, ABL. *ītū*.

1. The **v** is usually dropped by **eo** and its compounds: *as*, *ii*, *ieram*, *issem*, *redii*, *redistis*, *redisse*, etc.

2. The impersonal passive *ītur*, *ītum est*, *irī*, etc., is often used. *Iri* with the supine supplies a future passive to verbs. The active **eo** also with the supine expresses a future action: thus, *injurias istas ultum eunt*, *they are going to avenge those wrongs*; *aiunt injurias istas ultum iri*, *they say that those wrongs are going to be avenged* (literally, *that there is a tending to avenge those wrongs*).

3. Transitive compounds of **eo** have a personal passive voice, as *adeor*.

4. Besides the form *ībit*, a future in **-iet** is sometimes found in compounds: *as*, *veniet* (or *vaeniet*) from *veneo*, *to be sold*; *transiet*, etc.

5. *Ambio*, *I go round*, *I canvas*, is the only compound of **eo** which is inflected regularly, like *audio*.

8. *Edo* (Sansk., *ad*, Greek, *ēd-*), *I eat*, is inflected regularly, and also has some contracted forms, which omit the vowel after the root, and either change **d** to **s** or omit it. In the present subjunctive, in addition to the regular *ēdam*, *ēdās*, etc., it has a form with the old termination **im**, found also in *sim* and *velim*. The Principal Parts are

Pres. Ind., <i>ēdō</i> ,	Pres. Inf., <i>ēdērē</i> or <i>essē</i> ,	Perf., <i>ēdī</i> ,	Perf. Part. <i>ēsūs</i> .
-----------------------------	--	------------------------	------------------------------

The following are the anomalous forms :

IND. PRES. Sing. 2. ēs, <i>thou eatest</i> ,	
3. est, <i>he eats</i> ,	
Plur. 2. estīs, <i>you eat</i> .	
SUBJ. PRES. Sing. 1. ēdīm, <i>may I eat</i> ,	
2. ēdīs, <i>etc.</i>	
3. ēdīt,	
Plur. 1. ēdīmus,	
2. ēdītis,	
3. ēdint.	
SUBJ. IMP.	essēm, <i>etc.</i>
IMPERAT. Sing. 2. ēs,	Plur. 2. estě,
2 and 3. estō.	2 and 3. estōtě.
INF. PRES.	essě.
PASSIVE.	estur (<i>for editur</i>),
	essētur (<i>for ederētur</i>).

Note.—The contracted forms are found also from *comědo*, and some (*exest*, *exesse*, *exesset*) from *exědo*.

86. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

1. Aio, *I say, say yes, affirm.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT TENSE.		
SING. ā-io, āīs, āīt,		ā-iās, ā-iat,
PLUR. ā-iunt.		ā-iant.
IMPERFECT.		
SING. ā-iēbam, ā-iēbās, ā-iēbat,		
PLUR. ā-iēbāmus, ā-iēbātis, ā-iēbant.		
IMPERATIVE PRESENT, āi (<i>rare</i>).		
PRESENT PARTICIPLE, ā-iens, ā-ientis (<i>as adjective</i>).		

Note 1.—The *i* is *consōnans* (pronounced like English *y*), except in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative.

Note 2.—*Ain'tu* (= *aisne tu*), *do you say so?* was a familiar expression.

2. Inquam, *I say*.

PRES.	inquam, inquīs, inquīt, inquīmus, inquītis, inquūnt.
SUBJ. PRES.	inquāt.
IND. IMPERF.	inquīēbat.
FUT.	inquīēs, inquēet.
PERF.	(inquīi), inquīsti, inquīt.
IMPERAT. FUT.	inquīto.

Note.—*Inquam* is used in direct quotations, in which it is inserted parenthetically.

3. Quēo, *I can*, and Nēquēo, *I cannot*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IND.	SUBJ.
PRES. 1. quēo,	quēam,	nēquēo,	nēquēam,
2.	queas,	non quīs,	nequeas,
3.	queat,	nequit,	nequeat,
1. quīmus,	queāmus,	nequīmus,	nequeāmus,
2.	queātis,	nequītis,	nequeātis,
3. queunt.	queant.	nequeunt.	nequeant.
IMPERF. 1.		nequibam,	nequirem,
2. etc.		nequibas, etc.	nequīres, etc.
PERF. 1. quīvi,	quīvērim,	nequīi,	nequīvērim,
2. etc. quīvistī, etc.	quīvēris, etc.	nequīstī, etc.	nequīvēris, etc.
PLUPERF.	quīvēram, etc. quīvissem, etc.	nequīvēram, etc.	nequīvissem,
FUT. PERF.	quīvēro, etc.	nequīvēro, etc.	[etc.
INF. PRES.	quīre,	nequīre,	
PERF.	quīvisse.	nequīvisse.	
PART. PRES.	quīens, queuntis.	nequīens, nequeuntis.	
SUP. ACC.	quītum.	nequītum.	

Note.—Only the present ind. and subj. are at all frequent. Passive forms are found in old writers in connection with a passive infinitive: as, nēquītur sūbīgi.

4. *Fāri*, to speak, has these forms: Indic. Pres. fātur, *he (she) speaks*; Fut. fābor, fābitur; Perf. fātus est; Pluperf. fātus eram, fātus erat; Imperative, fāre; Infinitive, fāri; Participles, fantis, etc. (the nominative wanting, except in the phrase fans atque infans in Plautus), fātus, fandus; Gerund. fandī, fando; Supine, fātu. In compounds we have also -fāmur, -fāmīni; -fābar, -fābere, -fābīmur, -fārer, and in the imperative praefāto, praefāmīno.

5. *Coepti* (co- and the obsolete apio, Sansk. root. ap, to get; acquire), *I have begun*, has the tenses derived from the Perfect Stem, coepī, coepēram, coepēro, coepērim, coepissem, coepisse, and from the Supine Stem, coeptūrus, coeptūrus esse, and coeptus. In connection with a passive infinitive

tive *coeptus sum, coeptus eram*, are used more often than *coepe, coëperam*: as, *comitia haberi coepta sunt.* (CIC.)

Note.—A few forms from the Present Stem (as *coepeo*) are sometimes found in old writers.

6. Verbs which have no forms from the Present Stem in use are called **Præteritive**. In these the English idiom generally translates the Perfect by the Present, the Pluperfect by the Imperfect, the Future Perfect by the Future: as, *mēmīni, I remember; meminēram, I remembered; meminēro, I shall remember.* Strictly speaking, however, there is the proper force of the tenses in these forms; for *mēmīni* is the perfect of an obsolete verb *meno* (*māno*), connected with the Sansk. *man*, and means something like *I have minded, I have fixed it in mind*, and thus, *I now remember; ōdi* is from the obsolete *odio, odēre*, and means *I have repelled, thrust from me with loathing, then hate; nōvi* is the perfect of *nosco*, and means *I have become acquainted, I have come to know*, i. e., *I know, I am acquainted with.* *Memini, odi, and novi* all have the Ind. Perf., Pluperf., and Fut. Perf., the Subj. Perf. and Pluperf., and the Inf. Perf., regularly. *Memini* has also the Imperative, 2d Sing. *memento*, 2d Plur. *mementōte*; *ōdi* has the Inf. Fut., *osūrus esse*, and Fut. Participle, *osūrus*; *ōsus sum* is a rare form of *odi*; and the Perf. Participles *exōsus* and *perōsus* are found. *Nōvi* has the Perf. Part. *nōtus*, only as an adjective.

7. *Ōvāre, to triumph, to rejoice*, has the third persons singular *ovat, ovet, ovaret*, the participles *ovans, ovātus* (Persius), and the gerund *ovandi*.

8. *Quaeso and quaesūmus, prythee*, are old colloquial forms.

9. *Salvē, hail!* has the Imperative *salvē, salvēto, salvēte*, Future *salvēbis*, Inf. *salvēre*. Plautus uses once the Pres. Ind. *salveo*, playing on the original meaning of the word, *to be in good health*.

10. *Āvē (or hāvē), hail!* has the Imperative *āvē, āvēto, āvēte*, and the Inf. *āvēre*.

11. *Vālē, farewell!* has Imperative *vālē, vālēto, valēte*, Ind. Fut. *vālēbis*, Inf. *vālēre*.

12. *Āge, āgīte, come! come on!* is sometimes called a defective verb, used only in the imperative. It is properly considered, however, as the imperative of *āgo*, with a special meaning.

13. *Āpāge, away! be off!* is a Greek imperative.

14. The imperative *cēdō*, *pray tell me, give me*, has also the plural *cēdite*, *cette*.

87. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. **Impersonal verbs** are conjugated in the third persons singular of the finite verb and in the infinitive.

2. **Active impersonals** have no passive voice. The principal of these are of the second conjugation :

<i>oportet</i> , <i>taedet</i> , <i>miseret</i> ,	<i>it behoves, disgusts, moves pity.</i>
<i>piget</i> , <i>pūdet</i> , <i>paenitet</i> ,	<i>it irks, shames, repents.</i>
<i>dēcet</i> , <i>dēdēcet</i> ,	<i>it beseems, misbeseems.</i>
<i>libet</i> , <i>licet</i> , <i>liquet</i> ,	<i>it pleases, is lawful, is clear.</i>
<i>attinet</i> , <i>pertinet</i> ,	<i>it relates, belongs.</i>

TABLE OF IMPERSONAL VERBS (Second Conjugation).

		INDIC.	SUBJ.	INFIN.	
	1. oport				
	2. taed				
	3. miser				
me, te, eum, .	4. pig	-et	-eat	-ēre . .	Pres.
nos, vos, eos, .	5. pud	-ēbat	-ēret		Imperf.
	6. paenit	-ēbit			Fut.
	7. dec	-ūit	-uerit	-uisse .	Perf.
	8. dedec	-uerat	-uisset		Pluperf.
mihi, etc. . .	9. lib	-uerit			Fut. Perf.
	10. lic				
ad me, etc. . .	11. attin				
	12. pertin				

The following perfects are also used: 2, *pertaesum est*; 3, *miseritum est*; 4, *pigitum est*; 5, *pūditum est*; 9, *libitum est*; 10, *licitum est*.

Miserescit is also found; sometimes *miseretur*.

The gerundives *pigendus*, *pūdendus*, *paenitendus*, and the participles *miseritus*, *pertaesus*, *attinens*, *pertinens* are in use. *Paenitens*, *dēcens*, *libens*, *licitus* are used as adjectives.

The Persons are expressed by the Case: as,

SING.	<i>oportet me ire,</i>	<i>it behoves me</i>	} to go =	<i>I</i>	} ought to go:
	<i>oportet te ire,</i>	" <i>you</i>		<i>you</i>	
	<i>oportet eum ire,</i>	" <i>him</i>		<i>he</i>	
PLUR.	<i>oportet nos ire,</i>	" <i>us</i>		<i>we</i>	
	<i>oportet vos ire,</i>	" <i>you</i>		<i>ye</i>	
	<i>oportet eos ire,</i>	" <i>them</i>		<i>they</i>	

SING.	licet mihi ire,	<i>it is allowed me</i>	} to go =	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \\ you \\ he \\ we \\ ye \\ they \end{array} \right\}$	} may go;
	licet tibi ire,	" " <i>you</i>			
	licet ei ire,	" " <i>him</i>			
PLUR.	licet nobis ire,	" " <i>us</i>			
	licet vobis ire,	" " <i>you</i>			
	licet iis ire,	" " <i>them</i>			

and so in the other tenses.

3. Some Personal verbs are used impersonally with special meaning:

aocĭdit, <i>it happens (ill),</i>	} mihi.	dĕlectat, <i>it charms,</i>	} me, te,
condūcit, <i>it profits,</i>		jŭvat, <i>it delights,</i>	
contingit, <i>it befalls (well),</i>		fallit, <i>it eludes,</i>	
ĕvĕnit, <i>it turns out,</i>		fŭgit, <i>it escapes,</i>	
convĕnit, <i>it suits,</i>		intĕrest, <i>it concerns,</i>	
expĕdit, <i>it is expedient,</i>	} nobis.	rĕfert, <i>it imports,</i>	} meā, tuā,
plācet, <i>it pleases,</i>		est, <i>it is a fact.</i>	
restat, <i>it remains,</i>		fit, <i>it comes to pass.</i>	
succurrit, <i>it occurs,</i>		constat, <i>it is acknowledged.</i>	
vācat, <i>there is leisure,</i>		praestat, <i>it is best.</i>	

So usu venit, in mentem venit, etc.

4. Some Impersonals express changes of season and weather; such are

fulgŭrat, <i>it lightens.</i>	ningit, <i>it snows.</i>	lŭcescit, <i>it dawns.</i>
tŏnat, <i>it thunders.</i>	pluit, <i>it rains.</i>	illŭcescit, <i>it gets light.</i>
grandĭnat, <i>it hails.</i>	rŏrat, <i>there falls dew.</i>	vespĕrascit, <i>it gets late.</i>

5. Intransitive verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice: as, lŭdĭtur, from lŭdo, *I play*:

	IND.	SUBJ.	INFIN.
PRESENT	lŭdĭtur,	ludatur,	ludi,
IMPERF.	ludēbatur,	luderetur,	
FUTURE	ludetur,		lusum iri,
PERFECT	lŭsum est,	lusum sit,	lusum esse,
PLUPERF.	lusum erat,	lusum esset.	lusum fuisse.
FUT. PERF.	lusum erit.		

The persons may be expressed by an ablative case with the preposition a or ab following the verb:

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

SING.	luditur a me,	<i>there is playing by me</i>	= <i>I play,</i>
	luditur a te,	" "	<i>thee</i> = <i>thou playest,</i>
	luditur ab eo,	" "	<i>him</i> = <i>he plays,</i>

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

PLUR.	luditur a nobis,	there is playing by us	= we play,
	luditur a vobis,	" " you	= ye play,
	luditur ab iis,	" " them	= they play;

and so in the other tenses.

The case is generally understood, and the verb is rendered usually as expressing the first or third person plural: as, *lūdītur*, *we play* or *they play*; sometimes, *one plays*: as the French, *on joue*.

6. The neuter gerundive is similarly used to express duty or necessity, with a dative or ablative of the person:

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

SING.	ludendum est mihi,	there must be playing by me	= I	} must play;
	ludendum est tibi,	" " thee	= thou	
	ludendum est ei,	" " him	= he	
PLUR.	ludendum est nobis,	" " us	= we	
	ludendum est vobis,	" " you	= ye	
	ludendum est iis,	" " them	= they	

and so in the other tenses.

In this construction the case often occurs; but here, too, it may be absent, and *we*, *they*, or *one* supplied, as in the former instance. So French, *on doit jouer*.

88. DERIVATIVE VERBS.

1. Inceptive (or Inchoative) Verbs denote *the beginning* of an action or state. They are all of the third conjugation. Those derived from verbs add *sco* or *isco* to the Present stem: as, *lābasco*, *I begin to totter*, from *lābāre*; *cālesco*, *I grow warm*, from *cālēre*; *trēmisco*, *I begin to tremble*, from *trēmēre*; *obdormisco*, *I get sleepy*, from *dormīre*. Those derived from nouns or adjectives add *esco*, more rarely *asco*, to the clipt stem: as, *dūresco*, *become hard*, from *dūrus*; *jūvēnesco*, *grow young*, from *jūvēnis*; *puērasco*, *become a boy*, from *puer*.

2. Frequentative or Intensive Verbs express repeated or intense action. They are of the first conjugation; and are formed either by adding *-īto* or *-ītor* to the clipt stem; as, *rōgīto*, *ask often*, from *rōgo*; *mīnītor*, *threaten much*, from *mīnor*; or to the Supine stem: as, *lūsīto*, *play often*, from *lūdo*, *lūsum*; or by adding *o* to supine stems in *t* or *s*: as, *curso*, *run often*, from *curro*, *cursum*; *dīcto*, *keep saying*, from *dīco*, *dictum*.

a. Frequentatives may be formed from frequentatives : as, *cantĭto, cursĭto, dictĭto*.

3. There are a few **Intensives** in *esso* and *isso*, denoting eager action, as *căpesso, catch eagerly, take in hand*; *făcesso, make haste to do*; *pĕtisso, seek eagerly*. They are of the third conjugation, but with perfect and supine of the fourth. Sometimes such derivatives differ little in meaning from the primitive verb.

4. **Desiderative verbs** denote desire after a thing, and are formed by adding *ŭrio* to the Supine stem : as, *ēsŭrio, desire to eat*, from *ĕdo, ēsum*; *cĕnātŭrio, wish to dine*, from *cĕno, cĕnātum*. They are of the fourth conjugation. Such verbs are sometimes coined for rhetorical or comic effect, as *sulla-tŭrit, he wants to be a Sulla*.

5. **Diminutive verbs** denote a diminution or pettiness of the action. They are of the first conjugation, and are formed by adding *illo* to the Present stem : as, *cantillo, sing low*, from *canto*; *conscrĭbillo, scribble*, from *conscrĭbo*; *sorbillo, to sip*, from *sorbeo*.

6. A few verbs form what are at once diminutives and frequentatives, with the suffix *ĭco*: as, *fŏdĭco, keep nudging*, from *fŏdio, dig*; *velĭco, keep plucking*, from *vello, pull*. So *missĭcŭlo, keep sending*, from *mitto, missum*. These are all of the first conjugation.

7. **Imitative verbs** add *isso* to the clipt stem of nouns or adjectives : as, *attĭcisso, to imitate the Attics*; *graecisso, to adopt a Grecian manner*; *patrisso, to take after one's father*. They are of the first conjugation. Compare Demosthenes's verb, *Philippize*.

THE INFLECTIONS OF VERBS.

89. INFLECTIONS OF PERSON, NUMBER, AND VOICE.

1. The personal terminations of verbs were originally personal pronouns; they have become modified in their form for smoothness of sound or from gradual changes in utterance.

2. The terminations in the different conjugations in the classical period will be seen by observation of the paradigms. The supposed primitive forms of the present indicative *lego* are thus given by G. Curtius, together with the supposed primitive forms of the Greek *λέγω* and the actual forms of the Sanskrit present *bharāmi, I bear* :

	Classical Latin.	Primitive Latin.	Primitive Greek.	Sanskrit.
SING.	1. lego,	lego-m (i),	λεγο-μι,	bharā-mi,
	2. legi-s,	lege-s (i),	λεγε-σι,	bharā-si,
	3. legi-t,	lege-t (i),	λεγε-τι,	bharā-ti,
PLUR.	1. legi-mus,	lego-mas,	λεγο-μες,	bharā-mas,
	2. legi-tis,	lege-tes,	λεγε-τε,	bharā-tha,
	3. legu-nt.	lego-nt (i).	λεγο-ντι.	bhara-nti.

3. The **-m** in the **First Person** singular and plural is the same as is seen in the oblique cases of the pronoun **me**.

This **-m** is dropped in the singular of the present indicative of all verbs (as **reg-o**); (except two; viz., **sum** (for **ēs-om**), *I am*, and **inqua-m**, *quoth I*;) also in the future perfect of all verbs: as, **amavero**; and in the future indicative of all verbs with stems ending in **-a** or **-e**, and of some with stems ending in **-i**; **āmābo**, **mōnēbo**, **ībo**.

In **a-** verbs the final **a** has blended with the suffix, and both are now represented simply by **-o**. Other vowel verbs retain their characteristic vowel: as, **trīb-u-o**, **mōn-e-o**, **and-i-o**, **cāp-i-o**. But three **i-** verbs change **i** to **e**; viz., **ēo** (stem **i-**), **queo** (stem **qui-**), and its compound **nēqueo**. **Inquam** has apparently a stem in **ā**, which except in the first singular present passes into **ī**.

The perfect indicative always ends in **ī**. The proper personal suffix (**m**) has dropped off altogether. It is probable that this final **ī** is part of the stem; but in practice it is more convenient to regard it as the personal termination.

In the **Passive Voice** the only change from the active is the addition of **r**, if the **m** has dropped away, or the substitution of it for **m** if the **m** has been retained in the active: as, active, **āmō**, **āmābo**; passive, **āmor**, **āmābor**; but active, **amabam**, **amem**; passive, **amabar**, **amer**.

This **r** is generally considered to be a substitute for **s**, the proper passive inflection being, as is supposed, the reflexive pronoun **se**.

(A passive formed by a reflexive pronoun is seen in German, *Das versteht sich von selbst*, "that is understood of itself;" French, *Le corps se trouva*, "the body was found;" Italian, *Si loda l'uomo modesto*, "the modest man is praised;" Spanish, *Las aguas se secaron*, "the waters were dried up."—KEY.)

Plural. The final **-us** is the part of the suffix which distinguishes the plural number. Its origin is uncertain. Some think it arose from the pronoun of the second person, so that *we* (**-mus**) was expressed by *I + thou*.

In the present indicatives of three verbs, viz., **sūmus**, *we are*, **vōlūmus**, and their compounds, and the old form **quaesūmus** (stem **quaes-**), *we pray*, we have before **m** the older vowel **u**. **dā-mus** retains the radical **ā**.

In the passive the final **s** is changed to **r**; thus, **āmāmūs**, **āmāmūr**.

4. The consonant of the suffix of the **Second Person** is **s** in the singular

(changed before another vowel to *r* in the passive), and *t* in the plural. The perfect indicative has *t* in the singular also. The personal pronoun of the second person singular in Latin (*tu*) and the Doric dialect of Greek (*τὺ*) shows us this *t*; in the Attic dialect of Greek it has *s* (*σὺ*).

Singular. In the present tense of *fěro*, *I bear*; *vřlo*, *I will*; *ědo*, *I eat*; the short vowel (*ĭ*) is omitted or absorbed; hence *fers* (for *fěřis*), *vřs* (generally taken to be for *vřlis*, *vřlis*, *vils*), and *ěs* (for *ěđis*, *eds*); *es* (*ēs* Plautus and Terence, *ēs* in subsequent poets) is also the second person singular present indicative of *sum*, *I am*.

All *a-*, *e-*, and *i-* verbs have the final syllable long; viz., *ās*, *ēs*, *īs*. Not so the verbs with *ĭ*: *as*, *cāpio*, *cāpĭs*.

In the perfect indicative the ending of the second person singular is *-isti*, of which ending *-ti* is the proper personal suffix. The *s* is thought by Schleicher to be a remnant of *es* (Sansk. *as*); it may possibly be of pronominal origin.

In the *passive*, *-ĕris* (at first sight) appears to be formed by placing the characteristic passive *r* before the personal suffix; the true theory, however, is probably that the passive suffix, with a short preceding vowel, being placed after the personal suffix caused the *s* between two vowels to change to *r*, necessitating also the change of the vowel *i* to *e* before *r*. Thus *rě-gĕřis* is for *rěgĭ-s-is*. The passive suffix itself (*i. e.*, *s* for *se*) was allowed to remain *s*, instead of being changed to *r*, as usually, in order to avoid having two *r*'s close together.

-re (as *amabāre*) is more common than *-ris* (as *amabāris*) in Plautus, and, except in the present tense, in Cicero and Vergil. It is frequent in Horace, rare in Livy; and is usually avoided by all writers where the form would then be the same as that of the present infinitive active. Hence *-ris* is retained in the present indicative (with rare exceptions) in verbs which have an active voice; but in deponents (where there is no risk of confusion, as the infinitive ends in *i*) *-re* is frequent in Plautus, sometimes found in Cicero; *-ris* is usual in Vergil and Horace.

Plural. The plural ending *-tis* contains the personal pronoun of the second person, *t*, and the syllable *-is*, which contains either the pronoun of the second person in its other form, *s*, (*thou + thou = ye*) or is a suffix of plurality.

In the present tense of the four verbs named above, the *i* before the suffix is again omitted: *fertis* for *fěřtis*; *voltis* or *vultis* for *vřlĭtis*; *estis* for *ěđtis*, *ye eat*, and for (originally) *ěsĭtis*, *ye are*.

In the perfect *s* is simply suffixed to the singular form.

In the *passive* voice the ending *-ĭmĭni* is probably a masculine plural participial form. The Greek present passive participle is of similar form; viz., *-ōmēnōs*, plur. *-ōmēnoi*. Originally, perhaps, *estis* was used with it, as it is used with a past participle to form the perfect passive.

5. The *-t* is the suffix of the Third Person, both singular and plural in

all tenses, is a demonstrative pronoun, found in the Greek (so-called) article, and in *iste, tot, talis, tantus*, etc.

Singular. In the present tense of *sum, ŕdo, řero, vřlo*, the short vowel before -t is not found; viz., *est* (both from *sum* and from *řdo*), *fert, volt*, or (later) *vult*.

a. The third person singular active of a-, e-, and i- verbs was originally long, as may be inferred from the passive voice (*amāt-ur, monēt-ur, audit-ur*), and is actually found long not unfrequently in Plautus, and sometimes in Augustan poets.

b. In the perfect active the ending is the same as in the present (-řt). Plautus sometimes, and more rarely Augustan poets, have this -it long.

To form the passive, -ur is suffixed to the active form.

Plural. The plural suffix is -nt. Instead of the ending -unt, in prae-Augustan inscriptions, in Plautus, and Varro, the older -ont was retained after v (or u): as, *vivont, confluont, loquontur*. Of this suffix the t is probably the same as in the singular; the origin of the n (which marks plurality) is uncertain.

The passive is formed (as in the singular) by suffixing -ur to the active form.

The perfect suffix is the same as the present, the ending being *er-unt*, of which the -er is the same as the -is (before t) of the second person. The penult (-er) is usually long (as, *rexērunt, amavērunt*), but the dactylic poets often, beginning with Lucretius (not Ennius), and others occasionally, shorten it: as, *dormiērunt, locāvērunt, subēgērunt*, etc. (Plaut.); *ēmērunt* (Ter.); *dedērunt, fuērunt, exiērunt*, etc. (Lucr.).

-ēre (for *ērunt*) is not uncommon in Plautus and Terence, rare in Cicero and Caesar, but frequent in dactylic poets and Livy.

In the future perfect indicative the suffix-vowel is i instead of u (-řrint for -řrunt); probably in order to avoid confusion with the perfect.

90. INFLECTIONS OF MOOD.

The imperative and subjunctive moods are distinguished from the indicative by certain modifications.

1. Imperative Mood.

a. *Present.*—The imperative present appears to consist of shortened forms of the indicative present. The final s is thrown off, and -ř is changed to ě (or rather, as the form probably originally ended in -es, the s is simply thrown off). Hence the active *řĕĝis*, becomes *řĕĝĕ*; *řĕĝītis*, *řĕĝitĕ*; the passive *řĕĝĕřis*, *řĕĝĕřĕ*; the second person plural *řĕĝimīnī* is the same as in the indicative. But from verbs with vowel stems in a-, e-, ĭ- (not ř-)

the *s* is thrown off in the singular without further change; *e. g.*, *amā*, *monē*, *audī*. The exceptional form *noli* is formed as if from the second person singular of the *subjunctive* present.

b. (For a merely practical rule, we may say, *the imperative active is seen by dropping the termination re of the present infinitive.*)

In verbs which have short penult, and vowel stems in *a*, *e*, *i*, and also in the compounds of *eo*, the imperative forms in Plautus and Terence often shortened the final vowel: as, *commōdā*, *mōnē*, *jūbē*, *ādī*, *ābī*; especially in colloquial forms: as, *mānēdum*, *tācēdum*, *mōnēsis*, *vīdēsis*.

c. Future.—The future imperative active is distinguished by a suffix, originally *-ōd*. In the form which is common to the second and third persons, *i. e.*, *reg-īt-ō*, and the form for the third person plural, *i. e.*, *reguntō*, the *-d* has fallen off, as in the ablative case of nouns.

The suffix appears to have been simply added to the present indicative forms of the third person singular and plural. (The use of this form for the second person singular was perhaps due to *-t* being a characteristic of the second personal pronoun.) The plural second person is formed by appending *-e* (for *-es*, later *-is*) as the sign of plurality in this person to a modified form of the singular: as, *rēg-īt-ōt-e* (for *rēg-īt-ōd-e*).

The passive forms substitute *-r* for the final *-d*: as, *rēgīt-or* for *rēgīt-od*; *rēgunt-or* for *rēgunt-od*.

In Plautus, Cato, and old inscriptions, a form in *-mīno* is (rarely) found for the second and third person singular of the imperative of deponents: as, *profitē-mīno*, *praefā-mīno*, *progređī-mīno*, *fru-ī-mīno*. One instance of a passive verb *denuntiamino* is found. This old form is of the same origin as the second person plural indicative in *-mīni*.

2. Subjunctive Mood.

The subjunctive is characterized by a lengthened vowel immediately before the consonant of the personal suffix.

Present.—This vowel is *ā* in the present tense of all verbs, except verbs with *ā-* stems, in which it is *ē*; *i. e.*, *reg-ā-mus*, *regāmur*; *moneāmus*, *moneāmur*; *audiāmus*, *audiāmur*; *tribuāmus*, *tribuāmur*; but *amēmus*, *amēmur*.

Except also a few in which it is *ī*; viz., *sim*, *sīs*, etc., from *sum*; *velim*, *velīs*, etc., from *volo*; and the compounds of both; *i. e.*, *possim*, *absim*, etc., *nolim*, *malim*; so also *edim*, *duim*, and their compounds.

Sum and its compounds had an older form *siem*, *sies*, from which *sim*, *sis*, etc., are contracted. The *-es*, *-et* is perhaps only the older form of the ending *-īs*, *īt*. But more probably it corresponds to the long final syllable in Gr. *εἶν*, Sansk. *syām*.

Imperfect and Pluperfect.—The long vowel in these tenses is *ē* in all verbs; *e. g.*, *rexissēmus*, *amavissēmus*, etc.

a. (For a practical rule, we may say, *the imperfect subjunctive active is seen by adding m, and the passive by adding r, to the present infinitive active.*)

Perfect.—The vowel (assumed to have been originally long) is *ī*, which, however, probably from confusion with the future perfect, is in dactylic poets as often short as long.

In Plautus and Terence there appears to be no instance incompatible with the rule of *ī* for the perf. subj., *ī* for the fut. perf. indic., in the second person singular and first and second persons plural.

The forms for the subjunctive have been thought best explicable by assuming the proper suffix to be *ī* (seen in the Greek optative), which was contracted with a preceding *ā* to *ē*. Thus *amas*, *ama-ī-s*, *amēs*. But as *ī* suffixed to the present indicative of vowel verbs other than those with *a* stems would have given still the same form when contracted, an *ā* (frequent in Aryan subjunctives) was substituted in all such cases. The consonant verbs eventually followed this analogy, the forms in *i* being either sporadically used or (if originally usual) only sporadically retained. *Sis* and *velis*, etc., retain the *ī*, because they have other points of difference from the indicative.

91. TENSES FORMED FROM THE PRESENT STEM.

1. The characteristic **tense-endings**, both in the forms from the present and those from the perfect stems, were probably originally **verbs**—added to the verb-stem with the force of **auxiliaries**—to which auxiliaries the terminations of number and person belong. It has been supposed that some of them were derived from *bhu* and *es*, meaning *to be*; others from *ya*, a form of *i*, *to go*.

2. **Present.**—The present indicative is formed simply by suffixing the inflections of number and person. The present subjunctive has a mood inflection in addition.

3. **Future.**—The future indicative is in consonant, in *i*-verbs, and in *u*-verbs a modified form of the present subjunctive. The first person singular is the same: the other persons have long *ē* where the present subjunctive has *ā*; *i. e.*, fut. *regēs*, *regēmus*, etc.; pres. subj. *regās*, *regāmus*, etc. In the third person sing. act. the final syllable was short in the ordinary language.

This *ē* perhaps arises from suffixing *ī* (meaning *to go*) to the present subjunctive of these verbs; *i. e.*, *reg-ā-mus*, *reg-ā-ī-mus*, *rēgēmus*; just as *amēmus*, pres. subj. was formed. But this formation would not do for

a- and **e-** verbs; because in **a-** verbs such a form (*e. g.*, **amēmus**) is already used for the pres. subj.; and in **e-** verbs, it (*e. g.*, **monēmus**) would be identical with the present indicative. Accordingly

In **a-** and **e-** verbs there is a different mode of forming the future indicative; viz., by suffixing **īb-** to the present stem, with the final vowel of which it is contracted; *e. g.*, **ama-**, **ama-īb-**, **amāb-**; first person plural **amab-imus**; **mon-e-**, **mone-īb-**, **monēb-**; first person plural **monēbimus**.

A similar future (besides the ordinary form in **-am**, **-es**, **-et**) is not unfrequently formed from **ī-** stems in early writers (Plautus, Terence, etc.); *e. g.*, **aperībo**, **adgredībor** (comp. **adgredīri** for **adgredi**), **largībere**, **oppe- rībor**, **scībo**, etc. But of these forms none are found so late as the first century B. C., except **ībo**, **quībo**, **nequībo**, which are the only forms in use at any time in those three verbs. **Lenībo** is also found in Propertius.

The verb **do** has a short penultimate **dābo**.

The verb **sum** and compounds may seem to have merely a different form of the present for the future; viz., **ēr-o** (for **esom**), first person plural **ēr- īmus** (compare pres. **sūmus** for **ēs-ūm-us**). Most philologists, however, consider **ero**, etc., to be for **esio**, the **i** being similar to that of the present subj.

4. Imperfect.—The imperfect indicative has in all stems a long **a** preceding the personal inflections. Thus **ēs-** with **ā** suffixed becomes **ēsā-**, which with the personal **m** and the usual change of **s** to **r** becomes **ērā-m**, *I was*. In all stems except **ēs-**, **b** is prefixed to this long **a**. Moreover, in all stems but **dā-** the vowel preceding **bā** is long.

The long **a**, which is always found (though shortened by final **m** and **t**), serves to distinguish the imperfect from the future where the forms are otherwise similar; *e. g.*, **amābāmus**, **amābīmus**; **monebāmus**, **monebī- mus**; **ībāmus**, **ībīmus**; **dābāmus**, **dābīmus**; **ērāmus**, **ērīmus**. It is apparently a sign of past time, and as such is found in the pluperfect also.

In consonant stems the ending is **-ēbā-**, and this is usually found also in verbs with **i** stems; *e. g.*, **reg-ēbā-mus**, **audi-ēbā-mus**. But this long **e** is not found in **eo**, **queo**, and their compounds, and is not unfrequently absent in the earlier language (Plautus, Ter., Varr., etc.); *e. g.*, **scībam**, **nescībam**, **āībam**, etc., **gestībat**, **grundībat**, **insanībat**, **mollībat**, **praesagībat**, **ser- vības**, **stabilībat**, **vēnībat**. So also, apparently for metrical reasons, in the dactylic poets; *e. g.*, **audībant**, **lenībat**, **saevībat**, **redimībat**, **molībar**, **ferībant**, etc.

5. Imperfect Subjunctive.—This tense had the suffix **-ēr** (for **ēs**), which with the modal suffix **ē** made **-ērē**. The first vowel coalesced with a preceding **a**, **e**, or **ī**; *e. g.*, **reg-ēr-ēmus**, **tribu-ēr-ēmus**, **am-ār-ēmus** (for **amā-ēr-ēmus**), **mon-ēr-ēmus**, **aud-īr-ēmus**, and caused the omission of a preceding **ī**; *e. g.*, **capī-**, **capērem**.

In **ēdo**, **vōlo**, **fēro**, and their compounds, the vowel **ē** was dropped out; *e. g.*, first person plural **es-sēm-us** (for **ēd-ēs-ēmus**); **vel-lēm-us** (for **vōl-**

ēr-ēm-us); fer-rēm-us (for fēr-ēr-ēm-us). Do has dārēm-us. Sum (as well as ēdo) has essēm-us.

essem (from sum) may be formed from the imperfect indicative with the subjunctival suffix ī. Thus ēsā-ī-m becomes esē-m, the first syllable being lengthened by a double s as a compensatory result of the contraction. The imperfect of sum in a somewhat different form appears to have been used to form the imperfect of regular verbs, *e. g.*, reg- with the imperfect indicative of sum, is reg-eram: hence reg-era-i-m, regerem.

6. The Present Infinitive Active has the suffix -ēre, for -ēsē (s between two vowels changed to r), in which the first e coalesces with a preceding ā, e, or ī; *e. g.*, reg-ēre, tribu-ēre; am-āre, mon-ēre, aud-īre. Cāpēre is formed analogously to cāpērēm (5).

In sum, ēdo, vōlo, fēro, and their compounds, the first vowel e was dropped out, as in the imperfect subjunctive. Hence the infinitives are esse (for esese and for edese), velle (for vōlere), ferre (for ferere).

a. The infinitive is generally considered to be the dative or locative case of a verbal noun with stem ending in s- or si-; *e. g.*, dicer-e for old daikas-ai, viver-e analogous to the Sanskrit jīvas-ai. The final e (=ai) would be originally long.

7. The Present Infinitive Passive has the suffix i appended to the stem, in verbs whose stem ends in a consonant, or in ī or in u: as, reg-ī, tribu-ī, cap-ī. In other vowel verbs ī takes the place of the final e of the active infinitive: as, aud-īr-ī, mon-ēr-ī, am-ār-ī.

a. A further suffix -ēr is found appended to the i, frequently in the older and occasionally in later poets: as, amārier, vestīrier.

8. The suffix of the PRESENT PARTICIPLE is -enti, nom. sing. -ens: as, reg-ens, tribu-ens, audi-ens. In eo and its compounds an older form of the suffix, viz., -unti, is retained; the nom. sing. is, however, usually iens. In -a and -e verbs the suffix coalesces with the final stem vowel: as, amans (for amā-ens), monens (for monē-ens).

9. The suffix -endo forms, as a noun, the GERUND, as an adjective, the GERUNDIVE: as, regendum, tribuendum, audiendum; amandum, monendum.

An older form in -undo (probably for an earlier -ondo) is common in some writers. Eo and its compounds always have this form: as, eundum, adeundus.

92. TENSES FORMED FROM THE PERFECT STEM.

1. The suffixes for the tenses formed from the perfect stem, *i. e.*, for the perfect, future perfect, and pluperfect in the indicative, and perfect and pluperfect in the subjunctive, are the same in all verbs; viz., future perfect, -ēr-; perf. subj., -ēr-ī; pluperf. ind., -ēr-ā; pluperf. subj., -iss-ē. The perfect infinitive ends in isse.

2. The great resemblance of these suffixes to the parts of the verb sum,

which are used to form the same tenses in the passive voice, suggests (and the suggestion has been generally adopted) that they are identical in origin.

This theory would give a complete explanation of the pluperfect and the future perfect indicative, with the exception that the third person plural of the latter has *ērint* instead of *ērunt*, perhaps in order to avoid confusion with the third person plural perfect indicative.

The perfect subjunctive would be explained by assuming as the suffix an older form of *sim*; viz., *-ēsīm*, or with the usual change of *s* to *r*, *-ērim*.

In the perfect infinitive and pluperfect subjunctive, *audivissem*, *audivisse* would stand for *aud-īvī-essem*, *audivī-esse*.

In the perfect indicative the second person singular, *e. g.*, *audivistī* would stand for *aud-īvī-estī* (the personal suffix *-tī* being *lost* in the simple verb, *es*, *thou art*); second person plural, *e. g.*, *audivistis*, for *aud-īvī-estis*; third person plural, *e. g.*, *audiverunt*, for *aud-īvī-ēsunt*. The third personal singular may have the simple personal suffixes, or may possibly have been reduced from a fuller form; *e. g.*, *audivi-est*, *audivist*, *audivit*. The *-īt* is sometimes found long. The first person singular, *e. g.*, *audivi*, may then be for *audivī-esum*, *audivism*, *audivim*. And the first person plural may have had a similar pedigree.

It must, however, be observed that the resemblance to the parts of the stem *es*, on which this theory rests, is in some degree deceptive, for it consists largely in personal and modal suffixes, which even on another hypothesis might be expected to be the same.

3. The perfect stem when formed by a suffixed *v*, is frequently modified by the omission of the *v* in all tenses and persons and both numbers, except in the first person singular and plural, and third person singular of the perfect indicative. The vowels thus brought together are contracted, excepting *-ie* and sometimes *-ii*. (See 83.)

93. PARTICIPLES AND COMPOUND TENSES FORMED FROM THE SUPINE STEM.

From the so-called **supine stem** are formed the **future participle active** by suffixing *-ūro-*, sing. nom. *-ūrus* (m.), *-ūra* (f.), *-ūrum* (n.); and the **past participle passive**, by suffixing the ordinary case-endings of the first and second declension; *e. g.*, sing. nom. *-us* (m.), *-ă* (f.), *-um* (n.).

These participles, in the appropriate gender and number, are used in the nominative case with the finite tenses of the verb *sum*, and in the accusative as well as the nominative with the infinitive of the same verb to supply the place of certain tenses for which there is no special form. The future participle thus supplies additional future tenses in the active voice, especially in the subjunctive; the past participle supplies the perfect tenses of the passive voice, whether the passive voice have a strictly passive meaning, or, as in deponents, an active or reflexive meaning.

VERB STEMS.

94. THE PRESENT STEM.

Verbs may be divided into **consonant verbs** and **vowel verbs**, according as the present stem ends in a consonant or a vowel.

I. Consonant Verbs.

1. Most consonant verbs exhibit in the **present stem** no alteration of the regular stem of the verb: as, **rĕg-**, **rĕg-ĕre**; **caed-**, **caed-ĕre**.

In others such alteration is found: as,

1. The verb stem is **reduplicated** to form the **present tense**; thus, from the verb stem **gĕn-**, we have the present **gignĕre** for **gĭ-gĕnĕre** (**gĕn-ui**, **gĕnĭtum**); from **stā-**, **sistĕre** (**stĭti**, **stĭtum**); from **sā-**, **sĕrĕre** for **sĕsĕre** (**sĕvi**, **sĭtum**).

2. The radical **vowel** is **lengthened**; thus from the stem **dŭc-** (compare **dux**, **dŭcis**) **dŭcĕre**; from **dĭc-** (compare **veridĭcus**) **dĭcere**; from **fĭd-** (compare **fĭdes**) **fĭdere**.

3. **n** is **suffixed** to the stem of the verb: as, **tem-**, **tem-n-ĕre**; **cer-**, **cer-n-ĕre**; **sĭ-**, **sĭ-n-ĕre**.

(In early Latin are found such forms as **dā-n-unt** for **dant**, **solĭ-n-unt** for **solent**, **nequi-n-unt** for **nequeunt**, **obi-n-unt** for **obeunt**.)

4. A **nasal** is **inserted** before the final stem consonant: as, *a*. Labial stems: **cŭb-**, **cu-m-bĕre**; **rŭp-**, **ru-m-pĕre**; *b*. Guttural stems: **lĭqu-**, **li-n-qŭere**; **frāg-**, **fra-n-gĕre**; **vĭc-**, **vi-n-cĕre**. In some verbs the nasal is retained in the perfect and dropped in the supine stem: as, **fĭg-**, **fĭ-n-gere**, **fĭ-n-xi**, **fĭ-ctum**. In some the nasal is constant in the verb stem: as, root **jŭg-** (compare **jŭg-um**), **ju-n-gĕre**, **ju-n-xi**, **ju-n-ctum**; *c*. Dental stems: as, **fĭd-**, **fĭ-n-dere**; **tŭd-**, **tu-n-dĕre**.

5. **sc** or **isc** is **suffixed** to verb stems, especially to vowel stems in **e**, and gives often the special meaning of *beginning* or *becoming*. This **inchoative** form sometimes exists alone, sometimes is used besides the ordinary stem, sometimes is found in a compound, but not in the simple verb. The perfect and supine, if any, are the same as those of the ordinary stem (real or assumed). A very few stems carry the suffix **-sc** throughout all the tenses. Thus **sc** is suffixed:

a. To consonant stems: as, **āl-** (**alĕre**), **ale-sc-ĕre**; **pāc-**, **pāc-isc-i**; **dĭc-**, **di-sc-ĕre** (for **dic-sc-ĕre**).

b. To vowel stems: as, **īrā-**, **ira-sc-i**; **nā-**, **na-sc-i**; **no-**, **no-sc-ĕre**; **crĕ-**, **cre-sc-ĕre**; **dormī-** (**dormĭre**), **ob-dormi-sc-ĕre**; **sci-**, **sci-sc-ĕre**.

6. The **guttural** is omitted in some stems which probably ended in **gu-** (*i. e.*, **g** with a slight labial action after it): as, **flu-gu-**, **flu-ĕre**; **stru-gu-**, **stru-ĕre**; **frug-u-**, **frui**; **vigu-**, **vĭv-ĕre**; also the vowel stem **conigu-**, **conĭvĕre**.

Other stems vary between *gu* and *g*: as, *stinguēre*, *stingēre*; *tinguēre*, *tingēre*; *unguēre*, *ungēre*; *ninguit*, *ningit* (compare *nix*, *nīv-is*), and the vowel stems *urguēre*, *urgēre*.

7. *s* is changed between vowels to *r*: as, *gēs*-, *gērēre* (*gessi*, *gestum*); *quēs*-, *quēri* (*ques-tus*); *quaes*-, *quaerēre* (compare *quaeso*, *quaesīvi*, etc.); *ūs*-, *ūrēre* (*ussi*, *ustum*).

Also the vowel stem *hausi*-, *haurīre* (*hausi*, *haus-tum*).

8. A few verbs have *ll* in present stem, but not in other parts: as, *col*-, *percellēre* (*per-cūl-i*, *per-cul-sum*); *pol*-, *pellēre* (*pe-pūl-i*, *pul-sum*); *tol*-, *tollēre* (*tūl-i*); *vellēre* retains *ll* in perfect *velli*, but has the supine *vul-sum*.

II. Vowel Verbs.

1. Verbs with stems ending in *a*:

Most of these verbs have the verb stem ending in *ā*-, and preserve it in all tenses: as, *flā*-, *flāre* (*flāvi*, *flātum*); *fā*-, *fāri* (*fātus*); in which *a* is radical.

In *nā*-, *nāre* (*nāvi*, *nātum*), the *ā* is constant, but the derivative *nāto* shows that *ā* is radical. In *strā*-, *ster-n-ēre* (*strāvi*, *strātum*); *tlā*-, *toll-ēre* (*tētūli*, *lātum* for *tlātum*); the present stem is consonantal.

2. Verbs with stems ending in *ā*:- as,

dā-, *dāre* (*dēdi*, *dātum*), but *das* has *ā*. In all other verbs which may be considered to have a stem ending in *ā*-, the final *a*- combines with the initial vowel of the suffixes in tenses formed from the present stem, so as to present *ā*; e. g.,

stā-, *stāre* (*stēti*, *stātum*, but sometimes *stātum*), where *ā* is radical; *crēpā*-, *crēpāre*; *cūbā*-, *cūbāre*; *dōmā*-, *dōmāre*; *fricā*-, *fricāre*; *mīcā*-, *mīcāre*; *ēnēcā*-, *ēnēcāre*, but *nēcā*- usually is simple verb; *-plicā*- and *-plicā*-, *plicāre*; *secā*-, *secāre*; *-sōnā*-, *sonāre* (also *sonēre*); *tōnā*-, *tonāre*; *vētā*-, *vetāre*; all of which have perfects in *-ui*, and most of them usually supines in *-itum*. Also *lāvā*-, *lavāre* (and *lavēre*); *jūvā*-, *juvāre*; which vocalize and contract the radical *v* with *-ui* of the perfect; and contract or omit it in the supine.

3. Of verbs with stems ending in *o*, the only traces are

nō-, which has the inchoative suffix in the present tense, *noscēre* (*nōvi*, *nōtum*); the root has *ō*, comp. *nōta* (noun), *nōtāre*, *cognītum*, etc.; and *pō*- (*pōtum*), the frequentative *potā-re* being otherwise alone in use.

4. Verbs with stems ending in *u*.

a. Most have stems in *ū*, which, however, becomes short before the initial vowel of the suffixes: as, *acū*-, *acūere*, *acūis*, *acūisti*, *acūas*, *acūebam*, *acūerem*, etc.; the supine has *ū*. *Plu*-, *pluēre* (perf. *plūvi* and *plui*) is, apparently, contracted for *plūv*- or *plov*- (compare *plūvia*). And the same may be the case with all: compare *flu*o, *flūv*-ius.

b. *ruo* has *rū*- in supine of compounds, but *rūta* (n. pl.) according to Varro. *Pū*- is found only in adj. *pūtus* and frequentative *pūtāre*.

c. A few verbs have u vocal in the supine, but consonantal usually in the present and perfect: as, *lōqu-*, *lōqui* (*locūtum*); *sequ-*, *sēqui* (*secūtum*); *solv-*, *solvere* (*solvi*, *sōlūtum*); *volv-*, *volvĕre* (*volvi*, *vōlūtum*).

5. *Verbs with stems ending in e*:

a. Few verbs have the stem ending in *ē*, and these are monosyllables, where *e* is radical: as, *delē-* (compound), *delĕre*; *flē*, *flĕre*; *nē-*, *nĕre*; *-plē*, *-plĕre*.

All these have the perfect and supine in *-ēvi*, *-ētum*.

Other verbs with *ē* (*-ēvi*, *-ētum*) have consonantal present stems: as, *crē-*, *crescĕre*; *quīē-*, *quiescĕre*.

b. In most verbs with stems in *-e*, the *e* was probably short, as may be inferred from the perfect being in *-ui* (for *-eui*), and supine in *-ītum*, which in some verbs was reduced to *-tum*: as, *mōnē-*, *monĕre* (*monui*, *monītum*), and many others; *cāvĕ-*, *cāvĕre* (*cāvi* for *cāvui*, *cāvītum*, contracted to *cautum*), and others. Contraction with the initial vowel of suffixes gives *ē* in most forms of the present stem; *e. g.*, *monĕre*, *monēs*, *monēmus*, *monēbam*, *monēbo*, *monērem*, *monētur* (*monēt*, as *amāt*, *audīt*, the vowel being shortened before *t* final).

c. Many verbs have *e* (probably *ĕ*) in the present stem, but drop it entirely and show consonantal stems in other parts of the verb: as, *morde*, *mordĕre* (*momordi*, *morsum*); *vīde-*, *vīdĕre* (*vīdi*, *vīsum*); *sĕde-*, *sedĕre* (*sēdi*, *sessum*), and many others.

d. Some have a present stem in *-e*, besides another (older or poetic) consonantal stem: as, *fervĕre*, *fervĕre*; *strīdĕre*, *strīdĕre*; *tuĕri*, in compounds *-tui*; *ciĕre*, in compounds *-cīre*.

6. *Verbs with stems ending in i*:

a. Some verbs with radical *i*, and many derivatives, have *ī*, and retain it through all the tenses: as, *scī-*, *scīrĕ*; *i-*, *īre*; *cī-*, *-cīre* (also *ciĕre*); *quī-*, *quīre*. In these the *i* is radical. So, too, *audī-*, *audīre*; *dormī-*, *dormīre*; and many other derivatives. In all these the perfect is in *-īvi*, and in the derivative verbs and *scio*, the supine is in *-ītum*. But *ītum*, *cītum*, *quītum*.

b. Some verbs have *ī* in the present stem, but drop it and show a consonantal stem in other parts: as, *amīcī-*, *amīcīre* (*amīcui*, *amictum*).

c. Some verbs have the stem ending in *ī*, which fell away before *ī* or *ēr*; and, as final in the imperative, was changed to *ĕ*. The *i* is generally dropped in the supine stem. Thus *cāpī-*, *cāpĕre* (*cēpi*, *captum*); *grādī-*, inf. *grādī* (*gressum*). Two have *ī* in other tenses than those derived from the present: *cūpī-*, *cūpĕre*, *cūpīvi*, *cūpītum* (in Lucretius also *cupīret*); *sāpī-*, *sāpĕre*, *sāpīvi*, in compound *rēsīpui* and *rēsīpīvi*.

d. A few verbs have consonant stems in the present, but *ī* stems in other parts: as, *pēt-*, *pĕtĕre*, *pētīvi*, *petītum*; *quaes-*, *quaerĕre*, *quaesīvi*, *quaesītum*; *arcess-*, *arcessĕre*, *arcessīvi*, *arcessītum*.

95. FORMATION OF THE PERFECT STEM.

The perfect stem is formed in six different ways:

1. **By reduplication.** The first consonant of the stem is prefixed with a short vowel, which is (1) *e* if the stem-vowel is *a* or *e*, and (2) is the same as the stem-vowel if that vowel is *o*, *u*, or *i*. (3) If the stem-vowel is *a*, it is changed to *e* before two consonants, to *i* before one; (4) *ae* is changed to *ī*. (5) Before single *l*, *e* and *o* become *u*. (6) If the stem begins with *sp*, *sc*, *st*, the second consonant is reduplicated, and the *s* prefixed to the reduplication syllable.

Thus: (1) and (3) *căn-*, *cě-cĭn-i*; *parc-*, *pe-perc-i*; (1) *pend-*, *pě-pend-i*; (2) *posc-*, *pō-posc-i*; *tūd-* (present *tund-*), *tū-tūd-i*; *dĭc-* (present *dic-so-*), *dĭ-dĭo-i*; (4) *caed-*, *cě-cĭd-i*; (5) *pōl-* (present *pell-*), *pě-pŭl-i*; (6) *sponde-*, *spō-pond-i*; *stā-* (present *stā-*), *stē-ti*.

2. **By lengthening the stem-vowel:** as, *rŭp-* (present *rump-*), *rŭp-i*. Short *a* is changed to *ē* (except in *scăbĕre*), as *ăg-*, *ēg-i*.

3. **By suffixing *s*:** as, *carp-*, *carp-s-i*. This suffix is supposed to be the same as that of the First Aorist in Greek. In stems in *m*, a euphonic *p* is generally inserted before *s*, as *dēm-*, *dēmp-s-i*. In *prĕmo* the *m* is assimilated: *pres-si*. The gutturals *c*, *g*, and *qu*, with *s* become *x*; as *dĭc-*, *dĭ-x-i*; *c* and *g*, after *l* or *r*, are dropped before *s*; as, *mulce-*, *mul-s-i*; *sparg-*, *spar-s-i*. The labial *b* becomes *p*; as, *scrĭb-*, *scrĭp-s-i*. The dentals *t* and *d* fall away before *s*, or are assimilated to it: as, *flect-*, *flex-i* (*x* = *cs*); *mitt-*, *mĭ-s-i*; *cĕd-*, *ces-s-i*; *dĭvĭd-*, *dĭvĭ-s-i*; *vād-*, *vā-s-i*.

4. **By suffixing *u*:** as, *strĕp-*, *strep-u-i*; *dŏmă-*, *dom-u-i*; *dŏcĕ-*, *dŏc-u-i*.

5. **By suffixing *v*:** as, *ama-*, *ama-v-i*; *audi-*, *audi-v-i*; *no-* (present *nosco*), *nō-v-i*.

6. **By adopting the present-stem as the perfect-stem:** as, *bĭb-*, *bĭb-ī*; *īc-*, *īc-i*; *vert-*, *vert-i*; *ăcŭ-*, *acu-i*.

96. FORMATION OF THE SUPINE STEM.

The supine stem has the suffix *t*.

When the verb-stem ends in a vowel, that vowel is, if long, generally retained: as, *ămā-*, *ămā-tum*; if short, it is almost always changed, except in monosyllables, to *ĭ*, or omitted altogether: as, *dŏmă-*, *dŏmĭ-tum*; *hăbĕ-*,

hăbĭ-tum; *mŏvē-*, *mŏ-tum*. A few of the verbs which have a consonant stem have -ĭt (instead of t) in the supine, as if from a vowel-stem: thus, *frēm-*, *frēm-ĭtum*.

When the verb-stem ends in a consonant, or loses its final vowel, t is, when following certain consonants, changed to s. Before this s, t and d are dropped, or assimilated: as, *ed-*, *ē-sum*; *cēd-*, *cēs-sum* (*ced-sum*); *mitt-*, *mis-sum*. The guttural characters, g, gu, qu, h become c when t follows: as, *ăg-*, *ac-tum*; the labial b becomes p: as, *scrĭb-*, *scrĭp-tum*; v is vocalized into u in *solv-*, *solū-tum*, *volv-*, *volū-tum*; r (primitively s) becomes s again: as, *ger-*, *gestum*.—ROBY, *in part*.

97. A TABLE OF VERBS, SHOWING THE PRESENT, INFINITIVE, PERFECT, AND SUPINE.

NOTE.—Forms enclosed in parentheses, as (*jutum*), are rare or late.

I. First Conjugation.

	Present.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
Regular Form,	-o,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum;
as,	ămo,	ămāre,	ămāvi,	ămātum.

Exceptions:—

1. Those having -ui in Perfect, -ĭtum or -tum in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
crĕpo,	crepāre,	crepui,	crepĭtum,	<i>creak, rattle.</i>
cŭbo,	cubāre,	cubui,	cubĭtum,	<i>lie, lie ill.</i>
dŏmo,	domāre,	domui,	domĭtum,	<i>tame.</i>
explĭco,	explicāre,	{ explicui,	{ explicĭtum,	{ <i>unfold.</i> 1
		{ explicāvi,	{ explicātum,	
frĭco,	fricāre,	fricui,	{ frictum,	{ <i>rub.</i>
			{ fricātum,	
mĭco,	micāre,	micui,	micātum,	<i>quiver, flash.</i> 2
sĕco,	secāre,	secui,	sectum,	<i>cut.</i>
sŏno,	sonāre,	sonui,	sonĭtum,	<i>sound.</i>
tŏno,	tonāre,	tonui,	tonĭtum,	<i>thunder.</i>
vĕto,	vetāre,	vetui,	vetĭtum,	<i>forbid.</i>

2. Those having -vi in Perfect, -tum in Supine.

jŭvo,	juvāre,	jŭvi,	(jŭtum),	<i>help, delight.</i> 3
lāvo,	lavāre,	lāvi,	{ lavātum,	{ <i>wash.</i>
			{ lautum,	
			{ lŏtum,	

1 So nearly all compounds of *plĭco*, *to fold*, which has no perfect or supine.

2 *Dīmĭco* has *dimicāvi* and *dimicŭi* (twice in Ovid), *dimicātum*; *ēmĭco* has fut. part. *emicatŭrus*.

3 Fut. part. *jŭvātŭrus*; *adjŭvo* has *adjŭtŭrus*.

3. Those having reduplicated ¹ Perfect, -tum in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
do,	dāre,	dēdi,	dātum,	<i>give.</i>
sto,	stāre,	stēti,	stātum,	<i>stand.</i> 2

II. Second Conjugation.

Regular Form,	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.
	-ĕo,	-ĕre,	-ŭi,	ŭtum;
as, mōnĕo,	mōnĕre,	mōnŭi,	mōnŭtum.	

Exceptions:—

1. Those having regular Perf. in -ui, but -tum or -sum in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
censeo,	censĕre,	censui,	censum,	<i>reckon, give opinion.</i>
dōceo,	docĕre,	docui,	doctum,	<i>teach.</i>
misceo,	miscĕre,	miscui,	{ mixtum, mistum, }	<i>mix.</i>
rĕtĭneo,	retinĕre,	retinui,	rĕtentum,	<i>retain.</i> 3
torreo,	torrĕre,	torrui,	tostum,	<i>parch.</i>

2. Those having -vi in Perf., -tum in Supine.

dĕleo,	delĕre,	delĕvi,	delĕtum,	<i>destroy.</i>
fleo,	flĕre,	flĕvi,	flĕtum,	<i>weep.</i>
impleo,	implĕre,	implĕvi,	implĕtum,	<i>fill.</i> 4

3. Those having -si in Perf., -sum or -tum in Supine.

algeo,	algĕre,	alsi,		<i>be cold.</i>
ardeo,	ardĕre,	arsī,	arsum,	<i>be on fire.</i>
augeo,	augĕre,	auxi,	auctum,	<i>make bigger.</i>
haereo,	haerĕre,	haesi,	haesum,	<i>stick.</i>
indulgeo,	indulgĕre,	indulsi,	indultum (late)	<i>indulge.</i>
jūbeo,	jubĕre,	jussi,	jussum,	<i>bid.</i>
māneo,	manĕre,	mansi,	mansum,	<i>remain, await.</i>
mulceo,	mulcĕre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	<i>stroke, soothe.</i>

1 That is, having the first consonant of the present, together with a vowel, prefixed to the perfect tense, as, *do, de-di* (§ 95). In the perfects of compound verbs the initial consonants of the verb, not of the preposition, appear as the reduplication of the perfect, *e. g., con-sto, con-stiti*.

2 The compounds generally make -stīti in perf., as, *praesto, praestīti*, and seldom have a supine; those with dissyllabic prepositions retain *e* in the perfect, as *circumstēti*. Lucan has *stāturus*.

3 So all compounds of *teneo, to hold*, which has no supine.

4 So all compounds of *pleo, to fill*, which is never found in an uncompounded form.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
mulgeo,	mulgēre,	mulsi,		<i>milk.</i>
rīdeo,	ridēre,	rīsi,	rīsum,	<i>laugh.</i>
suādeo,	suādēre,	suāsi,	suāsum,	<i>advise.</i>
tergeo,	tergēre,	tersi,	tersum,	<i>wipe. 1</i>
torquēo,	torquēre,	torsi,	tortum,	<i>twist.</i>

4. Those having **-i** in Perf., **-tum** or **-sum** in Supine.

cāveo,	cavēre,	cāvi,	cautum,	<i>beware.</i>
fāveo,	favēre,	fāvi,	fautum,	<i>be favorable.</i>
fōveo,	fovēre,	fōvi,	fōtum,	<i>keep warm, cherish.</i>
mōveo,	movēre,	mōvi,	mōtum,	<i>move (transitive).</i>
prandeo,	prandēre,	prandi,	pransum,	<i>dine.</i>
respondeo,	respondēre,	respondi,	responsum,	<i>answer. 2</i>
sēdeo,	sedēre,	sēdi,	sessum,	<i>sit.</i>
vīdeo,	vidēre,	vīdi,	vīsum,	<i>see.</i>
vōveo,	vovēre,	vōvi,	vōtum,	<i>vow.</i>

5. Those having reduplicated Perf., **-sum** in Supine.

mordeo,	mordēre,	mōmordi,	morsum,	<i>bite.</i>
pendeo,	pendēre,	pēpendi,	pensum,	<i>be suspended.</i>
spondeo,	spondēre,	spōpondi,	sponsum,	<i>promise.</i>
tondeo,	tondēre,	tōtondi,	tonsum,	<i>shear.</i>

6. Semi-deponent Verbs.

audeo,	audēre,	ausus sum,	<i>dare.</i>
gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gāvisus sum,	<i>rejoice.</i>
sōleo,	solēre,	solītus sum,	<i>be accustomed.</i>

III. Third Conjugation.

Infinitive ends in **-ēre**. The principal varieties of conjugation are the following:—

1. Those having **-si** in Perf., **-tum** in Supine.

Note.—Perfects in **-xi** are considered as ending in **-si**, since **x** is only a double letter standing for **cs**, **gs**, **ks**, or **qs**.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
allīcio,	allīcēre,	allexi,	allectum,	<i>entice. 3</i>
aspīcio,	aspīcēre,	aspexi,	aspectum,	<i>behold. 4</i>
carpo,	carpēre,	carpsi,	carptum,	<i>pluck.</i>

1 A form **tergo**, **tergēre**, is found less frequently.

2 So all compounds of **spondeo**, *to promise*.

3 So all compounds, except **elicio** (6), of the unused verb **lacio**, *to entice*. **Prelio** has no perfect or supine.

4 So all compounds of the verb **specio**, *to look*, found only in Plautus.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	Meaning.
cingo,	cingĕre,	cīnxi,	cinctum,	<i>gird.</i>
cōmo,	comĕre,	compsi,	comptum,	<i>adorn.</i>
cōquo,	coquĕre,	coxi,	coctum,	<i>cook.</i>
dēmo,	demĕre,	dempsi,	demptum,	<i>take away.</i>
dīco,	dicĕre,	dixi,	dictum,	<i>say, tell.</i>
dūco,	ducĕre,	duxi,	ductum,	<i>lead, draw.</i>
extinguo,	extinguĕre,	extinxi,	extinctum,	<i>extinguish. 1</i>
finġo,	finġĕre,	finxi,	fictum,	<i>form, invent.</i>
ġĕro,	ġĕrĕre,	ġessi,	ġestum,	<i>carry on.</i>
jungo,	jungĕre,	junxi,	junctum,	<i>yoke, join.</i>
nūbo,	nubĕre,	nupsi,	nuptum,	<i>be married. 2</i>
pingo,	pingĕre,	pinxi,	pictum,	<i>paint.</i>
prōmo,	promĕre,	prompsi,	promptum,	<i>draw out.</i>
rĕgo,	regĕre,	rexī,	rectum,	<i>keep straight, rule.</i>
rĕpo,	repĕre,	repsi,	(reptum),	<i>creep.</i>
scribo,	scribĕre,	scripsi,	scriptum,	<i>write.</i>
stringo,	stringĕre,	strinxi,	strictum,	<i>graze, draw tight.</i>
struo,	struĕre,	struxi,	structum,	<i>build.</i>
sūmo,	sumĕre,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	<i>take up.</i>
tĕgo,	tegĕre,	texi,	tectum,	<i>cover.</i>
temno,	temnĕre,	tempsi,	temptum,	<i>despise.</i>
tingo,	{ tingĕre,	{	{	{
tinguo,				
trāho,	trahĕre,	traxi,	tractum,	<i>draw.</i>
ungo,	{ ungĕre,	{	{	{
unguo,				
ūro,	urĕre,	ussi,	ustum,	<i>burn.</i>
vĕho,	vehĕre,	vexi,	vectum,	<i>carry.</i>
vīvo,	vivĕre,	vixi,	victum,	<i>live.</i>

2. Those having -si in Perf., -sum in Supine.

cĕdo,	cedĕre,	cessi,	cessum,	<i>give way, yield up.</i>
claudo,	claudĕre,	clausi,	clausum,	<i>shut. 3</i>
concūto,	concutĕre,	concussi,	concussum,	<i>shake. 4</i>
divīdo,	divīdĕre,	divīsi,	divīsum,	<i>divide.</i>
evādo,	evādĕre,	evāsi,	evāsum,	<i>go out.</i>
fīgo,	figĕre,	fixi,	fixum,	<i>fix.</i>
flecto,	flectĕre,	flexi,	flexum,	<i>bend.</i>

1 So all compounds of *stinguo*, to *quench*, which has no perfect or supine.

2 As a bride; literally, *put on a veil*.

3 The compounds make *-cludo*; as, *reclūdo*, -ĕre, -si, -sum, *open*.

4 So all compounds of *quāto*, *quātĕre*, to *shake*, which has supine *quassum*, and no perfect.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	Meaning.
flūo,	fluēre,	fluxi,	(fluxus, adj.),	flow.
laedo,	laedēre,	laesi,	laesum,	hurt.
lūdo,	ludēre,	lūsi,	lūsum,	sport.
mergo,	mergēre,	mersi,	mersum,	sink (trans.).
mitto,	mittēre,	misi,	missum,	let go, send.
necto,	nectēre,	nexi,	nexum,	link together.
plaudo,	plaudēre,	plausi,	plausum,	clap the hands. ¹
rādo,	radēre,	rāsi,	rāsum,	scrape.
rōdo,	rodēre,	rōsi,	rōsum,	gnaw.
spargo,	spargēre,	sparsi,	sparsum,	scatter, besprinkle.
trūdo,	trudēre,	trūsi,	trūsum,	thrust.

3. Those having a reduplicated Perf., -tum or -sum in Supine.

addo,	addēre,	addīdi,	addītum,	add. ²
cādo,	cādēre,	cēcīdi,	cāsum,	fall.
caedo,	caedēre,	cēcīdi,	caesum,	fell, cut, slay.
cāno,	cānēre,	cēcīni,	(cantus, noun),	sing, play.
curro,	currēre,	cūcurri,	cursum,	run. ³
disco,	discēre,	dīdīci,		learn.
fallo,	fallēre,	fēfelli,	falsum,	deceive.
pango,	pangēre,	{ pēgi, pēpīgi,	{ pactum, panctum,	{ fasten.
parco,	parcēre,	pēperci,	{ parsum, (parcītum),	{ spare. ⁴
pārio,	pārēre,	pēpēri,	partum,	bring forth. ⁵
pello,	pellēre,	pēpūli,	pulsum,	drive back.
pendo,	pendēre,	pēpendi,	pensum,	weigh.
posco,	poscēre,	pōposci,		demand.
pungo,	pungēre,	pūpūgi,	punctum,	prick. ⁶
rēsisto,	resistere,	restīti,	restītum,	resist. ⁷

1 Explōdo (*hiss off*), explodēre, explōsi, explōsum. So the other compounds, except applaudo, which does not change the vowel.

2 So most compounds of do (dāre), to give, to put; as, abdo, hide; condo, found; crēdo, believe; dēdo, give up; ēdo, give forth; perdo, lose, destroy; prōdo, betray; reddo, restore; trādo, deliver up; vendo, sell. But the half compounds, circumdo, surround; pessumdo, ruin; sātisdo, give security; and vēnumdo, offer for sale, form perfect, supine, and infinitive like do, and belong to the First Conjugation.

3 The compounds frequently retain the reduplication, as accūcurri; more usually (in Cicero and Livy) drop it, as accurri.

4 Plautus always, and Terence sometimes, have perfect parsi.

5 The future participle is pārītūrus.

6 Compounds have punxi in the perfect.

7 So all compounds of sisto, to stop (itself a reduplicated form of sto), which rarely has the perfect stīti, and has no supine. Sisto is rarely intransitive, and then has the perfect stēti.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	Meaning.
tango,	tangĕre,	tĕtĭgi,	tactum,	<i>touch.</i>
tendo,	tendĕre,	tĕtendi,	{ tentum, (tensum),	} <i>stretch.</i>
tollo,	tollĕre,	sustŭli,	sublātum,	<i>lift up, remove.</i> ¹
tundo,	tundĕre,	tŭtŭdi,	{ tŭsum, tunsum,	} <i>thump, pound.</i>

4. Those having -i in Perf., -tum in Supine.

āgo, ²	agĕre,	ĕgi,	actum,	<i>do, drive.</i>
atingo,	atingĕre,	attĭgi,	attactum,	<i>touch.</i> ³
bĭbo,	bĭbĕre,	bĭbi,	(bĭbĭtum),	<i>drink.</i>
cāpio, ⁴	cāpĕre,	cēpi,	captum,	<i>take.</i>
contendo,	contendĕre,	contendi,	contentum,	<i>strive.</i> ⁵
ĕmo, ⁶	ĕmĕre,	ĕmi,	emptum,	<i>buy (orig. take).</i>
fācio, ⁷	facĕre,	fĕci,	factum,	<i>make, do.</i>
frango, ⁸	frangĕre,	frĕgi,	fractum,	<i>break in pieces.</i>
fŭgio,	fugĕre,	fŭgi,	fugĭtum,	<i>flee, fly from.</i>
impingo,	impingĕre,	impĕgi,	impactum,	<i>strike upon.</i> ⁹
jācio, ¹⁰	jācĕre,	jĕci,	jactum,	<i>throw, cast.</i>
lēgo, ¹¹	lĕgĕre,	lēgi,	lectum,	<i>pick up, choose, read.</i>

1 The proper perfect and supine are *tŭli* (in prae-Augustan poets *tĕtŭli*) and *lātum* (for *tlātum*); but as *fero* takes these, *tollo* uses the perfect and supine of its compound *sustollo*.

2 The compounds make -*ĭgo*, -*igĕre*, -*ĕgi*, -*actum*, as *exĭgo*; except *cōgo*, *cōgĕre*, *cōĕgi*, *cōactum*; *dĕgo*, which has no perfect or supine; and *circumāgo*, *perāgo*, which retain *a* in the present stem. *Sātāgo* is really two words: perfect *ĕgi* *satis*.

3 So all compounds of *tango*, *to touch*.

4 The compounds (except *antecapio*) make -*cĭpio*, -*cipĕre*, -*cēpi*, -*ceptum*, as *excipio*.

5 So all compounds of *tendo*, *to stretch*. *Extendo*, *extend*, and *ostendo*, *shew*, have -*sum* as well as -*tum* in the supine.

6 The compounds make -*ĭmo*, -*imĕre*, -*ĕmi*, -*emptum*, as *ādĭmo*; except *coĕmo*, *perĕmo*, *interĕmo*, which retain *e*, and the earlier compounds, *cōmo*, *dĕmo*, *prōmo*, *sŭmo*, which make *compsi*, *comptum*, etc.

7 The compounds make -*fĭcio*, -*ficĕre*, -*fĕci*, -*fectum*, as *efficio*. The half compounds, *calĕfacio*, *tremĕfacio*, etc., retain *a*.

8 The compounds make -*fringo*, -*fringere*, -*frĕgi*, -*fractum*, as *effringo*.

9 So compounds of *pango*, *to fasten*; but *oppango*, *dĕpango* (wants the perf.), and *rĕpango* (wants perf. and sup.) retain *a* in the present stem.

10 The compounds make -*jicio*, -*jicĕre*, -*jĕci*, -*jectum*, as *conjicio*. In these compounds *ji* is by recent editors written *i*; as *cōnĭcio*, *conĭcĕre*, *conjĕci*, *conjectum*.

11 The compounds generally make -*lēgo*, -*ligĕre*, -*lēgi*, -*lectum*, as *collĭgo*. *Dĭlēgo* or *dĭlĭgo*, *love*; *intellĕgo*, *understand*, and *neglēgo*, *neglect*, retain *e*, and usually have the perf. in -*xi* (rarely *intellĕgi*, *neglēgi*). *Allēgo*, *perlēgo*, *praelēgo*, *rĕlēgo*, and *sublēgo* also retain *e*.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	Meaning.
rēlinquo,	relinquēre,	reliqui,	relictum,	<i>leave</i> . ¹
rumpo,	rumpēre,	rūpi,	ruptum,	<i>burst through</i> .
vinco,	vincēre,	vīci,	victum,	<i>conquer</i> .

5. Those having -i in Perf., -sum in Supine.

accendo,	accendēre,	accendi,	accensum,	<i>set on fire</i> . ²
compello,	compellēre,	compūli,	compulsum,	<i>compel</i> . ³
contundo,	contundēre,	contūdi,	contūsum,	<i>bruise</i> . ⁴
defendo,	defendēre,	defendi,	defensum,	<i>defend</i> . ⁵
ēdo,	ēdēre,	ēdi,	ēsum (essum),	<i>eat</i> .
fīdo,	fīdēre,	fīdi,	fissum,	<i>cleave</i> .
fōdio,	fōdēre,	fōdi,	fossūm,	<i>dig</i> .
fundo,	fundēre,	fūdi,	fūsum,	<i>pour, rout</i> .
occīdo,	occīdēre,	occīdi,	occāsum,	<i>set</i> . ⁶
occīdo,	occīdēre,	occīdi,	occisum,	<i>kill</i> . ⁷
pando,	pandēre,	pandi,	{ passum, -pansum,	{ <i>spread out, open</i> .
percello,	percellēre,	percūli,	perculsum,	<i>strike down</i> .
prehendo, ⁸	prehendēre,	prehendi,	prehensum,	<i>lay hold of</i> .
scando, ⁹	scandēre,	scandi,	scansum,	<i>climb</i> .
scindo,	scindēre,	scīdi,	scissum,	<i>tear, cut</i> .
succurro,	succurrēre,	succurri,	succursum,	<i>succor</i> . ¹⁰
suspendo,	suspendēre,	suspendi,	suspensum,	<i>hang up</i> . ¹¹
vello,	vellēre,	{ velli, (vulsi),	{ vulsum,	<i>pluck</i> .
verto,	vertēre,	verti,	versum,	<i>turn</i> .

6. Those having -ŭi in Perf., -tum in Supine [one -sum].

ālō,	alēre,	alui,	altum,	<i>nourish</i> . ¹²
cōlō,	cōlēre,	cōlui,	cultum,	<i>cultivate</i> .

1 So all compounds of *linquo*, perf. *liqui*, to leave, which has no supine.

2 So all compounds of the unused verb *cando*, to set on fire.

3 So all compounds of *pello*, to drive. *Rēpello* always has *rēpūli* or *reppūli*.

4 So all compounds of *tundo*, to beat or pound; supines in -tunsum occur.

5 So all compounds of the unused verb *fendo*, to strike.

6 So all compounds of *cādo*, to fall; except that the supine is rarely found.

7 So all compounds of *caedo*, to cut, fell, slay.

8 Often contracted into *prendo*, etc.

9 *Scando* becomes *scendo* in compounds, as, *descendo*, *descendi*, *descensum*, to descend.

10 So all compounds of *curro*, to run. But some have the reduplicated form also; as, *dēcurro*, to run down, which has perf. *dēcurri* and *dēcūcurri*.

11 So all compounds of *pendo*, to weigh.

12 A supine *ālītum* is found in post-Augustan writers.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	Meaning.
consŭlo,	consŭlĕre,	consŭlui,	consultum,	<i>consult.</i>
ĕlĭcio,	ĕlĭcĕre,	ĕlĭcui,	ĕlĭcĭtum,	<i>lure forth.</i>
frĕmo,	frĕmĕre,	frĕmui,	frĕmĭtum,	<i>roar, snort.</i>
gĕmo,	gĕmĕre,	gĕmui,	gĕmĭtum,	<i>sigh, groan.</i>
gigno,	gignĕre,	gĕnui,	gĕnĭtum,	<i>beget.</i>
mĕto,	mĕtĕre,	(messui),*	messum,	<i>reap, mow.</i>
mōlō,	mōlĕre,	molui,	molĭtum,	<i>grind.</i>
occŭlo,	occŭlĕre,	occŭlui,	occultum,	<i>hide.</i>
pōno, 1	pōnĕre,	pōsui,	pōsĭtum,	<i>put, place.</i>
rāpio, 2	rāpĕre,	rāpui,	raptum,	<i>snatch.</i>
sĕro,	sĕrĕre,	sĕrui (in	-sertum,	<i>connect.</i>
		compounds)		
strĕpo,	strĕpĕre,	strĕpui,	strĕpĭtum,	<i>make a din.</i>
texo,	texĕre,	texui,	textum,	<i>weave.</i>
trĕmo,	trĕmĕre,	trĕmui,		<i>tremble.</i>
vōmo,	vōmĕre,	vōmui,	vōmĭtum,	<i>vomit.</i>

7. Those having -vi in Perf., -tum in Supine.

arcesso, 3	arcessĕre,	arcessĭvi,	arcessĭtum,	<i>summon.</i>
cerno,	cernĕre,	crĕvi,	crĕtum,	<i>separate, discern.</i>
cognosco,	cognoscĕre,	cognōvi,	cognĭtum,	<i>know. 4</i>
cresco,	crescĕre,	crĕvi,	crĕtum,	<i>grow.</i>
cŭpio,	cŭpĕre,	cŭpĭvi,	cŭpĭtum,	<i>desire.</i>
lācesso,	lācessĕre,	lācessĭvi,	lācessĭtum,	<i>provoke.</i>
lĭno,	lĭnĕre,	lĕvi,	lĭtum,	<i>besmear.</i>
nosco,	noscĕre,	nōvi,	nōtum,	<i>become acquainted with.</i>
pasco,	pascĕre,	pāvi,	pastum,	<i>feed.</i>
pĕto,	pĕtĕre,	pĕtĭvi,	pĕtĭtum,	<i>seek.</i>
quaero, 5	quaerĕre,	quaesĭvi,	quaesĭtum,	<i>inquire.</i>
quĭesco,	quĭescĕre,	quĭĕvi,	quĭĕtum,	<i>rest.</i>
sĕro,	sĕrĕre,	sĕvi,	sātum,	<i>sow, plant.</i>
sĭno,	sĭnĕre,	sĭvi,	(sĭtum),	<i>allow.</i>
sperno,	spernĕre,	sprĕvi,	sprĕtum,	<i>reject, despise.</i>

* Say *messem feci*.

1 *Posĭvi* is frequent in Plautus; *postum* (simple and compound) is often found in poetry.

2 The compounds make -*rĭpio*, -*ripere*, -*ripui*, -*reptum*, as, *dĭripio*, to *tear in pieces*.

3 Another form (perhaps of different origin) is *accerso*. In the passive infinitive *arcessĭri* and *accersĭri* sometimes occur.

4 So *agnosco*, to *recognize*. But all other compounds of *nosco*, to *become acquainted with*, have -*nōtum* in the supine, except *dignosco* and *internosco*, which have no supine.

5 The compounds make -*quĭro*, -*quirĕre*, -*quisĭvi*, -*quisĭtum*; as, *exquĭro*.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	Meaning.
sterno,	sternĕre,	strāvī,	strātum,	<i>throw down.</i>
suesco,	suescĕre,	suēvi,	suētum,	<i>be accustomed.</i>
tĕro,	tĕrĕre,	trīvi,	trītum,	<i>rub.</i>

8. Those ending in **-uo** in Present Indicative First Person Singular, which (with the exception of some already mentioned, as, *struo, struxi*, etc.) make **-ui** in Perf. and **-ūtum** in Supine, as,

tribuo,	tribuĕre,	tribui,	tribūtum,	<i>assign.</i>
---------	-----------	---------	-----------	----------------

In this class must be included

solvo,	solvĕre,	solvi,	sōlūtum,	<i>loose, pay.</i>
volvo,	volvĕre,	volvi,	vōlūtum,	<i>roll.</i>

9. Inceptives in **-sco**. These Verbs are formed (a) from Verbs of the Second Conjugation, (b) from Nouns. The former have no Perfects, except those of the Verbs from which they are derived, as, *pallesco* (from *palleo*), *I grow pale*, Perf. *pal-lŭi*; the latter either have no Perfects or form them in the same way in **-ui**, as, *dūresco* (from *durus*), *I grow hard*, Perf. *durŭi*. Few Inceptives have any Supine.

10. The Semi-Deponent, *fīdo*, *trust*, has Perfect *fīsus sum*.

IV. Fourth Conjugation.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.
Regular Form,	-ĭo,	-ĭre,	-ĭvi,	-ĭtum;
as,	<i>audĭo,</i>	<i>audĭre,</i>	<i>audĭvi,</i>	<i>audĭtum.</i>

Exceptions:—

1. Those having regular Perf., but **-tum** in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	Meaning.
ĕo,	ĭre,	ĭvi,	ĭtum,	<i>go.</i>
sĕpĕlio,	sepelire,	sĕpĕlivi,	sĕpultum,	<i>bury.</i>

2. Those having **-i** in Perf., **-tum** in Supine.

compĕrio,	compĕrĭre,	compĕri,	compertum,	<i>ascertain.</i>
rĕpĕrio,	rĕpĕrĭre,	reppĕri,	rĕpertum,	<i>find.</i>
vĕnio,	vĕnĭre,	vĕni,	ventum,	<i>come.</i>

3. Those having **-si** in Perf., **-tum** or **-sum** in Supine.

fulcio,	fulcĭre,	fulsi,	fultum,	<i>prop.</i>
haurio,	haurĭre,	hausi,	haustum,	<i>draw up.</i>
sancio,	sancĭre,	sanxi,	sanctum,	<i>decree.</i>
sentio,	sentĭre,	sensi,	sensum,	<i>feel.</i>
vincio,	vincĭre,	vinxi,	vinctum,	<i>bind.</i>

4. Those having -ui in Perf., -tum in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Sup.	Meaning.
ămicio,	ămiciire,		ămictum,	<i>clothe.</i>
ăpério,	ăpëriire,	ăpëruî,	ăpertum,	<i>uncover, open.</i>
öpério,	öpëriire,	öpëruî,	öpertum,	<i>cover.</i>
sălio, ¹	săliire,	salui,	saltum,	<i>leap.</i>

V. Deponent Verbs.

Deponent Verbs follow the Passive forms of the four Conjugations. It should be remembered that they have the four Participles complete : viz., the Present Active, in -ns ; the Future Active, in -ūrus ; the Perfect Passive (with an Active meaning), in -us ; and the Gerundive, in -ndus. They have also the Gerund, and many of them the Supine.

1. Deponents of the First Conjugation are all regular, making the Infinitive in -āri and Perfect Participle in -ātus.

2. Deponents of the Second Conjugation make the Inf. in -ēri and Perf. Part. in -ītus, except

Pres.	Inf.	Perf. Part.	Meaning.
făteor, ²	fatēri,	fassus,	<i>acknowledge.</i>
mīsēreor,	mīsērēri,	mīsērītus or (mīsertus),	<i>pity.</i>
reor,	rēri,	rātus,	<i>think.</i>

3. Deponents of the Third Conjugation have various forms. A great number end in -scor in the Pres. Indic., e. g. :—

ădīpiscor,	ădīpisci,	ădeptus,	<i>obtain.</i>
commīniscor,	commīnisci,	commentus,	<i>devise.</i>
expergiscor,	expergisci,	experrectus,	<i>awake.</i>
īrascor,	īrasci,	īrātus,	<i>grow angry.</i>
nanciscor,	nancisci,	nactus or nactus,	<i>obtain.</i>
nascor,	nasci,	nātus,	<i>be born.</i>
obliscor,	obliscisci,	oblītus,	<i>forget.</i>
păciscor,	păcisci,	pactus, Perf. pēpīgi,	<i>bargain.</i>
pascor,	pasci,	pastus,	<i>feed.</i>
prōfiscor,	prōfiscisci,	prōfectus,	<i>set out, march.</i>
vescor,	vesci,		<i>eat.</i>
ulciscor,	ulcisci,	ultus,	<i>avenge.</i>

1 The compounds make -sălio, -săliire, -săliūi, -sultum, as, rēsăliō, to leap back.

2 The compounds make -fătēor, -fătēri, -fessus: as, confătēor, to confess.

The others are :—

Pres.	Inf.	Perf. Part.	Meaning.
amplector,	amplecti,	amplexus,	<i>embrace.</i>
fruor,	frui,	fructus and (fructus),	<i>enjoy myself.</i>
fungor,	fungi,	functus,	<i>get quit.</i>
grādior, ¹	grādi,	gressus,	<i>step.</i>
lābor,	lābi,	lapsus,	<i>glide.</i>
lōquor,	lōqui,	lōcūtus,	<i>speak.</i>
mōrīor, ²	mōri,	mortuus,	<i>die.</i>
nītor,	nīti,	nīsus or nixus,	<i>strive.</i>
pātīor,	pāti,	passus,	<i>suffer, allow.</i>
quēror,	quēri,	questus,	<i>complain.</i>
rēvertor, ³	rēverti,	rēversus,	<i>return.</i>
sēquor,	sēqui,	secūtus,	<i>follow.</i>
ūtor,	ūti,	ūsus,	<i>avail oneself.</i>

4. Deponents of the Fourth Conjugation make the Inf. in -īri, and Perf. Part. in -ītus,⁴ except,

assentīor,	assentīri,	assensus,	<i>assent.</i>
expērīor,	expērīri,	expertus,	<i>make trial of.</i>
mētīor,	mētīri,	mensus,	<i>measure.</i>
oppērīor,	oppērīri,	oppertus and opperitus,	<i>wait for.</i>
ordīor,	ordīri,	orsus,	<i>begin.</i>
ōrīor,	ōrīri,	ortus,	<i>rise.</i> 5

PARTICLES.

98. Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions, and Interjections are indeclinable. Some of them are cases of existing words, others cases of lost words, others words with case-terminations different from those in common use in Latin, others mutilated remnants of fuller expressions. Some of the interjections are simple natural ejaculations.

1 The compounds make -grēdīor, -grēdi, -gressus: as, aggrēdior, to attack.

2 The future participle is mōrītūrus. An infin. mōriri and ēmōriri occurs several times in Plautus, once in Terence, and once in Ovid.

3 Properly the passive of *revertō*.

4 Pōtior, *be master*, is of the Fourth Conjugation, but in some forms wavers between the Fourth and the Third. Almost always pōtītur, pōtīmur.

5 Orīor has some forms of the Third Conjugation (like *capior*): Pres. Ind., orēris, orītur, orīmur; Imperf. Subj., orīrer and orērer; Fut. Part., ōrītūrus; Gerundive, oriundus (used as adj.). The compound adorior has in Pres. Ind., adorīris, adorītur.

99. ADVERBS.

1. Many Adverbs contain the stem of some noun, adjective, or other part of speech, e. g. :

a. Those which are formed from adjectives of the first and second declension, and which end (1) in *ē* (perhaps an old ablative termination for *ed*) : as, *plācīdē*, from *plācīdus* ; (2) in *ō* (ablative) : as, *falsō*, from *falsus* ; (3) in *ūm* (accusative) : as, *multūm*, from *multus* ; (4) in *tēr* : as, *dūrītēr* (or *dūrē*), from *dūrus* ; *hūmānītēr* (or *hūmānē*), from *hūmānus*.

b. Those which are formed from adjectives of the third declension, and which end (1) in *tēr* : as, *fortītēr*, from *fortis* ; (2) in *ē* (accusative neuter) : as, *fācīlē*, from *fācīlis* ; (3) in *o* : as, *omnīnō*, from *omnis*.

c. Those which are formed from nouns, pronouns, or prepositions, and which end (1) in *īm* (accusative) : as, *partīm*, from *pars* ; *furtīm*, from *fūr* ; (2) in *tūs* : as, *fundītūs*, from *fundus* ; (3) in *c, ī* (locative), *o* (ablative), *quē, dē, dēm*, etc. : as, *hūc, hērī, eō, ūbīquē, ībīdēm, hinc, indē*, etc.

2. Compound adverbs are made up of two or more words : as, *hōdīē* for *hoc die* ; *tantumōdō* for *tantum modo* ; *quamobrem* for *quam ob rem* ; *magnōpērē* for *magno ōpērē* ; *quamvīs* for *quam vis*.

3. As to meaning, adverbs may be divided into many classes : e. g., (1) Time : as, *nunc, now* ; *crās, to-morrow* ; *jām, already*. (2) Place : as, *hīc, here* ; *hinc, hence* ; *hūc, hither* ; *undē, whence* ; *ībī, there* ; *intūs, within*. (3) Manner : as, *cārē, dearly* ; *ēlēgantēr, elegantly*, in an elegant manner ; *perpērām, wrongly* ; *ītēm, likewise* ; *ūt, how*. (4) Degree : as, *multō, much* ; *ādeō, to such a degree* ; *tantōpērē, so greatly*. (5) Cause : as, *quōd, because* ; *eō, therefore*. (6) Comparison : as, *pārītēr, equally* ; *pōtīūs, rather*. (7) Affirmation : as, *vērō, indeed* ; *sānē, of course* ; *ūtīquē, anyhow, assuredly*. (8) Negation : as, *nōn, not* ; *haud, not*. (9) Interrogation : as, *ūtrūm, whether or no* ? *cūr, why* ? *quōmōdō, how* ?

4. For the Comparison of Adverbs, see § 52.

100. CONJUNCTIONS.

1. In form, Conjunctions are simple : as, *et, āc, ut, aut* ; or compound : as, *atquē, quamvīs, attāmēn*.

2. **Co-ordinative conjunctions** are employed to connect clauses which are on an equality with each other; that is, either primary clauses, or secondary clauses standing in the same relation to the governing clause. Such are *ḗt*, *-quḗ* (always attached to a word), *ā́c*, *atquḗ*, *sḗd*, *vḗl*, *aut*, *nḗc*, *nḗquḗ*.

3. **Subordinative conjunctions** connect a secondary clause to a primary or leading clause. Such are *ū́t*, *sī́*, *cū́m* (*quṓm*, *quū́m*), *nḗ*, *quṓ*, *ū́bī́*, *dū́m*, etc.

4. Some conjunctions are used in co-ordination as well as in subordination.

5. As to **meaning**, conjunctions may be arranged in thirteen classes.

I. Co-ordinative.

1. **Copulative**: as, *et*, *ā́c*, *atque*, *-que*, *and*; and a few more.

2. **Adversative**: as, *sed*, *but*; *autem*, *but*, *however*; *vērṓ*, *truly*, *but*; *vērū́m*, *but*; *at*, *but*; *atqui*, *and yet*; *tā́men*, *yet*; *cḗtērum*, *on the other hand*; and the like.

3. **Alternative**: as, *aut*, *either*, *or*; *vel*, *either*, *or*; *sī́ve*, *whether*; *nḗc*, *nḗque*, *neither*, *nor*; and the interrogatives, *ū́trum*, *an*, *whether or no*.

4. **Causal**: as, *nam*, *ḗnim*, *namque*, *ḗtḗnim*, *for*; *enim-vērṓ*, *for in truth*, or adversative, *but in truth*.

5. **Illative**: as, *ī́gitur*, *ergṓ*, *ī́tā́que*, *therefore*.

6. **Comparative**: as, *ut*, *sī́cut*, *as*; *vḗlut*, *as if*; *quā́sī*, *as if*; *quam*, *than*, *as*; *utpṓte*, *as being*.

II. Subordinative.

1. **Final**, expressing purpose or result: as, *ut*, *that*, *so that*; *ne*, *lest*, i. e., *that not*; *quin*, *that not*, *but that*; *quo minus*, *in order that not*; *nḗve* or *neu*, *and in order that not*.

2. **Conditional**, expressing a condition or contingency: as, *sī́*, *if*; *sin*, *if however*, *but if*; *nī́si*, *unless*, *if not*; *dū́m*, *provided that*, etc.

3. **Concessive**, expressing a concession or admission: as, *ut*, *although*; *etsi*, *tā́metsi*, *quamquam*, *quamvis*, *although*; also *cū́m*, *although*; and a few others.

4. **Temporal**, expressing time: as, *cū́m*, *when*; *sī́mū́l ac*,

as soon as; ut, when, as soon as; dum, whilst; donec, until; ubi, when, etc.

5. Causal, expressing cause, reason, or ground: *as, quod, quia, quoniam, cum, because; quippe, as, because, inasmuch as; quando, since (because).*

6. Relative, expressing a reference to something going before: *as, unde, whence, for which reason; quare, on which account, wherefore, why; quamobrem, wherefore.*

7. Comparative, expressing comparison or likeness: *as, ut, as; sicut, just as; velut, as if; quasi, as if.*

Note 1.—Many words in the above lists are used in more than one sense and one construction.

Note 2.—Many pronominal particles are Adverbs when interrogative, but Conjunctions when relative.

101. PREPOSITIONS.

Some prepositions govern the accusative case, some the ablative, and a few both the accusative and the ablative. (See SYNTAX, § 131; § 186.)

I. Prepositions in Composition.

Prepositions are often compounded with other words, and in many cases suffer a modification of their final letter, according to the principles of euphony.

A is used before the consonants *m* and *v*: *as, a-moveo, a-veho*; better also in *a-fui, a-fore*, from *absum*.

Ab is used before vowels and most consonants: *as, ab-ire, ab-duco, ab-icio (ab-jicio), ab-ripio, ab-latus, ab-nego, etc.*

Ab is changed into *au* in *au-fero, au-fugio*.

Abs is used before *c, q,* and *t*: *as, abs-condo, abs-cisio, abs-que, abs-tineo.*

Ab before *p* becomes *as*: *as, as-porto.*

Ad is found before vowels, *h,* and the consonants *d, j, m,* and *v*: *as, ad-amo, ad-hibeo, ad-duco, ad-icio (ad-jicio), ad-moneo, ad-veho.* It is often assimilated to the other consonants: *as, al-loquor* or *ad-loquor, af-fero* or *ad-fero, accolo* or *ad-colo.* Before *q, d* may become *c*: *as, ac-qui-ro* or *ad-qui-ro.* Before *gn,* or before *s* followed by a consonant, the *d* is often omitted: *as, a-gnosco* or *ad-gnosco, a-spicio* or *ad-spicio.*

Cum is represented by **com**, **con**, or **co**.

Com is often used before **p**, **b**, **m**: as, **com-paro**, **com-bibo**, **com-munio**. Before **l**, **n**, **r**, the **m** may be assimilated: as, **col-loquor** or **con-loquor**, **con-niveo** or **coniveo**, **cor-ripio** or **conripio**.

Con is used before the other consonants not mentioned under **com**: as, **con-fero**, **con-tego**, **con-sido**.

Co is used before vowels, and **h**: as, **co-eo**, **co-alesco**, **co-haereo**; but the **m** remains in some words: as, **comedo**, **comes**, **comitor**, and **comitium**.

Ex is used before vowels, **h**, and the consonants **c**, **p**, **q**, **s**, and **t**: as, **ex-oro**, **ex-cipio**, **ex-perior**, **ex-qui-ro**, **ex-solvo**, **ex-tendo**. Before **f** the **x** is assimilated, or sometimes becomes **c**: as, **ef-fero**, or, rarely, **ec-fero**, for **ex-fero**. It is omitted before other consonants: as, **e-ripio**, **e-volvo**.

Note.—But **e**, and not **ex**, is used for the most part in **e-scendo** and **e-poto**; while, on the contrary, **ex** is used in **ex-lex**, lawless.

In (both the preposition and the inseparable negative particle) may become **im** before the labials **p**, **b**, **m**: as, **im-pono** for **in-pono**, **im-buo** for **in-buo**, **im-mitto** for **in-mitto**. Before **l** and **r** the **n** is often assimilated: as, **il-ludo** or **in-ludo**, **ir-rideo** for **in-rideo**. Before **gn** it is dropped: as, **i-gnoro** for **in-gnoro**. In other cases it remains: as, **in-utilis**, **in-eptus**, **in-fero**.

Inter remains unchanged, except in **intellego** for **inter-lego**, and its derivatives.

Ob assimilates its final letter to **c**, **f**, **g**, and **p**, and generally remains unchanged before others: as, **oc-curro** for **ob-curro**, **of-fero** for **ob-fero**, **og-gero** for **ob-gero**, **op-primo** for **ob-primo** (**prēmo**). Before **s** and **t** it is frequently written **op**; it becomes **obs** in **obsolesco**; and is written **ob**, sometimes **om**, before **m**. It drops **b** in **omitto**, **operio**, **ostendo** (for **obs-tendo**).

Per assimilates its final letter only in **pel-licio** for **per-licio**, and words derived from it. In **pējero** for **per-juro**, the **r** is omitted.

Pro generally remains unaltered; but we have **prod** when the second part of the compound begins with a vowel: as, **prod-erat**. The **r** and the **o** are sometimes transposed: as

in **por-rigo** for **pro-rigo** (i. e., **rego**), and **portendo** for **protendo**.

Sub assimilates its final letter before **c, f, g**, generally before **p**, and sometimes before **m** and **r**: as, **suc-curro** for **sub-curro**, **sug-gero** for **sub-gero**. Before other consonants it remains unchanged, except that we find **sus** (for **subs**) in **suscipio**, **suscito**, **suspendo**, **sustineo**, **sustento**, **sustuli**, and **su** in **suspicio**, **suspiro**.

Trans is often shortened into **tran** or **tra**: as, **tra-duco** for **transduco**.

Note.—Usage varies greatly in compounds, in regard to the retention of the final consonant of the preposition and its assimilation or other modification.

II. Inseparable Particles.

There are certain quasi-prepositions which are often found in composition. These are **amb-**, **dis-** or **di-**, **re-** and **se**.

1. **Amb**, *around; on both sides*: as, **amb-io**, *to go round*. The **b** is omitted when **p** follows: as, **am-plector** for **amb-plector**. Before gutturals and **f**, the **b** is omitted, and the **m** changed into **n**: as, **an-ceps**.

2. **Dis** or **di**, *in different directions, in twain*: as, **dis-pōno**, *to place in different positions*. Before a vowel or **h**, **dis** becomes **dīr-**: as, **dīr-īmo**; before **f** it becomes **dif-**: as, **dif-fēro**. It remains **dis** before **c, p, q, s**: as, **dis-cūtio**; before other consonants, and **sp, sc**, and **st**, it becomes **di**.

3. **Re** or **red**, *back; again*: as, **rē-tīneo**, *to keep back*; **rēd-īmo**, *to buy back*. Sometimes the **d** is assimilated or falls off, the vowel **e** being lengthened to compensate.

4. **Sē** or **sēd**, *apart*, remains the same: as, **sē-pāro**, **sē-dūco**, **sēd-ītio**.

102. INTERJECTIONS.

1. **Interjections** may be divided into two classes, according as they are imitations of sounds, or abbreviated sentences or mutilated words.

1. Imitations of sounds.

ā or **āh** } in warning or sorrow. Comp. **ā**; Eng., *ah!*
 or **hā** } Germ., *ach!*
āhā in reproof or denial, or laughter.

- ējā** } in encouragement. Comp. *eia*; Engl., *hey*.
hēiā }
vāh or **vā** in surprise or indignation. Comp. *ōā*.
ō various. Comp. *ō*, *ō*; Engl., *oh*!
īō a shout in excitement. Comp. *īō* and *ioū* or *ioū*; Engl., *yoho*!
ēhō or **ōho** a cry of distress. Comp. Engl. *Ho*! In Terence sometimes with *dum* appended.
prō or **proh** in surprise or indignation; especially in phrases, *pro Di immortales*, etc. Perhaps this is not imitative of a natural sound, but is a word.
euoe for *εὐοῖ*: a cry in Bacchic rites.
au in fear and warning.
fū or **fuī** expression of disgust. Comp. *φεῦ* (?); Engl., *fie*! *faw*! *foh*! Germ., *pfui*.
phy in impatience at unnecessary explanation. Ter. *Ad.*, 412. Probably same as last. Comp. Engl., *pooh*.
huī various. Perhaps a whistle, which is written in Engl., *whew*.
bābāe } in wonder and delight: a quivering of the lips.
pāpae } Perhaps imitative of Greek *βαβαί*, *πόποι*, *παπαί*.
hahahae laughing. Comp. *ā ā* or *ā ā*, Engl., *Haha*.
vae in grief and anger. Represents a wail. Comp. *οἰαί*, in Alexandrine and later writers, perhaps imitation of the Latin; Germ., *weh*; Engl., *woe*. Compare also *vah* and the verb *vāgīre*.
ōhē in annoyance, especially when a person is *sated*; probably between a groan and a grunt. Comp. Engl., *ugh*.
hei or **ei** in grief. It represents a sigh. Comp. *ἔ ἔ* or *ἔ ἔ* or *ἔή*, and perhaps *αἰαί*; Engl., *heigh*.
heu, **ēheu** *alas*!
ēhem or } the sound of clearing the throat. Comp. Engl., *hem*,
hem or **em** } *ahem*. In Plautus *em* is often found in MSS. for *en*.
st to command silence. The corresponding sound in English, *hist*, is used to attract attention; and *sh*, *hush*, to command silence.
attat or **atat** or in surprise, vexation, fear, etc.; smacking of
rarely **attatae** the tongue against the teeth. Comp. *ἄτταται*, *ἄτταταται*, *ὀτοτοῖ*, *ὀτοτοτοῖ*; Engl., *tut*, *tut*.

heus	a noise to attract attention ; a combined whistle and hiss. Comp. Engl. <i>whisht</i> ! and perhaps Germ. <i>heisa</i> (= Engl., <i>huzza</i>).
bombax	apparently from βομβᾶς : expression of wonder.
euax	a cry of joy. Comp. <i>εὐα</i> , <i>εὐάξεν</i> , and perhaps Germ., <i>juchhe</i> .
taxtax	the sound of blows. Comp. Engl. <i>thwack</i> .
tărătantără	(Ennius), the sound of a trumpet.

2. Mutilated words or abbreviated sentences. The following are probably such :

(a) Latin :

ēn	in Plaut. usually <i>em</i> , <i>lo</i> !
ecce	<i>lo here</i> ! The <i>ce</i> is perhaps the demonstrative particle. In the comic poets it is frequently combined with the accusative (as if it were equivalent to <i>see</i>) of the pronouns <i>is</i> and <i>ille</i> : <i>eccum</i> , <i>eccam</i> , <i>eccos</i> , <i>eccas</i> , <i>ecca</i> ; <i>eccillum</i> , <i>eccillam</i> , <i>eccillum</i> ; once also <i>eccistam</i> .
eccēre	used similarly to English <i>there</i> !
mehercūles , mehercūle ,	} abbreviations of <i>me Hercules</i>
mehercle , hercūles , hercle ,	
mēdīus fīdīus	for <i>me deus Fidius</i> <i>juvet</i> .
ēcastor	perhaps for <i>en Castor</i> .
pol	for <i>Pollux</i> .
ēdēpol	for <i>me, dee Pollux, juves</i> ; or the <i>e</i> may be an old interjection.
sōdes	<i>prythee</i> ; <i>if you will be so good</i> .

(b) Borrowed from the Greek :

ăpăge	<i>off ! away !</i> for ἀπαγε.
eu	<i>well done !</i> for εὖ.
euge	<i>well done ! bravo !</i> for εὖγε.
eugēpae	originally for εὖγε παῖ ?

2. Several nouns and verbs are used in exclamation or invocation, like interjections. Such are :

1. *pax*, *hush* ! *mălum*, *plague* ! *the mischief* ! *nēfas*, *infandum*, *monstrous* ! *indignum*, *horrendum*, *mīserum*, *mīserābile*, *turpe*. The vocative *macte*, plur. *macti*, is used with an ablative or genitive : as, *macte esto virtūte*, *go on and prosper*. It is, perhaps, the participle of a lost

verb, *magĕre*. The interrogative pronoun, *quid*, *what!* is sometimes used in exclamation.

2. *quaeso*, *prithē!* *prĕcor*, *ōro*, *obsĕcro*, *pray*; *āmābo*, *do please*; *sīs* (*si vis*), *sultis* (*si vultis*), *please*; *āge*, *āgĕte*, *āgĕsis*, *āgĕdum*, *āgĭtĕdum*, *come now*; *cĕdo* (plur. *cette*), *here! give me*: so, *sōdes*.

3. Less properly it has been said that certain adverbs may sometimes be regarded as interjections: as, *prŏfectō*, *nē* (*truly*), *cītō*, *bĕnĕ*, *bellĕ*.

THE FORMATION OF WORDS.

103. Words are formed directly from roots, or from other words.

1. Root syllables may be **reduplicated**: as, *mur-mur*, *tin-tin-nare*; *bĭ-be-re*, *sŭ-sur-rus*, *cŭ-cŭ-lus*; (compare *papa*;) and they may undergo **internal change**, such as the lengthening of their vowel, or the insertion of a consonant, or other modifications: as, *vŏc-is* (nom. *vŏx*), root *vŏc* (as in *vŏcare*); stem *crŭd-ŏ-* (nom. *crŭdus*), root *cru-*; *flamm-a*, root *flag*.

2. Almost all words have some **suffix**.

3. The **suffixes of inflection** are used to form the cases and numbers of nouns, and the persons, moods, tenses, voices, etc., of verbs.

4. **Stem-suffixes** form the distinguishing marks of the declensions of nouns and the conjugations of verbs.

5. **Derivative suffixes** are additions placed between the root and the stem-suffix, or, when there is no stem-suffix, between the root and the suffix of inflection. They may originally have been words themselves, but are now merely significant terminations, modifying the meaning of the nouns to which they are annexed. The same **suffix** does not always express the same modification, and different suffixes sometimes seem to have the same effect. Sometimes the sense of the suffix has been obscured, and a further suffix is added to express what had already been denoted: thus, *puella* is a diminution of *puĕra*, but, having supplanted *puĕra* as the ordinary term for *girl*, a new diminutive, *puellŭla*, was formed for a *little* or *very young girl*.

6. The long vowel, often found in the same part of different derivatives, is sometimes part of the suffix, sometimes comes from contraction of the stem-suffix with a short initial vowel of the suffix, and is sometimes due to a false analogy.

104. SIGNIFICANT ENDINGS.

I. Nouns derived from Verbs.

1. The termination or signifies the **action** or **condition**: as, *āmor*, *love*, from *āmō*; *tĭmor*, *fear*, from *tĭmeo*.

2. **Note.**--But many nouns in *-or* seem to be simple or primary: as, *hŏnor*, *arbor*, *lābor*.

3. The termination **-tör**, or **-sör**, signifies the **doer** or **agent**. Such words are formed from the stem of the supine : as,

vinco, victum, to conquer, victor, a conqueror.

curro, cursum, to run, cursor, a runner.

4. **Note.**—There is a fem. termination in **-trix**, corresponding to the masc. **-tor** : as, **victor, fem. victrix** ; **vēnātor, vēnātrix**.

Rem.—The terminations **-a, -o, and -ber** sometimes denote an **agent** : as, **scrīb-a, prae-c-o (praevo-co), ěd-o, fā-ber**.

5. The terminations **-io, -tio, -tus, or -sus, and -tūra**, denote **action** or make **verbal abstracts** : as,

obsīdeo, to besiege, obsīdio, a siege (i. e., *a besieging*).

lĕgo, to enroll, lĕgio, a legion.

āgo, (Sup.) actum, to do, actio, a doing.

mōveo, mōtum, to move, mōtio, a moving.

verto, versum, to turn, versio, a turning.

āgo, actum, to do, actus, a doing.

mōveo, mōtum, to move, mōtus, a moving.

cāno, cantum, to sing, cantus, a singing.

verto, versum, to turn, versus, a turning.

pingo, pictum, to paint, pictūra, a picture.

cōlo, cultum, to till, cultūra, a tilling.

6. **Note.**—A few words in **-igo** denote **action** or **condition** : as, **vertīgo, a turning, from verto**.

7. The terminations **-men** and **-mentum** usually denote the **means** or **thing performing the action, or its result** : as,

lūceo, to light, lūmen, light.

tĕgo, to cover, tegmen, a covering.

flūo, to flow, flūmen, a river.

impĕdio, to hinder, impĕdimentum, a hindrance.

orno, to adorn, ornāmentum, an ornament.

8. **Note 1.**—**-men** is sometimes used **passively** : as, **agmen** (a thing led), *an army on march* ; **gestāmen, a thing carried**.

9. **Note 2.**—In some words of this class the stem is extended by a vowel : as, **rĕgĭmen, from rego**.

10. The instrument is also expressed by **-cŭlum (-clum)** and **-bŭlum**, which become **-crum** and **-brum** when **l** precedes : as,

gŭbernō, to steer, gŭbernācŭlum, a rudder.

vĕho, to carry, vĕhĭcŭlum, a carriage, cart.

fēro, to bear, fercŭlum, a tray.

sēpēlio, to bury, sēpulcrum, a sepulchre.

sīmŭlo, to imitate, sīmŭlācrum, an image.

pasco, to feed, pābŭlum, fodder.

vēnor, to hunt, vēnābŭlum, a hunting-spear.

flo, blow, flābrum, a blast.

11. Note 1.—*-bŭlum* sometimes denotes place: as, *stābŭlum, a stall* (standing-place), from *sto, to stand*.

12. Note 2.—When the stem of the verb ends in *c* or *g*, the termination is *-ulum*: as, *jacŭlum (jac-io)*; *cingŭlum (cingo)*.

13. Note 3.—*-trum* also denotes the instrument. When the stem of the verb ends in *d*, *s* is substituted for *d*: as,

āro, to plough, ārātrum, a plough.

rādo, to scrape, rastrum, a hoe.

Rem.—Masculines and feminines occur: as, *cap-ŭlus, tēg-ŭla, scā-lae*.

14. The termination *-ium* denotes a state, or an act, or the result of an action: as,

gaudeo, to rejoice, gaudium, joy.

aedīfīco, to build, aedīfīcium, a building.

ōdī, I hate, ōdium, hatred.

15. The termination *-ies* denotes the thing made, or the result of the action: as,

fācio, to make, fāciēs, figure, appearance.

congēro, to heap up, congēriēs, a heap.

16. Note.—We sometimes meet other terminations: as, *cŭpīdo* (from *cŭpio*); *quērēla* (from *quēror*); *erro* (from the verb *erro*), and a few more.

II. Nouns derived from Nouns.

17. The terminations *-al* and *-ar* denote that which has or that which pertains to something: as,

ānīma, breath, ānīmal, a living creature (having breath).

calx, the heel, calcar, a spur.

18. The termination *-ārius* denotes one engaged in a trade: as,

aes, copper, aerārius, a coppersmith.

argentum, silver, argentārius, a silversmith; a banker.

19. *-ārium* denotes the place where things are kept: as,

āvis, a bird, *āviārium*, an aviary, or place where birds are kept.

aes, money, *aerārium*, a treasury.

20. *-ātus* and *-ūra*, appended to the names of officers, indicate the office : as,

consul, *consulātus*, the consulship.

praetor, *praetūra*, the praetorship.

21. *-īna* denotes an employment, or the place (as of a business), or indicates the female : as,

mēdīcus, a physician, *mēdicīna*, the healing art.

ōpīfex, a workman, *officīna* (*ōpīficīna*), a workshop.

piscis, fish, *piscīna*, a fish-pond.

rēx, a king, *rēgīna*, a queen.

22. Note.—*-cīnium* denotes action or event : as, *latrō-cīnium*.

23. *-ium* indicates occupation, state, assemblage, etc.: as,

sācerdos, a priest, *sācerdōtium*, priesthood.

exsul, an exile, *exsīlium*, exile.

collēga, a colleague, *collēgium*, an association.

24. *-ētum* appended to the names of trees, shrubs, or plants denotes the place where they grow, or a collection of them, and *-īle* added to names of animals denotes the place of their abode : as,

quercus, an oak, *quercētum*, an oak-grove.

vīnea, a vine, *vīnētum*, a vineyard.

ōvis, a sheep, *ōvīle*, a sheepfold.

bōs (*bōvis*), an ox, *bōvīle*, an ox-stall.

25. There is a class of derivatives called **Diminutives**, which express smallness : hence also sometimes endearment, contempt, pity, or depreciation. Such are of the same gender as their primitives. They are formed by adding

1. *-ūlus*, *-ūla*, *-ūlum*, with nouns of the First and Second Declensions, and sometimes other nouns, especially when the clipt stem ends in *c*, *g*, *t*, or *d* : as,

hortus, a garden, *hortūlus*, a little garden.

rīvus, a brook, *rīvūlus*, a rill.

saxum, a rock, *saxūlum* (once in Cicero), a little rock.

rādx, a root, *rādīcūla*, a little root.

rēx, a king, *rēgūlus*, a kingling, a petty king.

2. -cūlus, -cūla, -cūlum, with nouns of the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions : as,

frāter, a brother, *frātercūlus*, a little brother.

versus, a verse, *versīcūlus*, a short verse.

nāvis, a ship, *nāvīcūla*, a little ship.

corpus, a body, *corpuscūlum*, a particle.

26. Note 1.—When the suffix follows a vowel, the *u* becomes *o* : as,

fīlius, a son, *fīliōlus*, a little son.

glādius, a sword, *glādiōlus*, a small sword.

nēgōtium, business, *nēgōtiōlum*, a bit of business.

27. Note 2.—A contraction is sometimes formed (especially when the clipt stem of the primitive ends in *l*, *n*, or *r*), and the termination is changed into -ellus, -ella, or -ellum; -illus, -a, -um; or -ullus, -ulla : as,

ōcūlus, an eye, *ōcellus*, a dear little eye.

cātūlus, a puppy, *cātellus*, a little puppy.

pōpūlus, the people, *pōpellus*, the rabble.

lāpis, a stone, *lāpillus*, a pebble.

hōmo, a man, *hōmullus*, a manikin.

28. Note 3.—Nouns ending in -ō (-ōnis or -īnis), change -on or -in into -un : as, *homo*, *homuncūlus* (or *homuncio*), a little man ; *sermo*, *sermuncūlus*. So also *āvus*, *āvuncūlus*.

29. Note 4.—Adjectives also have diminutives : as, *mīser*, *mīsellus* ; *frīgīdus*, *frīgīdūlus* ; *mēlius*-cūlus, a little better.

30. Note 5.—Many ordinary words in the Romance languages are formed from Latin Diminutives : as, from *luscīni-ōla*, Italian *usignuolo*, French *rossignol*, nightingale ; *agn-ellus*, French *agneau*, lamb.

31. Female names are often made from the corresponding masculine forms by the termination -a : as,

cervus, a stag, *cerva*, a doe.

fīlius, a son, *fīlia*, a daughter.

māgister, a master, *māgistra*, a mistress.

cliens, a client, *clienta*, a female client.

32. Some nouns in -io denote persons : as,

restis, a rope, *restio*, a rope-maker.

pellis, a skin, *felt*, *pellio*, a furrier.

33. Some nouns ending in **-tus**, and denoting **quality** or **condition**, are formed from generic names : as,

vir, a man, **virtūs**, virtue (manliness).

jūvenis, a youth, **jūventūs**, youth.

servus, a slave, **servītūs**, slavery.

34. From personal names (masc.) the Greeks formed a class of nouns called **Patronymics**, indicating descent : as, **Priāmīdēs**, a son of Priam ; **Tantālīs**, a daughter of Tantalus ; **Aenēādēs**, a descendant of Aeneas. These words are most commonly employed in poetry, occasionally in prose. Thus,

1. Masculine Patronymics are formed in

a. **-īdēs** : as, **Priāmus**, **Priāmīdēs**, a son of Priam.

b. **-īdēs**, from substantives in **-eus** and **-clēs** : as, **Atreus** ; **Atrīdēs**, a son of Atreus ; **Hērāclēs** ; **Hērāclīdēs**, a descendant of Heracles.

c. **-ādēs** : as, **Aenēādēs**, a descendant of Aenēas.

d. **-iādēs** : as, **Thestiādēs**, a descendant of Thestius ; **Abantiādēs**, a son of Abas.

2. Feminine Patronymics end in

a. **-īs**, **-īdis** : as, **Tantālīs**, a daughter of Tantalus.

b. **-ēīs**, **-ēīdis** : as, **Nērēīs**, a daughter of Nereus.

c. **-ias**, **-iādis** : as, **Thestias**, a daughter of Thestius.

d. **-īnē** : as, **Neptūnīnē**, a daughter of Neptune.

e. **-ōnē** : as, **Acrīsiōnē**, a daughter of Acrisius.

III. Nouns derived from Adjectives.

35. Nouns expressing a **quality** or **state** are formed from adjectives, with the following terminations :

1. **-ia**, **-tia**, and **-tas** : as,

audax, bold, **audācia**, daring.

mollis, soft, **mollītia**, softness.

moestus, sad, **moestītia**, sadness.

bōnus, good, **bōnitas**, goodness.

2. **-tūdo** and **mōnia** : as,

altus, high, **altītūdo**, height (highness).

sanctus, holy, **sanctimōnia**, sanctity (holiness).

IV. Adjectives formed from Verbs.

36. Adjectives are formed from verbs with the following terminations :

1. -*du* or -*idu*, denoting quality or condition : as,
rāpio, to hurry along, *rāpīdu*, swift.
tīmeo, to fear, *tīmīdu*, fearful.
2. -*lis*, -*ilis*, and -*bilis*, denoting capability or possibility, or belonging to, or sometimes actively, power : as,
fācio, to make, to do, *fācīlis*, able to be done (easy).
dōceo, to teach, *dōcīlis*, teachable.
āmo, to love, *āmābīlis*, lovable.
terreo, to frighten, *terrībīlis*, creating terror.
3. -*ax*, denoting an inclination or propensity, and usually in a bad sense : as,
audeo, to dare, *audax*, daring (fool-hardy).
lōquor, to talk, *lōquax*, talkative.
4. -*bundus*, -*cundus*, denoting action, capacity, or state, and -*ulus*, repeated action, are more rare : as,
mōrior, to die, *mōribundus*, in the agony of death.
īrascor, to be angry, *īrācundus*, angry.
fāri, to speak, *fācundus*, of ready speech.
garrio, to chatter, *garrūlus*, babbling.

V. Adjectives formed from Nouns.

37. Adjectives ending in -*eus* denote the material of which a thing is made, and sometimes resemblance : as,

- lignum*, wood, *ligneus*, wooden.
aurum, gold, *aureus*, golden.
rōsa, a rose, *rōseus*, like a rose (rosy).

38. Note 1.—To names of trees, and of materials, -*neus* or -*nus* is usually added : as,

- pōpūlus*, a poplar, *pōpulneus* (or -*nus*, once in Plautus),
 made of poplar.
ēbur, ivory, *ēburneus*, made of ivory.

39. Note 2.—But -*nus* sometimes signifies belonging to, or arising from : as,

păter, a father, păternus, belonging to one's father.
ver, spring, vernus, vernal.

40. -ăceus, -îcius, and -îtius indicate material or relation, or property: as,

argilla, clay, argillăceus, made of clay (clayey).

lăter, a brick, lătěrîcius, made of brick.

tribūnus, a tribune, tribūnîcius, relating (or belonging) to a tribune.

41. -îcus or îcus, -îlis, and -ălis or âris denote belonging or relating to: as,

bellum, war, bellicus, relating to war.

ămor (ămo), love, ămîcus, friendly.

hostis, an enemy, hostîlis, hostile.

rēx, a king, rēgălis, regal, of a king.

pōpūlus, the people, pōpūlăris, relating to the people.

42. -ius, înus, ânus, and -ărius denote belonging or pertaining to; -ius being usually added to the names of persons; -înus to the names of animals; -ănus and -ărius are, more particularly, local: as,

păter, a father, pătrius, of or pertaining to a father.

ěquus, a horse, ěquînus, of or pertaining to a horse.

urbs, a city, urbănus, of or pertaining to a city.

ăger, a field, agrărius, of or pertaining to a field.

43. -ōsus and -lentus mean full of, abounding in: as,

pěrîcŭlum, danger, pěrîcŭlōsus, dangerous.

vîs, violence, viōlentus, violent (full of violence).

44. -ătus, -îtus, and -ūtus mean supplied with: as,

barba, a beard, barbătus, having a beard.

auris, an ear, aurîtus, having ears.

cornu, a horn, cornŭtus, having horns.

45. Many adjectives are formed from proper names by the suffix -ănus or -iănus, or -înus or -îcus added to personal names: as,

Sulla, Sullănus, of or pertaining to Sulla.

Cîcěro, Cîcěrōniănus, of Cicero, Ciceronian.

Jūgurtha, Jūgurthīnus, of or pertaining to Jugurtha.
Gallus, Gallīcus, of or pertaining to Gaul, Gallic.

46. **Note.**—In Greek words the usual terminations are -īcus, -ēus, or -īus: as,

Sōcrātēs, Sōcrātīcus, Socratic.
Sōphōclēs, Sōphōclēus, Sophoclean.
Aristōtēlēs, Aristōtēlīus, Aristotelian.

47. The termination -ēus is poetical: as,

Hērcūles, Hērcūlēus, Herculean.
Rōmūlus, Rōmūlēus, Romulean. Horace has **Rōmūla gens.** We find also **dōmus Augusta; portus Trajānus.**

48. Proper adjectives are formed from names of places by the terminations (a) -ensis (cf. **fōrensis, castrensis**, etc.), and a few in -iensis, from words in -o, and from some in -a, -ae, -um; (b) -īnus, from words in -ia and -ium; (c) -ānus from words in -a and -ae, and sometimes -um and -i: as,

Cannae, Cannensis, of or pertaining to Cannae.
Carthāgo, Carthāgīniensis, of Carthage, Carthaginian.
Amēria, Amērīnus, of Amēria, Amerian.
Alba, Albānus, of Alba, Alban.
Thēbae, Thēbānus, of Thebes, Theban.
Tuscūlum, Tuscūlānus, of Tuscūlum, Tusculan.
Fundi, Fundānus, of or pertaining to Fundi.

49. The suffix -as, gen. -ātis, belongs to names of places in -na, -nae, and -no, but specially to those in -num: as,

Cāpēna, Cāpēnās, of or pertaining to Capēna.
Fīdēnae, Fīdēnās, of or pertaining to Fīdēnae.
Arpīnum, Arpīnās, of or pertaining to Arpīnum.

50. **Note.**—These adjectives are often used as nouns indicating the inhabitants; as, **Duo Arpīnātes, the two men of Arpīnum.**

51. The suffixes -īus, -aeus, ēnus, belong to adjectives derived from the names of Greek places: as, **Cōrīnthus, Lārissaeus, Cŷzīcēnus.**

52. Adjectives are also derived from Particles; some from Adverbs: as, **crastīnus** from **crās**, **hōdiernus** from **hōdie**; some from Prepositions: as, **antīquus** from **ante**.

105. FORMATION OF VERBS.

1. Verbs derived from other Verbs are called **Verbals**. Such are the Inchoatives, Imitatives, Frequentatives, Diminutives, and Desideratives (§ 88).

2. *a.* Verbs derived from Nouns or Adjectives are called **Denominatives**. Such are most verbs in the First and Fourth Conjugations, the greater number being transitive: as, *laud-āre*, to praise; *mīlīt-āre*, to serve in war; *libēr-āre*, to set free; *laet-āri*, to rejoice; *fīn-īre*, to end; *vest-īre*, to clothe; *moll-īre*, to soften; *larg-īri*, to bestow.

b. The suffixes -ūl, -ōl, -cīn, -īt, -īg (= āg), ĭc, occur in the First Conjugation: as, *grāt-ūl-āri*, *vi-ōl-āre*, *sermō-cīn-āre*, *dēbīl-īt-āre*, *nāv-īg-āre*, *mīt-īg-āre*, *claud-īc-āre*, *commūn-īc-āre*. So *jūr-g-āre* for *jūr-īg-āre*, *pūr-g-āre* for *pūr-īg-āre*.

c. Most verbs in the Second Conjugation are from Nouns, a few from Adjectives; the greater number being intransitive: as, *call-ēre*, *lūc-ēre*, *flōr-ēre*, *flāv-ēre*.

d. A few U-verbs in the Third Conjugation are Denominatives: as, *ācu-ēre*, *mētu-ēre*, *mīnu-ēre*, *trību-ēre*.

Note.—Some Verbs called Denominative may be really Primitive.

3. Some Roots have a Transitive and an Intransitive Verb corresponding to each other: as, *fūgāre*, to put to flight, *fūgēre*, to fly; *jācēre*, to throw, *jācēre*, to lie; *pendēre*, to suspend, *pendēre*, to hang.

106. COMPOUND WORDS.

1. Two or more words may be so joined as to form one word.

2. Sometimes the words are so joined that one actually agrees with the other: as, *rēs-pūblica*; *jūs-jūrandum*; *trēs-vīri*: or that the second governs the first: as, *sēnātūs-consultum*; *vēri-simīlis*. Such compounds can be severed, thus: *resque publica*; *sēnātūsve consulta*; so that they are not proper compounds in the strictest sense of the word. But generally one part or both lose the form of words: as, *magnānimus*; *Trojūgēna*; *artifex*.

3. Some compounds indicate simple addition or association of their parts: as, *duōdecim*, twelve (*duo* + *decem*); *suōvētaurīlia* (plur.), a sacrifice of a pig, sheep, and bull (*su-* + *ōvi-* + *tauro-*).

4. In some compounds the first part has the nature of a case governed by the second part: as (Nouns), *agrī-cōla* (*qui agrum colit*), a farmer;

vītī-sātor (*vitium sātor*), a vine-planter; (Adjectives) **armī-ger** (*arma gerens*), bearing arms (as noun, an armor-bearer); **mellī-fluus**, flowing with honey; (Verbs) **bellī-gērāre** = *bellum gērere*; **aequī-pārāre** = *aequum pārāre*; **cālē-fācēre** = *cālere fācēre*.

5. In some compound nouns the first part is an adjective or numeral: as, **plēnī-lūni-um**, the full moon; **tri-ennium**, a space of three years.

6. The first part sometimes modifies the second adverbially: as, (Nouns) **prin-ceps** (*primus and cāpio, one who takes the first place*); **īn-ēdia** (*in, negative, and ēdo, to eat*), fasting; (Adjectives) **omnī-pōtens**, powerful in all things; **bī-fīdus** (*bis and findo*), cleft in two; **bēnē-vōlus**, wishing well; **sēmī-vivus**, half alive; **septēm-gēmīnus**, seven-fold; **im-mēmor**, unmindful; (Verbs) **bēnē-dicēre**; **nē-quire**; **ad-dūcere**; **ef-fēmīnāre** (*ē and fēmīna*); **ē-rūdīre** (*ē and rūdīs*).

7. Adjectives are sometimes so compounded as to imply "having" in some qualified manner, or "not having:" as, **magn-ānīmus**; **centī-ceps** (*centum and cāput*), having a hundred heads; **ā-mens, dē-mens**, not having one's right mind; **im-bellis**, not warlike; **ālī-pēs**, wing-footed; **ignī-cōmus**, with fiery hair; **con-cors**; **in-numerus**; **prae-ceps** (*cāput*) head-foremost.

8. Most compound verbs are made up of a preposition and a verb. In composition, the stem-vowel of the simple verb is often changed:

1. **a** (short) is changed before a single consonant into **i** or **e**; **a** before two consonants into **e** or **u**: as, **fācio, rēficio**; **cādo, occīdo**; **grādiōr, rēgrēdiōr**; **scando, descendo**; **calco, inculco**. But **pērāgo** and others retain **a**.

2. **e** (short) before a single consonant becomes **i**: as, **tēneo, rētīneo**. But **rēlēgo** and others retain **e**.

3. **ae** is changed into **ī**: **au** into **ō** or **ū**, and in one case **ē**: as, **caedo, occīdo**; **quaero, requīro**; **plaudo, explōdo**; **claudio, exclūdo**; **audio, obēdio**.

9. Similar changes of vowel take place in other compounds: as, **āmīcus, īnīmīcus**; **barba, imberbis**.

10. Stems ending in **a, o, u** regularly weaken these vowels into the more easy and euphonic **ī** before consonants in composition: as, **causīdīcus**; **signīfer**; **cornīger**; but the vowel is sometimes dropped: as in **manceps** (*manu + cap-*). Stems in **i** retain **i** or drop it: as, **ignīvomus**; **naufragus** (*nāvi-*). Consonant stems either drop their consonants or add **i**: as, **lapīcīda** (*lapid-*); **mātrīcīda** (*mātr-*).

Note.—For the changes which prepositions undergo in composition, see page 151.



SYNTAX.



SENTENCES.

107. A simple sentence expresses a single thought, or tells a single fact, and contains one finite verb.

1. Every Simple Sentence is either (1) a **Statement**, (2) a **Question**, (3) a **Command** or **Request**, or (4) an **Exclamation**.

Note.—There are two forms in which each of these kinds of sentences may be found, the **Direct**, and the **Indirect** or **Dependent**; as, **Brutus killed Caesar**, and *he said that Brutus killed Caesar*; where the first example is a Direct Statement, and the same words in the second example an Indirect Statement. **Do you live in Rome?** and, He asked him, “**Do you live in Rome?**” are examples of a Direct Question; in He asked him **whether he lived in Rome**, we have an example of an Indirect Question.

2. A **Compound Sentence** is made by the union of two or more simple sentences.

3. The Clause containing the Principal Assertion is called the **Leading Clause**; clauses depending upon it, explaining or modifying it, are called **Subordinate**; clauses connected with it but not dependent upon it in their construction, are called **Co-ordinate**.

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

108. Every sentence contains a **Subject** and a **Predicate**.

1. The **Subject** is the person or thing of whom, or of which, something is told; the **Predicate** is that which is told of the subject. Thus in the sentences, *rosa flōret*, *the rose blooms*, and *rosa pulchra est*, *the rose is beautiful*, *rosa* is the **Subject**, and *flōret* and *pulchra est* are the **Predicates**.

2. The **Subject** is expressed either (1) by a **Noun**, as *rosa*, (2) a **Pronoun**, as *ille*, in *ille currit*, *he runs*, or (3) some word, phrase, or clause standing for a **Noun**; or (4) it is implied in the termination of the **Verb**, as *curr-o*, *I run*; *curri-t*, *he runs*.

1. Words which may stand for **Nouns** are (1) **Adjectives**, as *omnia flō-*

rent, *all things bloom*; (2) **Adverbs**, as *satis temporis datur*, *enough time is given*; (3) **Infinitives**, as *nāvigāre dēlectat*, *sailing gives delight*; (4) **Terms cited as words or Phrases** merely, as "*ad arma*" *clāmātur*, "*to arms*" *is shouted*; and (5) **Substantive Clauses**, as *Quae sit nātūra lūcis ambigitur*, *what is the nature of light is disputed*.

2. A full and definite sentence may be expressed by a single word, if that word is a verb in the first or second person; as, *curris*, *thou runnest*; *currimus*, *we run*. The verb in the third person requires the aid of the context for fuller definition of its subject.

3. The **Predicate** is either a Verb, as *flōrent*, or a Noun or Adjective connected with the Subject by some form of the verb *esse*, *to be*; as, *rosa flōs est*, *the rose is a flower*; *rosa pulchra est*.

1. When the verb *sum* is thus used, it is called the *Cōpŭla*, or connecting link. It can make a Predicate by itself, when it implies absolute existence; as, *seges est ubi Troja fuit*, *(there) is corn where Troy WAS*.

2. The verb *sum* is also, or appears to be, more than a mere copula, (1) in the expression *est ut*, *it is possible that*; (2) when it has for complement (a) an adverb, as *sic est vīta hominum*, (b) a preposition and case, as *est apud Caesarem*, (c) a Possessive Genitive, a Case (Gen., Abl., or Loc.) of Quality or Place, or a Dative expressing that which a person or thing occasions or serves as: as, *bona sunt viri*; *summae facultātis est*; *opertō capite est*; *Caesar Dyrrachiī est*; *ea dēdecorī sunt*.

3. A predicate noun, adjective, or participle is often added to the subject without a copula: as, *fortis Jūlius*, *brave is Julius*; *fūsi hostes*, *the enemies are routed*.

4. A single interjection or exclamation may be equivalent to a sentence; thus the cry, *Oh!* may imply, *I am surprised*, *I am pleased*, *I am pained*, or still other meanings, according to the circumstances, and the context (in writing) or the tone of voice (in utterance). Other interjections may be limited to a single meaning.

5. The Subject and Predicate may each be modified by additional words or clauses.

6. A simple sentence is enlarged by the addition of the Object to the verb. The object is that to which the action of the verb extends; and is either **Direct**, as, *Rōmulus Remum interfēcit*, *Romulus killed Remus*; or **Indirect**, as, *do tibi librum*, *I give thee a book*.

Note.—The indirect may also be called the *remoter object*.

109. SUBJECT.

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative:

As, *equus currit*, the horse runs.

Note.—A verb is called *finite* in those forms which are limited by mood and person, as well as tense. Hence all the forms of the verb in any mood except the infinitive are finite.

2. A personal pronoun is generally omitted, being implied in the termination of the verb. If expressed, it is for the sake of emphasis or distinction:

As, *nātūrā tu illi pater es, consiliis ego*, thou art his father by nature, I by counsel.

3. The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative. (See § 238-240.)

Exc.—The nominative stands sometimes with a present infinitive, used in lively discourse instead of a present or imperfect indicative:

As, *pars cedere, alii insequi*, a part was retiring, others advancing.

110. SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE AND VERB.

1. A verb agrees with its subject-nominative in number and person:

As, *nos, consules, dēsumus*, we, the consuls, are wanting.

2. *a.* If there are several subjects, the verb is generally in the plural:

As, *aetas, metus, magister prohibebant*, age, timidity, and a tutor forbade.

b. But if several subjects represent one whole, or one combined notion, they may take a verb in the singular:

As, *Senātus populusque Rōmānus intellegit*, the Senate and people of Rome understand; *Gallos a Belgis Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit*, the Marne and the Seine separate the Gauls from the Belgae; *religio et fides antepōnātur amīcitiae*, let religion and honor be preferred to friendship.

1. If the subject nearest the predicate is singular, and of particular importance, the verb may agree with this subject alone.

2. When the preposition *cum* unites the subjects, the verb is sometimes plural: as, *ipse dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur*, the commander himself with some leading men are captured. The singular gives greater

importance to its subject: *as, tū cum Sexto scīre velim quid cōgites*, I should like to know what *thou* and *Sextus* think.

3. If there are subjects of different persons, the verb is generally of the first person rather than of the second, and of the second rather than of the third:

As, si tu et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicero valēmus, if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.

Note.—In Latin the first person is put before the second or the third: *as, ego et tu et rex meus*; and the second person before the third person.

4. Collective nouns may take a plural verb:

As, pars Rōmam inermes dēlāti sunt, a portion were brought unarmed to Rome.

a. Such nouns are *pars*, *multitūdo*, *vulgus*, *turba*, *vis*, *juventus*, *nōbilitas*, *plebs*, and others. This construction is rare in Caesar, and not used by Cicero.

b. *Mille* generally takes a plural verb, but sometimes a singular.

5. Distributive words and phrases, as *quisque*, *uterque*, *pars*, *alius* . . . *aliū*, *alter* . . . *alterum*, *vir* . . . *virum*, are found with plural predicates, but may be explained as appositive to plural subjects understood: *as, alius alii subsidium ferunt*, they bring support one to another.

a. The adverb *partim* is found with the plural in Cicero: *as, partim e nobis timidi sunt, partim a re pūblicā āversi*, one part of us are cowards, the other estranged from the state.

6. Subjects connected by disjunctives generally take a singular verb:

As, si Aeacus aut Mīnōs dīceret.

a. But sometimes the verb is plural: *as, si quid Sōcrates aut Aristippus fēcerint.*

7. With *aut* . . . *aut* the singular alone is used; *et* . . . *et* and *neque* . . . *neque* usually lead to a singular predicate, but sometimes to a plural.

8. The verb is sometimes omitted:

As, di meliōra piis, may the gods grant better things to the pious; *tum ille, then he replied; quid multa?* (understand, *dicam*.)

1. This omission is very frequent with the verb *sum*: *as, nam Polydōrus ego*, for I am *Polydōrus*.

111. PREDICATE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE.

1. With verbs signifying *to be*, *become*, *remain*, *appear*, *be made*, *be chosen*, *be thought*, *be called*, and the like, a noun or adjective in the predicate is in the same case as the subject:

As, *Ancus Martius rēx creātus est, Ancus Martius was made king; quaestor es factus, you have become quaestor; Cato esse quam vidēri bonus mālēbat, Cato preferred being good to seeming good; Numidae quiēti mansērunt, the Numidians remained quiet; Antōnius hostis jūdicātur, Antony is adjudged an enemy; ego, quae incēdo rēgīna deūm, I, who walk proudly the queen of the gods.*

2. The predicate adjective agrees with the subject in gender and number also.

3. The verb may agree in number with the predicate instead of the subject: as, *amantium īrae amōris integratio est; more rarely in the plural: as, contentum suis rēbus esse maximae sunt dīvitiae.*

4. The predicate of an infinitive with a subject accusative is in the accusative: as, *aiunt vītā esse somnium, they say that life is a dream.*

5. The predicate of an ablative absolute is in the ablative: as, *Cyō rēge creāto, when Cyrus had been chosen king; consulibus certiōribus factis, when the consuls had been informed.*

6. When a predicate noun or adjective is found with *esse* (or a similar verb) after the impersonal *licet* with a dative, it is generally in the dative, if the subject accusative is not expressed; but sometimes in the accusative; as, *licuit Themistooli esse otioso, it was left free for Themistocles to be at leisure; civi Romano licet esse Geditanum.*

112. APPOSITION.

1. A noun added to another noun or pronoun to describe it, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in case:

As, *Cicero orator interfectus est, Cicero the orator was slain; hic liber est Titi, fratris tui, this book belongs to Titus, thy brother.*

Note.—A noun so added is called an *appositive*.

Exc.—An appositive to a noun meaning *name* is often attracted to the dative of the person:

As, *Scipio, cui Africano cognomen fuit, Scipio, who had the surname of Africanus; Africano* being attracted to *cui*.

2. Sometimes the appositive denotes not a general or permanent character of the noun with which it is in apposition, but one belonging to it at the time implied in the sentence: as, *Cicero praetor legem Maniliam suavit, consul conjurationem Catilinae oppressit, Cicero as consul . . . as praetor, etc., or when he was consul, when he was praetor; Cato senex scribere historiam instituit, Cato in his old age.*

3. A genitive may stand in apposition to the person implied in a possessive personal pronoun: as, *mea unus opera, by my activity alone (mea = of me); vestra omnium caedes, the slaughter of you all.*

4. An appositive to two or more nouns is usually in the plural: as, **Gnaeus et Publius Scipiōnes**, *duo fulmina belli*, *Gnaeus and Publius Scipio, two thunderbolts of war*.

5. If the appositive has two genders, it usually takes the gender of the noun explained: as, **leo**, **rēx bestiārum**, *the lion, king of beasts*; **aquila**, **rēgīna avium**, *the eagle, king of birds*; **philosophia**, **magistra vītae**, *philosophy, the guide of life*; **Athēnae**, **omnium doctrinārum inventricēs**, *Athens, the inventor of all sciences*.

6. Such words as **urbs**, **oppidum**, **caput**, *city, town, capital*, appositive to plural names of places, are always in the singular: as, **Athēnae**, **urbs Graeciae**, *Athens, a city of Greece*.

113. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case:

As, **amīco fīdo**, *to a faithful friend*; **haec sententia**, *this opinion*; **carmina dulcia**, *sweet songs*; **doctārum fēminārum**, *of learned women*.

Note.—An adjective is used **attributively** when it accompanies its noun immediately, as **psittacus loquax**, *the talkative parrot*; **predicatively**, when it is connected with its noun by a copulative verb, as **psittacus est loquax**, *the parrot is talkative*.

2. Adjectives agree, in like manner, with substantive pronouns, expressed or understood:

As, **O me miserum** (spoken by a man); **me miseram** (spoken by a woman); **invītus fēci**, *sc. ego*.

3. An adjective agreeing with two or more nouns is put in the plural. If the nouns are of different genders, the adjective is generally masculine if they denote living beings, and neuter if they denote things without life:

As, **pater mihi et mātēr mortui sunt**, *my father and mother are dead*; **labor voluptasque**, **dissimillimā nātūrā**, **societāte quādam inter se nātūrālī sunt juncta**, *labor and pleasure, things most unlike by nature, etc.*

Exc.—The adjective often agrees with the nearest noun, and is understood with the rest:

As, **Orgetorigis fīlia atque ūnus e fīliis captus est**.

Note 1.—If the nouns denote things without life, even when they are all masculine or feminine, the adjective is generally neuter: as, **īra et avāritia imperio potentiōra erant**, *things more potent than empire*.

Note 2.—When nouns denoting persons are combined with nouns denot-

ing objects without life, the adjective may take the gender of the persons or be in the neuter: as, *rēx rēgiaque classis profecti sunt*, *the king and the royal fleet set out*; *inimīca inter se sunt libera cīvitas et rex*, *a free state and a king are things hostile to each other*.

4. An adjective referring to a phrase or clause must be neuter: as, *hūmānum est errāre*, *it is natural to man to err*.

5. The gender of an adjective is sometimes determined by the meaning rather than by the grammatical form of the noun: as, *capita conjūratiōnis caesi sunt*, *the heads (i. e., the chief men) of the conspiracy were put to death*.

6. An adjective added to the subject often has the force of an adverb: as, *invītus fēci*, *I did it unwillingly*; *insiste audax mūrīs*, *advance on the walls boldly*; *Aenēas se mātūtīnus agēbat*, *Aeneas was astir in the morning*; *domesticus ōtior*, *I lounge at home*; *memini, tametsi nullus moneas*, *I remember, without any suggestion from thee*; *Hannibal princeps in proelium ībat, ultimus conserto proelio excēdēbat*, *Hannibal used to be the first to go to battle, and after the engagement the last to quit the field*.

Note 1.—Where the English usually uses a relative pronoun, as *he was the first (or the last or the only one) who came*, the Latin more concisely says *prīmus (ultimus, sōlus) vēnit*.

Note 2.—The distinction between *prīmus* and the adverbs *prīmum* and *prīmo*, appears from the following examples: (1) *hanc prīmam ōrātiōnem lēgi*, *this is the first oration that I read*; (2) *hanc ōrātiōnem prīmum lēgi, deinde transcripsi*, *this oration I first read and then copied*; *hōdie hanc ōrātiōnem prīmum lēgi*, *to-day I read this oration for the first time*; (3) *hanc ōrātiōnem prīmo libenter lēgi, postea magis magisque mihi jejūna vīsa est*, *this oration I read at first with pleasure; afterwards it seemed to me drier and drier*.

7. Adjectives are often used as if they were nouns: as, *boni et sapientes ex urbe pulsi sunt*, *the good and wise have been banished from the city*; *Caesar suos misit*, *Caesar sent his soldiers* (see § 117, 5); *dextra*, *the right hand*; *hīberna*, *winter quarters*.

8. A neuter adjective is often found in the predicate, with the force of a noun, although the subject is masculine or feminine: as, *triste lupus stabulis*, *the wolf is a pest* (lit., a sad thing) *for the stalls*.

9. An adverb is sometimes used as an adjective: as, *ignāri ante malōrum*, *ignorant of former evils*.

10. The adjectives *prīmus*, *medius*, *ultīmus*, *extrēmus*, *intīmus*, *infīmus*, *īmus*, *summus*, *suprēmus*, *relīquus*, etc., sometimes denote the *first part*, *middle part*, *last part*, etc., of any place or time: as, *summus mons*, *the top of the mountain*; *media nox*, *the middle of the night*.

114. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Pronouns agree with their antecedents in gender, number, and person; but their case depends on the construction of the clause in which they stand:

As, *signum Jovis, quod Phīdias fēcit, the statue of Jupiter, which Phidias made; litterae quas dedi, the letter which I sent; Jāsōn nāvem aedificat, quae Argo nōmināta est; in eam ascendit; Jason builds a ship, which is called Argo; on it he embarks; nōn sum quālis eram, I am not such as I was; adsum qui fēci, I, who did it, am here.*

2. *a.* Usually the noun is expressed only in the antecedent clause, but sometimes also with the relative pronoun:

As, *erant omnīno duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exīre possent, there were only two routes, by which routes they could leave home.*

b. Sometimes the noun is expressed only in the relative clause, especially when that clause precedes that of the antecedent:

As, *urbem quam statuo, vestrā est (as for the city which I found, it is yours), yours is the city that I found.*

c. The noun is sometimes omitted in the antecedent clause even when it has an adjective there agreeing with it: as, *quis non malārum quas amor cūras habet haec inter oblīviscitur? (= malarum curarum quas amor habet.)*

d. Sometimes no noun is expressed: as, *qui bene latuit, bene vixit, (he) who has well escaped notice, has lived well.*

3. The relative is sometimes attracted to the case of the antecedent: as, *cum aliquid agas eōrum quōrum consuēsti, for quae.*

4. When relative or demonstrative pronouns refer to more than one noun, the gender and person are determined by the same rules as those of predicate adjectives (§ 113, 3, 4, 5).

115. PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Pronouns and verbs of the First Person Plural are often used by a single person speaking of himself: as,

nōris nos, docti sumus, you should know me, I am a man of learning (lit., with a certain humor, "you should know us, we are a learned man").

2. The personal pronouns are used with *ad, apud, ab*, to signify *house, abode*: as, *vēni ad me, I came to my villa; Scaurum rūri apud se esse audio, I hear that Scaurus is at his country seat; quisnam e nōbis ēgreditur foras? who is coming out of our house?*

3. Pronouns of the First and Second Persons, expressed only in the ter-

mination of the verb, may have a noun in apposition: as, *Hannibal peto pācem, I, Hannibal, sue for peace*; *omnes boni nōbilitāti favēmus, all we conservatives regard noble birth with favor*; *sōli Tusculāni vēra arma invēnistis, only you men of Tusculum have discovered genuine warfare*.

4. Possessive pronouns are usually omitted when not required for clearness or emphasis: as, *patrem video, I see my father*.

5. The possessive pronouns are sometimes used in the sense of *fit* or *propitious*: as, *ventis itūrus non suis, about to sail with unpropitious winds*. This is simply an extension of their proper meaning.

116. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. **Hic** is called the demonstrative of the First Person, **iste** the demonstrative of the Second Person, and **ille** the demonstrative of the Third Person; **hic** referring to that which is near or connected with the speaker in time, place, or idea; **iste** having similar reference to the person or persons addressed, and **ille** to persons or things more remote:

As, *huic homini (= mihi); Chrysis vicīna haec, my neighbor here, Chrysis*; *hoc studium, this pursuit of mine (or ours)*:

mūta istam mentem, change that purpose of thine; *ista subsellia, those benches in thy neighborhood*:

Q. Catūlus non antīquo illo mōre, sed hoc nostro, fuit ērudītus, Quintus Catūlus was learned not in that ancient manner but in this of our day.

2. **Ille** is sometimes used to denote fame or dignity:

As, *Mēdēa illa, the celebrated Mēdēa*; *venerāmini illum Jovem, adore that great Jupiter*.

3. **Ille** may mean the other of two named; or, in the plural, the other side, the other party.

4. *a.* When **hic** and **ille** refer to two things, **hic** designates either what is last mentioned (and thus the nearest in the discourse, the latter), or what is the nearer to the speaker's mind; **ille** either the former, or what is farther from the speaker's mind.

b. The two pronouns are also used for distribution: as, *hoc et illud, this and that*. So *ille aut ille, ille et ille, this and that man*.

5. **Iste** sometimes implies contempt; not from its intrinsic meaning, but from its use in courts of law to imply the

opposing party (*iste, that fellow whom you are defending*), or from the speaker's apparently repelling what he names from himself to some one else.

6. **Is** is an unemphatic demonstrative. It is used:

a. In reference to a noun before mentioned, as **maximum ornāmentum amīctiāe tollit qui ex eā tollit verēcundiam**, *he takes away the chief grace of friendship, who takes from it respectfulness*. Its oblique cases are often left to be understood.

b. It is a simple antecedent of a relative: as, **is qui hoc fēcit**, *he who did this*.

c. It means *one* (of a kind), *such*, especially before **qui** or **ut** with the subjunctive.

7. **Idem** may often be rendered *also*, or *at the same time*: as, **quidquid honestum, idem est ūtile**, *whatever is morally right is also expedient*. Sometimes it implies a contrast, *but yet*.

8. Demonstratives are sometimes used where in English idiom they would be redundant.

9. The adverb **quidem** is elegantly joined to personal and demonstrative pronouns, especially **ille**, where a concession is made, but immediately qualified by an adversative clause (*certainly . . . but*): as, **tuus dolor hūmānus is quidem, sed tamen magnopere moderandus**, *yours is a grief natural to man, I admit, but one which should be very much repressed*.

10. Demonstratives and relatives are sometimes used concisely in a suggestive sense, in agreement with a noun, instead of adding what is suggested in the genitive case or some similar construction: as, **haec pulchritūdo**, *this beauty*, meaning *the beauty of these things around us*; **hic metus**, *the alarm thus occasioned*; **haec similitūdo**, *something like this*; **haec dēfensio** = *hujus rei dēfensio*.

117. REFLEXIVES.

1. **Se** and **suus** generally refer to a subject nominative of the third person in their own clause:

As, **fur tēlo se dēfendit**, *the thief defends himself with a weapon*; **sentit animus se vi suā movēri**, *the soul feels that it is moved by its own force*.

Note.—**Quisque** is a frequent subject of **se**, **suus**.

2. **Se** and **suus** may be referred to an object (which usually precedes):

As, *Caesarem sua nātūra mītiōrem facit*, *Caesar's own character makes him milder.*

3. *Se* and *suus* may be referred to an indefinite subject or object *aliquem* or *alicui*:

As, *habenda ratio non sua solum, sed etiam aliorum*, *one must take account not of himself alone, but also of others*; *bellum est sua vitia nōsse*, *it is a fine thing to know one's own faults.*

4. Where *se* and *suus* would be out of place, the cases of *is*, and sometimes of *ipse*, are used:

As, *Chilius te rogat, et ego ejus rogātu*, *Chilius asks thee, and I at his request*; *aranti Quinctio nuntiātum est eum dictātōrem esse factum*, *news came to Quinctius while plowing that he was appointed dictator.*

5. *Sui*, the masculine plural possessive pronoun, is used idiomatically in the sense of *his*, *her*, or *their* friends, family, soldiers, etc.

118. THE DEFINITIVE IPSE.

1. *Ipse* may be appositive either to the subject or object, according as the one or the other is emphatic:

As, *me ipse consōlor* and *me ipsum consōlor*, where (though each is translated in English, *I comfort myself*) *ipse* with the subject means, *I* (rather than another); with the object, *I comfort myself* (rather than any body else).

2. *Ipse* is also used (1) to imply *of one's own accord*, as *ipsae lacte domum referent distenta capellae ūbera*, *the she-goats of their own accord will bring home their milk-swollen udders*; (2) to define time exactly, as *decem ipsos dies*, *exactly ten days*; *nuno ipsum*, *at this very moment*; (3) to express the chief person, as *Pythagorēi respondēre solēbant*, *Ipse dixit*, *the Pythagorēans used to reply, He himself said so* (i. e., *Pythagoras*). Hence slaves used to call their master and mistress, *ipse*, *ipsa*; and Catullus uses *ipsa* for *era*.

119. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS, ETC.

1. The Indefinite Pronouns *quis*, *quī*, cannot begin a sentence. They usually follow some particle (*si*, *nisi*, *nē*, *an*, *num*, *ut*, etc.), or a relative; but are sometimes used without a particle, as *dixerit quis*, *some one may say*.

2. *Nescio quis*, *nescio qui*, are used as indefinite pronouns in the sense of *some* (person or thing) or *other*. Compare the French, *je ne sais quoi*. So *nescio quo*, *nescio quando*.

3. **Aliquis, aliqui, some,** are somewhat less indefinite than **quis, qui.**

4. Occasionally **aliquis** means *a person of importance*, as **sēsē aliquem crēdens, considering himself somebody.**

5. **Quispiam** is used with more emphasis than **quis**, and rather less than **aliquis**. **Quispiam** is found chiefly in positive sentences; **quisquam** chiefly in negative and dubitative sentences; **nonnullus** only in a positive, **ullus** only in a negative or dubitative construction.

6. **Quīdam**, a certain one, implies that the subject is definitely known, though indefinitely described; thus: **quōdam tempore nātus sum, aliquo moriar, I was born at a certain time, I shall die some time or other.** It is joined with epithets: as, **spīnōsa quaedam et exilis ōrātiō, a certain prickly and lean style.** It occasionally means *some* as opposed to *the whole* or *others*: as, **nullis piscibus supra quaternas pinnae sunt, quibusdam binae, aliquibus nullae, no fishes have more than four fins, some two, a few none at all.** Hence it qualifies an expression not meant to be taken strictly: as, in **ideis Plato quiddam dīvinum esse dīcēbat, Plato used to say that in ideas there is something divine.**

Quīdam also stands in contrast to **quīvis, quīlibet, any you will**: as, **ut saltātōri mōtus non quīvis sed certus quīdam est datus, sic vīta agenda est certo genere quōdam non quīlibet, as to a dancer is assigned not any optional movement, but a certain definite one, so must life be passed in a certain definite way, not in any we please.**

7. **Quisque** means *each* of any number. (It occurs in Plautus in the sense of **quisquis, whosoever.**)

8. The **Universal Relatives**, whether compounded with **-cumque**, or of the duplicated form, have no special idioms distinguishing them from other relatives.

9. **Pronominal Adjectives.**—*a.* **Alter** is *one of two*: as, **claudus fuit altero pede, he was lame of one foot.** It answers the question **uter, which of two?**

b. Two cases of **alter** (as of **alius**) may stand in the same clause, distributing **ambo, uterque, etc.**: as, **uterque hōrum medium quiddam volēbat sequi; sed ita cadēbat ut alter ex alterius laude partem, uterque autem suam tōtam habēret: both these men wished to attain a mean; but it so fell out that one had a share of the other's credit, while each possessed his own entire.** **Uterque** means *each of two*; **alterūter, one or the other of two.**

Alter alterum amat, they love one another; (also expressed by, **amant se invicem; mūtuo amant; amant inter se.**)

Alteri . . . alteri, one party, . . . the other party.

c. **Alter** sometimes means *a second, another besides one named or implied*: **alter erit tum Tīphys, then will there be a second Tīphys; alterum tantum, as much again.**

d. **Alius** repeated in successive clauses means *one, another, another, and so on*, without limit of number. In like manner the adverbs of **alius**,

aliter, alias, alibi, alio, etc.: as, **alias contentius, alias remissius**, at one time more vigorously, at another more slackly.

e. Repeated in the same clause, or joined with one of its adverbs, **alius** may be translated by the word *different*, or more commonly, by two separate clauses, rendered in the first by *one . . . one*, and in the second by *another . . . another*: as, **aliud aliis videtur optimum**, one thing seems best to one, another to another; **aliis aliunde periculum est**, danger threatens different persons from different sources.

THE CASES.

120. NOMINATIVE AND VOCATIVE.

1. The nominative is used as the subject of a finite verb (§ 109), as an appositive (§ 112), or in the predicate after verbs signifying *to be*, *to be called*, etc. (§ 111.)

2. The vocative, with or without an interjection, is used in addressing a person or thing:

As, **vincere scis, Hannibal, adeste, amīci! O dii boni! heu virgo! ah stulte!**

3. The nominative may stand with the interjections **en, ecce, O**, and others:

As, **ecce nuntii, ecce litterae, Caesarem ad Corfinium**, lo couriers and letters stating that Caesar is at Corfinium; **O vir fortis atque amīcus!**

4. In the poets, and in antiquated style, the nominative is sometimes found for the vocative:

As, **almae fīlius Maiae!**

Thus often, when the noun is collective, or when the word is an attributive or an appositive:

As, **audi tu, pōpūlus Albānus; nūdus jacitūre sepulcro.**

5. In prose the vocative is usually placed after some other words in the proposition: as, **crēdo ego vos, jūdices, mirāri**. But it may be prefixed with a kind of solemn dignity, or in vehement expressions of feeling.

ACCUSATIVE.

121. ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT.

1. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative:

As, *māter alit pullos*, the mother nourishes her young; in *prīmis venerāre Deum*, in the first place worship God; *pudet me* (lit. it shames me), I am ashamed.

Rem.—The object of a transitive verb in the active voice becomes the subject of the verb in the passive voice: as, *pulli a matre aluntur*, the young are nourished by the mother.

Note 1.—Impersonal verbs governing the accusative are referred to this rule.

Note 2.—An infinitive or a clause may be the subject of a verb.

Note 3.—After verbs denoting the operations of the senses or intellectual powers, and some verbs of causing and effecting, the subject of the governed clause is sometimes (especially in the older writers) attracted as object to the governing verb: as, *nōsti Marcellum, quam tardus sit*, you know Marcellus, how slow he is, instead of *nosti quam tardus sit Marcellus*. Compare, I know thee, who thou art. This idiom is used sometimes where it cannot be imitated in English: as, *quis tuum patrem . . . qui esset audīvit*, who heard who your father was.

2. Some verbs are sometimes used as transitives in Latin, though translated in English by intransitives followed by a preposition. Such are

a. Many intransitive verbs denoting a feeling or state of the mind: as, *honōrēs dēspērānt*, they despair of honors; *cāsum hunc doleo*, I grieve for this misfortune.

b. Verbs signifying to have the smell of, have the taste of, to thirst for, breathe out, sound like, etc.: as, *olet vīnum*, he smells of wine; *anhēlat scelus*, he breathes out crime; *vox hominem sonat*, her voice sounds like a man.

c. The poets go very far in giving intransitive verbs a transitive signification. (See § 124.)

d. The passive of such verbs is used more rarely; but we find *rīdeor*, I am laughed at; *triumphātae gentis*; *nox vigilāta*; *regnāta rūra*.

3. In the comic poets, an accusative is sometimes found with verbal nouns: as, *istum tactio*; *hanc cūrātio rem*.

4. The participial in *-bundus* sometimes takes an accusative: as, *populābundus agros*.

5. The verb is sometimes omitted, in phrases in which it is easily supplied: as, *unde mihi lapidem?* where shall I get a stone?

122. COMPOUNDS BECOMING TRANSITIVE.

Intransitive verbs of motion sometimes become transitive when compounded with a preposition.

As, *hostes circumīre*; *transīre flūmen*; *occumbere mortem*.

a. So some verbs of position: as, *equites circumstant senātum*.

Note 1.—Most of these verbs can be used in the passive: as, *angustias Thēmistōolēs quaerēbat, nē multitudīne circumīrētur.*

Note 2.—Compounds with *trans*, *circum*, and *ad* can take two accusatives, if the simple verb is transitive: as, *transjicere exercitum flūmen.*

Note 3.—The preposition may be repeated: as, *trans Rhodānum cōpias trajēcit.*

Note 4.—When such compounds take on a new meaning, differing from the simple meaning of the verb, they are generally construed without a preposition: as, *inīre in urbem, to go into the city; inīre proelium, to begin a battle; adīre ad aliquem, to go to; adīre aliquem, to consult.*

123. COGNATE ACCUSATIVE.

An intransitive verb often takes an accusative of **kindred meaning**. This accusative repeats the idea already contained in the verb, and is usually modified by an adjective or pronoun:

As, *vītam jūcundam vīvere, to live a delightful life; hoc bellum bel-lāre, to wage this war; mīrum somniāre somnium, to dream a wonderful dream.*

124. LIMITING OR DEFINING ACCUSATIVE.

Intransitive verbs sometimes take an accusative limiting their meaning, especially in the poets:

As, *corōnāri Olympia, to be crowned as an Olympic victor; saltāre Cy-clōpa, to dance the Cyclops.*

Note 1.—To this rule may be referred the use of the accusative of neuter adjectives and pronouns after intransitives: as, *dulce rīdēre (= dulcem rīsum rīdēre), to smile sweetly; torvum clāmāre; acerba tuēri, to look bitter things; aeternum vīvere; hoc studet ūnum, he makes this one thing his aim; id laetor, I am pleased at this; idem glōriātur, he makes the same boast.* This is the accusative of the inner object.

Note 2.—A limiting accusative of a pronoun may be added to a transitive verb with an accusative of the person: as, *hoc te hortor, I give thee this exhortation.*

125. ACCUSATIVE AFTER PASSIVES USED REFLEXIVELY.

The passive of some verbs in the poets and later prose writers is used like the Greek middle to describe an action done by the agent **to or for himself**, and takes an accusative:

As, *Priamus ferrum cingitur, Priam girds on his blade; Androgei*

galeam induitur, he dons the helmet of Androgēos; virgīnes longam indūtae vestem.

Note.—In classical prose we have the ablative, *cingitur ferro; indūtus veste albā.*

TWO ACCUSATIVES.

126. Verbs meaning *to name, call, make, choose, think, take*, and some others, may take two accusatives, one of the object, the other of the predicate :

As, urbem Rōmam vocāvit, he called the city Rome; Sōcratēs tōtius mundi se cīvem arbitrābātur, Socrates was wont to think himself a citizen of the whole world; jūdicem populum Rōmānum cēpēre, they took the Roman people as their judge; grātum me praebeo, I show myself grateful.

127. *Doceo, I teach*, and its compounds, *cēlo, I conceal*, and some verbs of *asking and demanding*, govern two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing :

As, te litteras doceo, I teach thee literature; iter omnes cēlat, he conceals his journey from all.

1. Instead of the accusative, we often find the ablative of the thing with *de*.

2. *Peto* and *postulo* take always the ablative of the person with *ab*, and *quaero* takes the ablative of the person with *ab, de, or ex*.

3. While the art taught is put in the accusative, the instrument is put in the ablative: *as, aliquem fidibus docēre; docendum equo armisque. Doctus* generally takes the ablative.

4. Verbs that in the active voice take two accusatives, in the passive retain one, while the other becomes the subject.

128. ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION AND ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE.

1. The accusative of **specification** may be joined with a verb or adjective to denote *that in respect to which* the expression is used :

As, tremit artus, he trembles in his limbs; ōs humerosque deo similis, in face and shoulders like a god; cētera ēgregius, excellent in other respects; caput nectentur, their heads shall be bound.

Note.—This is often called the Greek accusative, or the accusative by *synecdoche*. It denotes particularly *the part affected*.

2. The accusative in certain expressions is used adverbially :

As, *maximam partem*, for the most part; *meam vicem*, on my account; *quod si*, but if (lit. as to which, if).

The accusative in these expressions is often an *accusative of extent*.

3. In a few phrases, the adverbial accusative stands where we might expect the genitive or ablative: as, *id temporis* (eo tempore), at that time; *id genus alia*, other things of that kind.

4. In the comic poets, and more rarely in other writers, a sentence sometimes begins with an accusative antecedent to a following relative in the same case.

129. ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF TIME OR SPACE.

1. The accusative is used to denote **extent of time or space**:

As, *decem annos urbs oppugnāta est*, the city was besieged for ten years; *fossa duos pedes lāta*, a ditch two feet broad.

2. Time throughout which may be denoted by *per* with the accusative.

3. Duration of time is sometimes expressed by the **ablative**; but rarely in the best writers. This is a free use of time *in which* for time *throughout which*. (See § 185, 10.)

4. A specified distance may stand either in the **accusative of extent**, or the **ablative of measure**. If *spatium* or *intervallum* be used, they are in the ablative, and govern a defining genitive.

5. When the place from which the distance is reckoned is not mentioned, *ab* often stands before the words stating the distance: as, *a millibus passuum duobus*, two miles off.

130. TERMINAL ACCUSATIVE.

1. After verbs implying motion, the names of *towns* and *small islands* are put in the accusative without a preposition, to denote the **place whither**.

As, *Athēnas profectus est*, he set out for Athens; *missi sunt Delphos*, they were sent to Delphi.

2. Names of countries and large islands generally take a preposition; but the preposition is sometimes omitted, especially in poetry.

3. *Domus* and *rus* are put in the accusative after verbs of motion, like names of towns:

As, *rus Ibo*, I shall go to the country; *rediit domum*, he returned home; *cohortes Latinae Hernicaeque remissae (sunt) domos*, to their homes.

131. ACCUSATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

1. Twenty-eight Prepositions govern the accusative.

These are *ad*, *adversus* or *adversum*, *ante*, *apud*, *circā*, *circum*, *circīter*, *cis* or *citrā*, *contrā*, *ergā*, *extrā*, *infrā*, *inter*, *intrā*, *juxtā*, *ob*, *penes*, *per*, *pōne*, *post*, *praeter*, *prope*, *propter*, *secundum*, *suprā*, *trans*, *ultrā*, and *versus*.

2. The comparative *propius* and superlative *proxime* also take an accusative: *as, propius urbem, nearer the city*.

3. *In* and *sub* are followed by the accusative when they denote **motion** to a place; denoting **situation**, they are followed by the ablative:

As, ire in urbem, to go into the city; in urbe esse, to be in the city; sub scālas se conjēcit, he threw himself under the stairs; sub mensā jacet, he lies under the table.

Note.—*In* with the accusative may mean *for*, *about*, *against*, etc.

4. *Super* and *subter* generally govern the accusative, but sometimes take the ablative in poetry; when *super* means *concerning*, it takes the ablative in prose.

5. *Versus* or *versum* always follows its case: *as, Rōmam versus contendit, he marched towards Rome*. The best writers subjoin it to a case governed by *ad* or *in*. Postpositive also sometimes are *propter*, *contra*, *ante*, *circa*, *circum*, *inter*, *juxta*, *penes*, *subter*, *super*, *supra*, and *per*, especially after personal and relative pronouns, and in the poets. See *Verg. Aen.* 4, 671.

132. ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.

The accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an interjection:

As, me miserum! or, O me miserum! wretched me!

The accusative is used as it would have been if some verb of emotion or declaration had preceded.

GENITIVE.

133. ADNOMINAL GENITIVE.

A noun that limits the meaning of another noun, denoting a different thing, is put in the Genitive.

Genitive of Possession.

1. The noun in the genitive may denote the *possessor*, the *author*, or the *source*:

As, **Caesaris horti**, *Caesar's gardens*; **Cicerōnis oratio**, *an oration of Cicero*; **labor discendi**, *the toil of learning*.

Note 1.—The noun limited is sometimes omitted: as, **ventum erat ad Vestae**, sc. **templum**; *we had come to the temple of Vesta* (compare, *he went to St. Paul's*); **hujus video Burriam**, *I see this man's slave, Burria*; **Verania Pisonis**, *Piso's wife, Verania*.

Note 2.—*a.* The possessive adjective pronouns are used to denote the possessor, instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns: as, **domus mea**, *my house*.

b. The genitive of pronouns or participles may be added to such possessive pronouns, agreeing with the genitive which they imply: as, **meū unius operā**, *by my single exertion*; **nostros vīdisti flentis ocellos**, *you saw the eyes of me weeping*.

c. In connection with **omnium**, the genitives **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used: as, **commūnis omnium nostrum parens**, *the common parent of us all*. But **nostrum** and **vestrum** are ordinarily used after partitives.

Note 3.—**Aliēnus** is often used instead of the genitive of **alius**, and other possessive adjectives instead of the genitive of the nouns from which they are derived: as, **aliēnus puer**, *the child of another*; **Hectoreum caput**, *Hector's head*; **erilis fīlius**, *the master's son*. See also § 116, 10.

Subjective Genitive.

2. The noun in the genitive may denote the *subject* of the action or feeling denoted by the governing noun: as, **amor parentum**, *parents' love*, meaning the love *which parents feel* for their children.

Objective Genitive.

3. The noun in the genitive may denote the *object* of the action or feeling denoted by the governing noun: as, **amor parentum**, *the love of parents*, meaning the love which children *feel for their parents*.

Note 1.—The objective genitive is often translated by other prepositions than *of*: as, **fuga periculi**, *flight from danger*; **contentio honorum**, *the struggle for office*; **Boiorum triumphus**, *a triumph over the Boii*; **fīdūcia virium**, *confidence in strength*.

Note 2.—Both genitives may limit the same noun: as, *Agamemnonis glōria belli*, *Agamemnon's* (subject) *glory in war* (object).

Note 3.—The possessive adjective pronouns, though generally subjective, may be used objectively or passively: as, *neglegentia tua*, *disregard for you*; *ōdium tuum*, *hatred for you*.

Genitive after Partitives.

4. Words denoting a *part* are followed by a genitive denoting *the whole*:

As, *juvenum princeps*, *foremost of the youth*.

Note 1.—Words denoting a part are called **partitives**. They are,

a. Nouns which express partition: as, *pars*, *numerus*, *nēmo*, *nihil*;

b. Some adverbs of quantity, measure, place, or time: as, *partim*, *parum*, *satis*, *affatim*, *nimis*, *abunde*; *eo*, *huo*, *adhuc*, *quo*, *quoad*; *hic*, *huc*, *nusquam*, *ibi*, *ubi*; *interea*;

c. Pronouns and pronominals, as *hic*, *ille*, *is*; *qui*, *quis*, and their compounds; *tot*, *quot*, and their derivatives; *alius*, *alter*, *uter*, and its compounds, *ullus*, *nullus*, *plērīque*, *multi*, *pauci*, *reliqui*, *cēteri*, *sōlus*;

d. Cardinal and ordinal numerals; also *princeps* and *medius*;

e. Neuter adjectives and pronouns used as nouns;

f. Adjectives in the comparative and superlative; as, *major Nerōnum*, *the elder of the Neros*; *avium loquaciōres*, *the noisier sort of birds*; *maximus frātrum*, *the elder of the brothers*;

g. Adverbs in the superlative;

h. Any noun or adjective which can imply distribution: as, *piscium fēminae*; *lecti juvenum*.

Note 2.—The genitive of the thing measured or counted is used after words of measure or quantity: as, *vīni tres amphorae*; *tria millia equitum*; *magna vis argenti*.

Note 3.—The genitive of the whole is sometimes the predicate: as, *fies nōbilium tu quoque fontium*, *thou also shalt become one of the fountains of fame*. An object partitive, also, is sometimes omitted.

Note 4.—After numerals, where all are embraced, the genitive is not used in Latin: as, *nos duo sumus*, *there are two of us*; *cognāti quos paucos habeo*, *kinsmen of whom I have few*. In such cases *of* is generally used in English; but compare “we are seven.”

Note 5.—Instead of the genitive, the prepositions *ex*, *de*, *in*, or *inter* are sometimes used: as, *melior ex duōbus*; *aliquis de hērēdibus*; *sapientissimus in septem*. *Unus* is generally construed with *ex* or *de* and the ablative.

Note 6.—The genitive of the whole after neuter adjectives or pronouns or *nihil*, is often an adjective of the second declension, standing as a noun: as, *aliquid pulchri*; *nihil boni*. Adjectives of the third declension are

not used in this way (unless rarely in connection with adjectives of the second), many of them having the same form in the genitive as in the nominative masculine and feminine.

Note 7.—The poets and later prose-writers use frequently the neuter plural of adjectives and participles with a defining genitive: as, *strāta viārum* = *strātae viae*.

Genitive of Definition.

5. The **genitive of definition** generally corresponds to an appositive in English:

As, *Būthrōti urbs*, the city of *Buthrōtum*; *virtus justitiae*, the virtue of justice; *arbor fīci*, the fig-tree; *sprētae injūria formae*, the injury of slighting her beauty.

Genitive of Material.

6. The genitive may denote the **substance or material**: as, *flūmina lactis*, rivers of milk. But seeming cases of this kind may often be referred to other rules. The material is more frequently denoted by an adjective, or by an ablative (generally with *ex*) after a verb or participle.

Genitive after Prepositional Nouns, etc.

7. The nouns *causā* and *gratiā*, for the sake of, also *ergō* (in old writers) on account of, and *instar*, as large as, like, old nouns used like prepositions or adverbially, govern the genitive: as, *hominum causā*, for the sake of mankind; *virtūtis ergō*, on account of manliness; *Plato sōlus instar omnium est*, Plato alone is equal to them all; *instar montis equus*, a horse like a mountain.

1. *Prīdiē*, the day before; *postrīdiē*, the day after; *tenus* (with the plural), as far as, and *clam*, without the knowledge of, may govern the genitive.

134. GENITIVE OF QUALITY OR DESCRIPTION.

Nouns indicating a quality, or describing the limited noun, are put in the genitive, with an adjective agreeing with them:

As, *juvenis mītis ingenii*, a youth of mild disposition; *puer sēdecim annōrum*, a boy of sixteen; *non multi cibi hospitem accipies, sed multi joci*, you will receive a guest who is not a great eater but a great joker.

Note 1.—The descriptive noun and adjective are more frequently in the ablative. The genitive seems to be preferred to describe the *general* nature and kind of the subject, or *permanent* qualities; the ablative to denote *particular* or *transient* qualities and circumstances: *sēcūri animi es*, you are free from anxiety always; *bono animo sum*, I am of good cheer in the present

circumstances. But there are many exceptions to this rule. The requisites for a thing, and all ideas of measure are expressed by the genitive: as, *res magni labōris*; *fossa centum pedum*; parts of the body by the ablative: as, *quā facie fuit?* *magno capite, ore rubicundo.*

Note 2.—*Ejus modi, cujus modi,* and the like, are genitives of quality, in meaning equivalent to *tāles, quāles.*

135. GENITIVE AS A PREDICATE.

The genitive in the predicate after *sum* denotes *property, characteristic, part, lot, office, or duty*:

As, *omnia hostium erant, all things belonged to the enemy; cujusvis hominis est errāre, it is the lot of every man to err; hoc est praeceptōris, this is the business of the teacher; mōris est Graecōrum, it belongs to the custom of the Greeks (or simply, it is the custom, etc.); stultitiae est, it is a mark of folly.*

1. The genitive of property or possession may be used in the predicate with *fīo*: as, *omnia quae mulieris fuērunt, viri fīunt, dōtis nōmine.*

2. The genitives *lucri, compendi, and diciōnis* are found in the predicate after *facio* or *fīo*.

136. OBJECTIVE GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives are followed by a genitive denoting the object to which the quality they express is directed.

1. Adjectives in *ax* formed from transitive verbs, and present participles used adjectively, govern the genitive: as, *tenax prōpositi, tenacious of purpose; vēritātis dīligens, fond of the truth; amantior domini.*

2. Adjectives govern the genitive which signify desire, knowledge, care, memory, mastery, participation, fulness, guilt, and their contraries: as, *avidus glōriae, eager for glory; belli perītus, skilled in war; ignāra mali, unacquainted with evil; prōvida ūtilitātum, providing for advantages; memor virtūtis, mindful of virtue; impotens sui, without self-control; ratiōnis particeps, sharing in reason; plēnus rīmārum, full of chinks; inops hūmānitātis, destitute of culture; rei capitālis reus, guilty of a capital crime.*

3. Many of these adjectives are found sometimes in a different construction; as with the ablative, with or without a preposition; with the accusative, especially with *ad* or *in*; with the dative; and with an infinitive or subjunctive clause: as, *rudis in jūre cīvili; arte rudis; ad rem avidior; potens in res bellicas; cuncta pollens; facinori mens conscia; certus ire; memor quam sis aevi brevis.*

4. The genitive after an adjective or participle sometimes denotes a cause or source, especially in the poets: as, *fessus viae*, *weary of the way*; *nōtus in frātres animi paterni*, *well-known for his father-like affection for his brothers*.

5. The genitive of the respect in which is used freely by the poets: as, *integer vītae scelerisque pūrus*, *upright in life and free of crime*.

6. The genitive *animi* as the seat of feeling, after adjectives and verbs, is strictly locative: as, *aeger animi*, *sick at heart*.

7. The genitive can sometimes be explained by the adjective's standing for a noun. For the genitive after *similis*, *dissimilis*, etc., see § 162, 4.

137. GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

1. **Memini** and **reminiscor**, *I remember*, and **oblīviscor**, *I forget*, take an objective genitive:

As, *vīvōrum memini*, *nec tamen Epicūri licet oblīvisci*, *I remember the living, and yet I am not allowed to forget Epicūrus*.

2. **Recordor**, *I bethink myself of*, takes the genitive rarely in the best writers, more frequently in later Latin. It is generally found with the accusative, sometimes with the ablative (of persons) with **de**.

Exc.—Verbs of remembering and forgetting often take an accusative, when they denote to have a thing in the memory, or the reverse: as, *Antipatrum Sīdōnium tu probē meministi*, *you remember well Antipater of Sidon*.

Note.—The phrase *venit mihi in mentem* may be construed impersonally with a genitive: as, *venit mihi in mentem Platōnis*, *Plato occurs to me*. It is also used personally.

138. **Misereor** and **miseresco**, *I pity*, take an objective genitive: as, *miserēre sorōris*, *pity thy sister*.

139. ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE.

1. Verbs of reminding take an accusative of the person and a genitive of the thing:

As, *Catīlīna admonēbat alium egestātis alium cupiditātis suae*, *Catiline kept putting one in mind of his poverty, another of his desire*.

Note.—Instead of the genitive of the thing, **admoneo** may take the accusative of a pronoun or neuter adjective, or the ablative with **de**.

2. **Misēret**, **paenitet**, **piget**, **pudet**, **taedet**, and **pertae-sum est** take an accusative of the person who feels and a genitive of the cause or respect:

As, *me stultitiae meae pudet*, *I am ashamed of my folly*.

140. Verbs of *accusing, condemning, and acquitting*, take an **accusative of the person** and a **genitive of the crime**:

As, *accūsāre aliquem furti*, to charge one with theft; *majestātis absolvuntur*, they get acquitted of treason; *damnāri repetundārum*, to be condemned of extortion.

1. The crime is sometimes in the ablative with *de*; or *crimine, nomine, or iudicio*, with the genitive may be used.

2. With *damno* and *condemno*, the punishment is put in the genitive or ablative:

As, *damnāri capitis* or *capite*.

For a definite penalty, if money or land, the **ablative** is always used:

As, *damnāri decem millibus*; *damnāri tertiā parte agri*; and so always with the verb *multo*.

Note.—*Damnāri ad bestias* means to be condemned to be thrown to the wild beasts; in *metalla*, to the mines; *vōti damnāri*, to be bound to fulfil a vow; hence *vōti damnātus* or *vōti reus* means *successful*.

141. *Impleo, repleo, and compleo*, and sometimes in the poets *expleo*, verbs signifying to *fill*, may take in addition to the accusative a **genitive**, though more commonly an **ablative**.

142. GENITIVE AFTER REFERT AND INTEREST.

1. *Rēfert* and *interest* may take the genitive of the **person** to whom anything is of interest or importance:

As, *intererat Clōdii Milōnem perīre*, it was important for Clodius that Milo should die.

2. Instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, the possessives *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*, are used.

3. The thing of interest or importance may be expressed by a neuter pronoun, but is usually denoted by an **accusative** with an **infinitive**, or by *ut* or the **interrogative particles** with a **subjunctive**:

As, *hoc meā interest*; *multum meā interest te esse dīligentem*, or *ut dīligens sis*, or (*utrum*) *dīligens sis necne*.

4. The **accusative** with *ad* is used to denote the end for which the matter is important: as, *magni ad honōrem nostrum interest, quam primum ad urbem me venīre*, it is of great importance for my honor that I should come to the city as soon as possible.

143. SPECIAL USES OF THE GENITIVE.

Egeo sometimes, and **indigeo** frequently, take the genitive ; but verbs of *wanting* commonly take the ablative.

Note.—Both the genitive and ablative after such verbs are cases of specification of the respect in which.

144. **Sătăgo** (sat ago) takes a genitive defining the indeclinable adjective sat.

145. Poets, and later prose writers, sometimes use a genitive of *definition* or *respect* after many verbs regularly construed with other cases :

As, **regnāvit populōrum** ; **sēpositi ciceris invīdit** ; **dēcipitur labōrum**.

1. The poetical genitive sometimes denotes *cause* : as, **sunt lacrimae rērum**, *there are tears for human fortune* ; **justitiae aliquem mīrārī**, *to admire one for his justice* ; **fēlīcem cerebri**, *happy in your hot temper*.

2. The genitive after verbs of *separation* is similar to the genitive in Greek : as, **abstinēto īrārūm** ; **dēsine querēlārūm**.

3. **Potior**, both in the sense of *to make oneself master of* and *to be master of*, is often found with the genitive. Plautus sometimes uses **potior** with the genitive in the sense of *fall into the hands of*.

146. GENITIVE OF VALUE.

Sum and verbs of *valuing* take the genitive of the degree of estimation :

As, **dīvitias minōris aestimāre dēbēmus quam virtūtem**, *we ought to set a lower value on riches than on virtue* ; **parvi sunt foris arma** ; **ager nunc plūris est quam tunc fuit** ; **tanti est**, *it is worth while*.

1.—*a.* Such genitives are **magni, plūris, plūrimi, maximi, parvi, minōris, minimi, tanti, quanti, nihili**. So also **floci, nauci, pensi, pili, assis, terunci, hujus** : as, **non hujus facio**, *I don't care THAT for it*.

b. Such verbs are **puto, dūco, aestimo, existimo, pendo, facio, fīo, habeo, taxo** ; and **sum**, in the sense of *being of a value*.

c. **Aestimo** may take either the genitive or ablative.

2. The genitives **boni, aequi boni, aequi bonīque**, with **facio**, and **boni, optimi**, with **consulo**, may be classed with genitives of value.

147. GENITIVE OR ABLATIVE WITH VERBS OF BUYING AND SELLING.

1. Verbs of *buying* and *selling* take the genitives **tanti, quanti, plūris, maximi**, and **minōris** :

As, *quanti or̄za empta? parvo; for how much was the rice bought? At a small price.*

2. So with the genitives *tantīdem, quantīvis, quantīcunque.*

3. But such verbs take the ablatives *magno, permagno, plūrimo, parvo, minimo, nihilo, nonnihilo, tantulo.*

148. LOCATIVE OF NAMES OF TOWNS, ETC.

1. Names of *towns and small islands* in which anything is said to be or be done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, are put in the genitive; if of the plural number or third declension, they are put in the ablative:

As, *Corinθi pueros docēbat, he used to teach boys at Corinth; Smyrnae, at Smyrna; Carthāgine, at Carthage; Athēnis, at Athens; Trallibus, at Tralles.*

Note.—These constructions owe their origin to the old locative termination *i*. The genitive of the first declension once ended in *i*, as *Rōmāi*; that of the second has the locative termination. Even in the third declension forms in *i* are often preferred for the locative; as, *Carthāgini, at Carthage.* For other expressions of the place where, see § 183.

2. *Domi, at home; belli, at war; militiæ, on military service; humi, on the ground,* are locative genitives.

3. Other locatives are *vicīniæ* (Plautus and Terence), *in the neighborhood*; and *animi* (plural *animis*), *in mind*, especially in certain expressions of doubt or anxiety. (Compare § 136, 6.)

149. DATIVE.

The dative denotes the person or thing, to or for which anything is or is done. It marks the person affected or interested, and generally implies advantage or disadvantage.

1. As denoting that with reference to which the subject acts, or in reference to which it possesses a quality, it is called the case of the *remoter* object.

2. The dative of advantage is often called the *dativus commōdi*.

3. There are some uses of *to* and *for* in English, which cannot be expressed by the dative, but require a preposition; thus *to*, after words of actual motion, is often to be translated by *ad* or *in*; and *for*, meaning *in behalf of* or *in defence of*, by *pro*.

150. ACCUSATIVE AND DATIVE.

Transitive verbs govern the **accusative** and **dative** when, together with the object of the action, there is expressed the person or thing *to* or *for which*, or *with reference to which*, it is done :

As, *dedi puero librum*, *I gave the boy a book*; *trādo prōvinciam succēs-sōri*; *mōrem tibi gero*; *nullum locum relīquit precibus*.

1. This dative stands also with the passive: as, *liber puero datus est*, *the book was given to the boy*.

151. Many verbs of *taking away*, *defending*, and *protecting from*, most of which are compounds of **ab**, **de**, or **ex**, are found often with the accusative and dative :

As, *solstitium pecori dēfendite*, *ward off the heat from the flock*; *ēlābor frātri*; *Caesar Ambiorigi auxilia dētraxit*; *oestrum arcēbis pecori*.

Note.—The dative in these cases is one of **advantage** or **disadvantage**. The ablative, with or without a preposition, is more frequently found in prose. But while the ablative marks simply separation, the dative intimates that the person or thing is harmed or benefited. There is a delicate elegance in this use of the dative, which makes it a favorite construction in the poets. A similar use of the dative is seen in German writers.

152. ACCUSATIVE AND DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

Some verbs have two constructions, taking sometimes an object-accusative and the dative of the person or thing affected, and sometimes the accusative of the thing affected and the ablative of the means: as, *urbi circum-dedit mūrū* (literally, he put a wall around, for the city), or *urbem circumdedit mūro*, *he surrounded the city with a wall*; *dōno tibi mūnus*, or *dōno te mūnere*. So also *adspargo*, *induo*, *exuo*, *impertio*, *inūro*, *misceo*, *circumfundo*, and other verbs.

153. DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

Many intransitive verbs, such as those which denote *benefiting*, *injuring*, *pleasing*, and others, take a dative of the person or thing affected :

As, *Fortūna favet fortibus*, *Fortune favors the brave*; *nēmīni noceas*, *harm no man*; *mihi placebat Pompōnius*, *Pomponius was pleasing to me*; *mundus deo pāret*, *the world pays obedience to God*; *sibi fīdit*, *he trusts himself*; *Irascitur inimīcis*, *he is angry with his enemies*; *omnibus bonis*



expedit salvam esse rempublicam, it is for the advantage of all good men that the Commonwealth should be safe.

1. The principal verbs of this kind are, *a. prōsum, auxiliō, adminiculor, opitulor, patrōcinor, subvenio, succurro, medeor; noceo, obsum, dēsum, officio, incommodo, insulto, insidior; placeo, arrīdeo, displiceo; faveo, grātificor, indulgeo, ignosco, studeo, pareo, adūlor, blandior, lēnōcinor, palpor, assentior, assentor, respondeo; adversor, refrāgor, obsto, renītor, repugno, resisto, invideo, aemulor, obtrecto, convīciōr, maledīco; impero (also transitive), pāreo, cēdo, ausculto, obēdio, obsequor, obtempero, mōrigeror (mōrem gero), alicui dicto audiens sum, servio, inservio, ministro, famulor, ancillor, praestōlor; crēdo (also transitive), fīdo, confīdo, diffīdo; immineo, propinquo, appropinquo, impendeo, occurro; minor, comminor (both also transitive), trāscor, stomachor, succenseo.*

b. Also the impersonals, condūcit, contingit, convēnit, expēdit, dolet, libet, licet.

2.—*a.* Some verbs of this kind are rendered in English by transitive verbs; but a strictly exact translation, in accordance with their etymology, would show that they are intransitive. Thus *suādēre, to persuade*, is literally *to be sweet to*; *nūbere, to marry* (said of the female), means *to put on the veil for*.

b. Some verbs are transitive in Latin, while from their English translation they would appear to belong to this class; as, *dēlecto, juvo, adjuvo, adjūto, laedo, offendo, jubeo*, and others.

3. Intransitive verbs governing a dative are often used impersonally in the passive with the same case: as, *mihi invidētur, I am envied; mihi nunquam persuādēri potuit, I never could be persuaded*. We cannot say *invideor, persuādeor*, etc.

4. Some of the verbs which, as intransitive, govern a dative, may become stronger and take an accusative; or they may take a preposition and its case, or a dependent clause. The classical writers themselves, and the lexicons, will furnish examples.

5. The poetic dative of the place whither is a bold extension of the dative of influence: as, *it clāmor caelo, a shout reaches the sky*.

6. In the poets and the later prose writers the dative is more frequent than in the best classical prose. *Haerēre, jungere, miscēre* are among the verbs which sometimes take a dative in such writers.

7. *Certo, dēcerto, contendo*, and *luctor* are often used by the poets with the dative.

154. DATIVE AFTER VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS, ETC.

Many verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub, and super*, take the dative:

As, *omnibus antestāre*, to surpass all; *interfuit pugnae*, he was engaged in the battle; *miseris succurrere disco*, I learn to aid the wretched.

1. Transitive verbs take also an accusative. (See § 150.)

2. If a local relation is clearly designed, the preposition is commonly repeated with its proper case: as, *adhaeret nāvis ad scopulum*; *Ajax incubuit in gladium*; *incurrere in hostes*.

3. The compounds of *cum* (con, com) usually repeat the preposition, but not always.

4. Some verbs never repeat the preposition; with some a different preposition is used, as *obrepere in animum*. The facts in each case can be learned from observation of the usage of classical writers, and by consulting the lexicons.

155. Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, govern the dative: as, *pulcrum est benefacere reipublicae*.

156. DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR.

The verb *esse*, to be, is construed with a dative of the possessor:

As, *est mihi liber*, I have a book.

This is a form of the dative of advantage or disadvantage.

1.—*a*. In such expressions as *est mihi nōmen* the name is generally put by attraction in the dative:

As, *est mihi nōmen Balbo*, my name is Balbus.

b. The nominative, however, is sometimes found, and, more rarely, the genitive:

As, *ei morbo nōmen est avāritia*; *Q. Metello Macedonici nōmen inditum est*.

2. The construction of a dative with a participle agreeing with it, after *esse*, is imitated from the Greek: as, *quibus bellum volentibus erat*, those who wished for war; *mihi volenti est*, it is agreeable to my wish (properly, is related to me as wishing it).

157. DATIVE OF THE AGENT.

1. The gerundive, and sometimes passive verbs, take a "dative of the agent," as the person to whom the action relates or is of interest:

As, *proelia conjugibus loquenda*, battles for wives to talk about; *quid-*

quid mihi susceptum est, whatever has been undertaken by me (as far as I am concerned); *non intellegor ulli* (Ovid), I am not understood by any one (I do not make myself intelligible to any one).

Note.—In good prose, the dative of the agent with passive verbs is rare, and seldom found except with the compound tenses.

2. When the verb itself governs the dative, the gerundive may take the ablative with *ab*: as, *cōvibus est a vōbis consulendum*; but two datives are sometimes found, where no ambiguity arises from their use.

3. Verbal adjectives in *-bīlis* take a dative: as, *multis flēbilis*, bewailed by many (literally, to many an object of lamentation).

158. DATIVE LIMITING THE WHOLE PREDICATE.

A whole proposition is sometimes qualified by a dative, where a single noun might have been qualified by a genitive or a preposition:

As, *is fīnis populātiōnibus fuit*, that was the end for the raiding parties; *puero dormienti caput arsisse ferunt*.

1. English idiom often compels us to translate this dative as a genitive: as, *sēse omnes flentes Caesari ad pedes projēcērunt*, they all threw themselves weeping at Caesar's feet.

2. The dative sometimes specifies the relation in which one person stands to another: as, *M' Mānīlio consuli tribūnus*, tribune under Manius Manilius; *hēres est frātri suo*, he is heir to his brother.

3. *Facio* and *fīo*, with the accusatives *quid* and *idem*, take the dative of the person or thing affected: as, *quid facies huic*, what will you do with this man? *quid mihi futūrum est*, what will become of me? But *de* with the ablative, and the ablative alone, are also used.

4. The dative of a participle is occasionally used to denote time or circumstances:

As, *sita Anticyra est laevā parte sinum intransantibus*, Anticyra lies on the left as you sail in (lit. to those sailing in); *in ūniversum aestimanti, plus penes peditem rōboris*, looking at it on the whole, their chief strength is in the infantry (lit. to one looking at it).

159. ETHICAL DATIVE.

A slight reference to a person, as interested in the matter in hand, is sometimes made by the dative of a personal pronoun:

As, *quid mihi Celsus agit?* how is my Celsus? *Haec vōbis illōrum per bīduum mīlitia fuit*, this, you see, was their two-days' campaigning. *Hem Dāvum tibi*, see, here's Davus. A similar construction is found in Shakespeare; and in French and German writers.

160. DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE AFTER VERBS.

1. Some verbs may take an objective accusative, or a dative of interest, with a different meaning :

As, *metuo aliquem*, I fear some one ; *metuo alicui*, I am anxious for some one ; *caveo aliquem*, I am on my guard against some one ; *caveo alicui*, I look out for some one's interests.

Such verbs are *metuo*, *timeo*, *caveo*, *consulo*, *prōspicio*, *prōvideo*, *moderor*, *tempero*.

2. A few verbs take either the accusative or dative without marked difference in signification : as, *adūlor*, *aemulor*, *comitor*, *dēspēro*, *praestōlor*.

161. TWO DATIVES.

1. *Esse* and certain other verbs sometimes take two datives, one of the person or thing affected, the other of the end served or the result :

As, *cui bono fuit ?* *whom did it benefit ?* *exitio est mare nautis*, the sea brings destruction to sailors.

2. Besides *esse*, the verbs most frequent in this construction are *habēre*, *dūcere*, *dare*, *vertere* : as, *Q. Metello laudi datum est*.

3. Some other verbs, especially verbs of motion, are so construed with *auxilio*, *praesidio*, *subsidio* : as, *equitātum auxilio Caesari mīserant* ; *quinque cohortes castris praesidio relinquit*.

4. Sometimes the dative of the person or thing affected is not expressed : as, *omnia deerant quae ad reficiendas nāves erant ūsui*.

162. DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives which in English take TO or FOR after them, are generally followed by the dative :

As, *cīvis ūtilis reipublicae*, a citizen useful to the state ; *res tibi facilis*, *cēteris difficilis*, a thing easy for thee, hard for the others.

2. Such are adjectives denoting advantage or disadvantage, ease or difficulty, friendliness or unfriendliness, similarity, nearness, and the like.

3. Some such adjectives are frequently used as nouns, with the genitive : as, *amīcus*, *aequālis*, *affinis*, *aliēnus*, *proprius*, *sacer*, *superstes*, etc.

4. *Similis*, *consimilis*, *adsimilis*, and *dissimilis*, are put both with the genitive and the dative ; in the earlier writers, almost always with the genitive of the names of gods and men.

5. *Aptus*, *habilis*, *idōneus*, *accommodātus*, instead of the dative, have

often *ad* with the accusative. Adjectives meaning **friendly** or **hostile**, sometimes take the prepositions **in**, **erga**, or **adversus**, instead of the dative. **Aliēnus** may take the **ablative**, with or without **ab**.

6. **Propior** and **proximus** have generally the dative, but sometimes the **accusative**, or the **ablative** with **ab**. The adverb **propius**, **proxime**, takes the **accusative**, more rarely the dative.

7. The poets sometimes use the dative after **idem** (in any case but the **nominative**), instead of **atque** with the **nominative**: as, **idem facit occidenti**, *he does the same as he who kills him*.

163. DATIVE AFTER PARTICLES AND NOUNS.

The dative is used with the adverbs **convenienter**, **congruenter**, **constanter**, **obsequenter**, **obviam**, **ūtiliter**, and the interjections **hei** and **vae**.

164. Verbal nouns govern the dative in a few instances: as, **obtemperatio lēgibus**; **remedia morbis**.

ABLATIVE.

165. The **ablative** is the case of **separation** or **departure**, and **source**. It also serves as an **instrumental** and a **locative** case, under the latter head including **respect**, **manner**, **condition**, and **quality**, as well as **time** and **place**.

166. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, AND INSTRUMENT.

The **ablative** after verbs, participles, or adjectives may denote the **cause**, **manner**, **means**, or **instrument**:

As, **ardēre studio**, *to burn with zeal*; **ratiōne voluptatem sequi**, *to follow pleasure in a rational manner*; **mōribus conciliandus amor**, *love must be won by character*; **cornibus tauri se tūtantur**, *bulls defend themselves with their horns*; **Britanni lacte et carne vivēbant**, *the Britons lived on milk and flesh*; **nātūram expellere furcā**, *to drive nature out with a pitchfork*.

1. The **ablative** of **manner** is regularly accompanied by an adjective, a pronoun, or a participle, or by the preposition **cum**; but a few words, such as **modus**, **mos**, **ratio**, **rītus**, and **consuētūdo** are used in the **ablative** without this accompaniment.

2. The **ablative** of **manner** denotes the **way in which** or the **circumstances under which** a thing is done.

3. Even with an adjective, the preposition **cum** is sometimes used, particularizing the concomitant: as, **magno cum studio aderat**, i. e., *he was present, and displayed great zeal*.

4. The **ablative** may denote **that in accordance with which** anything is

or is done : as, *meo jūdicio, in my opinion ; institūto suo, in accordance with his practice.*

5. Accompaniment is generally denoted by the preposition *cum* : as, *vagāmur cum conjugibus et liberis, we wander with our wives and children.* But in words denoting military and naval forces, we generally have the ablative of instrument, without a preposition, when an adjective is used : as, *ad castra omnibus cōpiis contendērunt.*

6. *Junctus, conjunctus, implicatus, admixtus,* may take the ablative.

167. ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN VERBS, ETC.

Ūtor, abūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor take the ablative :

As, *quousque tandem, Catilīna, abūtēre patientiā nostrā ? officio, mūnere, honōribus fungi ; carne vescor ; oppido potitur.*

1. These are ablatives of means or instrument or of source.

2. In older Latin the accusative is sometimes found with these verbs. Hence they retain the gerundive : as, *vīta data est ūtenda ; spes potiundōrum castrōrum.* *Potior* often takes the genitive.

3. The idiomatic uses of *ūtor* deserve notice : as, *valetūdine ūtor non bonā, I have poor health ; ūtebātur intime Hortensio, he was on intimate terms with Hortensius ; ūsus eram silentio, I had kept silence ; fortunā ūti, to try one's fortune ; facili me ūtētur patre, he shall find in me an indulgent father.*

168. The verbs *laetor, exsulto, gaudeo ; dēlector, glōrior ; labōro, doleo ; valeo, flōreo ; excello, praesto, supero ; fīdo, confīdo, nītor* ; and the adjectives *laetus, contentus, praeditus, frētus*, take an ablative of cause or means. *Dignor* takes an ablative of respect or price.

169. The ablative is put with various verbs to denote that with which the action is performed, or to specify in what it is manifested : as, *culter mānat cruōre, the knife is dripping with blood ; pluit lapidibus ; sanguine sūdāre ; augēre aliquem scientiā ; afficere aliquem honōre, ignōminia, etc. ; aliquem pūro sermōne adsuēfacere ; homines labōre adsuēti.*

1. These may be regarded as free exemplifications of the ablatives of means or instrument and specification.

2. Transitive verbs meaning to fill, to furnish with, and some others, govern the accusative and ablative.

170. Verbs of fulness and want take the ablative : as, *Germānia abundat flūminibus ; caret oculis.* (But see § 143.)

171. OPUS AND USUS.

Opus est, used impersonally, takes the dative of the person needing, and the ablative of the thing needed ; it can also be construed personally : as, *duce nōbis opus est, we have need of a leader ; or dux nōbis opus est.*

1. *Usus est*, *there is occasion*, with the ablative, is sometimes found : as, *nunc viribus ūsus*.

2. *Opus est* can be followed by an infinitive, or an acc. with the infin.

172. ABLATIVE OF THE MATERIAL.

Verbs and participles signifying **consisting** or **being made of**, take the ablative : as, *agri constant campis, vineis, silvis*, (Plin. Ep.). But prepositions are often used ; Cicero always has **ex** with **constare** in this sense.

173. VOLUNTARY AGENT.

1. The voluntary agent of a verb in the passive voice is put in the ablative with **a** or **ab** :

As, *mundus a deo administrātur*.

Note.—The voluntary agent is a living person ; the involuntary agent is properly called the instrument, and is put in the ablative without a preposition : as, *Hector ab Achille caesus est*, *Hector was slain by Achilles* ; *Hector tēlo caesus est*, *Hector was slain by a spear*.

2. Neuter verbs, also, are sometimes followed by an ablative of the voluntary agent with **a** or **ab** : as, *periit ab Annibale*, *he died at the hands of Hannibal*.

3. If the involuntary agent is personified, it takes the preposition : as, *animus ab ignāvia corruptus*.

4. The voluntary agent is sometimes found in the ablative without **ab**. In such cases, the idea of personality is thrown in the background, and the agents appear as the mere instruments of the action : as, *servi agrestes ac barbari, quibus Etrūriam vexārat*.

174. ABLATIVE AFTER COMPARATIVES.

The comparative degree is followed by the ablative, when *quam*, *than*, is omitted :

As, *Tullus Hostilius ferocior Rōmulo fuit ; lacrimā nihil citius ārescit*.

1. After **plus**, **minus**, **amplius**, and **longius** (but rarely after other adverbs in prose), *quam* is often omitted without influence on the construction : as, *spatium nōn amplius pedum sexcentōrum*.

2. It is a rare license to put the ablative after the comparative when the latter stands in any other case than the nominative and accusative : as, *pāne egeo, jam mellītis potiōre placentis*.

3. The poets use this ablative of distinction also with **alius** : as, *ne pūtes alium sapiente bonōque beātum*.

4. The ablatives *aequo, justo, dicto, solito, spe, opīniōne, necessariō,* follow comparatives: *as, Caesar opīniōne omnium celerius ventūrus est.*

5. The ablative after the comparative is sometimes omitted; the adjective or adverb may then be translated with *quite, too, rather*:

As, liberius vivēbat, he lived too freely; res graviōres, matters of unusual importance. (See § 53, 1.)

175. ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

A noun and an adjective are put in the ablative of quality or description:

As, Mūrēna, vir mediocri ingenio; or, Mūrēna mediocri ingenio fuit, Mūrēna was a man of moderate ability. (See § 134, Note 1.)

176. ABLATIVE OF THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE.

The degree of difference between objects compared is expressed by the ablative:

As, sōl multis partibus major atque amplior est quam terra.

The ablatives *multo, parvo, quo, quanto, eo, and tanto* are frequently used to denote the degree of difference: *as, eo gravior dolor quo culpa major, the pain is heavier in proportion as the fault is greater.*

177. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION.

The ablative denotes that of which a person or thing is deprived, or from which it is separated:

As, spoliāre hominem fortūnis, to rob a man of his fortunes: arcēre tyrannum reditu, to bar the tyrant from return; abstinēre scelere, to keep from crime.

1. But the verbs which signify *to abstain, to hinder, to exclude*, are also used with *ab*: *as, prohibēre hostem a pugnā.* When a person is specified, the preposition is always used.

2. The poets, in imitation of a Greek idiom, have the genitive with a few such verbs: *as, solūtus operum, freed from work. (See § 145, 2.)* For the dative, see § 151. Compounds with *dis-* take the dative in poetry.

3. Verbs denoting *to drive a person or thing from or out of the place where it is*, sometimes take the ablative alone, but usually with *ab, ex, or de*:

As, dēpellere hostem loco or e loco.

4. *Cēdo* and its compounds often take the ablative without a preposition; so also *abeo*, used of resigning an office.

178. ABLATIVE OF SOURCE.

Perfect participles denoting origin are followed by the ablative of the source:

As, *Mercūrius Jove et Maiā nātus erat; equestri loco ortus.*

1. Such participles are *nātus*, *ortus*, *genitus*, *satus*, *ēditus*.
2. With the parents, *ex* and *de* are also used.
3. More remote ancestry is indicated by *ortus ab*: as, *Belgae orti sunt a Germānis; Cato Uticensis a Censōrio ortus erat.*

179. ABLATIVE OF PRICE.

The price or value is put in the ablative:

As, *hunc librum parvo pretio ēmi; multōrum sanguine et vulneribus ea victōria Poenis stetit; asse cārum est, it's dear at a penny.*

1. To this rule belong the ablatives *magno*, *plūrimo*, *parvo*, *minimo*, *nihilo*, with verbs of buying and selling: as, *hunc librum plūrimo ēmi.* For the genitive with such words, see § 147. *Bene*, *male* are also used.

2. *Dignus* and *indignus* take the ablative of the thing of which anything is worthy or unworthy:

As, *virtus imitātiōne digna est; quam multi lūce indigni sunt!*

The genitive is found rarely.

3. *Mūtāre*, *commūtāre*, *permūtāre*, and *vertere*, *to exchange*, take either an accusative of the thing parted with, and an ablative of the thing taken: as, *mūtāre pācem bello, to exchange peace for war*, i. e., *to go to war*; or, especially in poetry, an accusative of the thing taken, and an ablative of the thing parted with: as, *permūtāre otio dīvitias, to take wealth in exchange for ease.*

4. The penalty is sometimes in the ablative: as, *capite damnātus, condemned to death (to lose his head).*

180. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

An ablative may be joined to nouns or adjectives to denote in what respect their signification is taken:

As, *nōmine grammaticus, rē barbarus, in name a grammarian, in fact a barbarian; claudus altero pede, lame of one foot; captus oculis.*

181. ABLATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

Some adjectives denoting abundance, want, or exemption, take the ablative:

As, *dīves agris*; *orbis rēbus omnibus*; *līber cūrā*.

1. Some adjectives of this kind take a genitive or the preposition *ab*.

2. The word *macte* takes the ablative of the thing on account of which a man is pronounced happy: as, *macte virtūte*. (Originally, an ablative of the means with which one was honored.)

3. The ablative after many adjectives is explained by the general rules given in preceding sections.

182. ABLATIVE OF PLACE WHENCE.

1. The ablative of place whence, if a town or small island, or *domo*, *rure*, *humo*, is used without a preposition:

As, *redīre Athēnis*, *Tībure*, *rūre*, *to return from Athens, Tibur, or the country*.

2. But the prepositions *ab*, *de*, *ex*, are sometimes used.

3. The ablative of place whence may be used in dating letters: as, *dat. iiii. kal. Jūnias Thessalonīcā*, *written the 29th of May, from Thessalonica*; *ego ūnas Capuā litteras dedi*, *I have written once from Capua*.

4. Native place is sometimes expressed by this ablative: as, *Gn. Magius Cremōnā*, *Gnaeus Magius of Cremona*. More usually an adjective is used, as *Cremōnensis*; sometimes *ab*, as *Turnus Herdonius ab Arīciā*.

5. The name of the tribe is added in the ablative to that of a Roman citizen, in inscriptions: as, *Ser. Sulpicius Q. F. Lemoniā Rūfus*, *Servius Sulpicius Rufus, son of Quintus, of the Lemonian tribe*.

183. ABLATIVE OF PLACE WHERE.

1. The ablative of place where, except in the names of towns and small islands, generally takes in:

As, *in portu nāvigo*, *I am sailing in the harbor*.

2. The preposition is omitted in certain phrases: *a. loco*, *multis locis*, *plūribus locis*, etc.; *hoc libro*, *alio libro*, etc.; *terrā*, *mari*; *dextrā* (*parte*), *on the right hand*; *laevā*, *sinistrā*, *on the left hand*; *mediā urbe*, *in the middle of the city*; *medio aedium*, *in the middle of the house*; *b. with the adjective tōtus*: as, *tōtā Asiā*, *throughout Asia*; *c. with se tenēre*, *se continēre*: as, *Pompēius se oppido tenet*, *Pompēius keeps in the town*.

3. The poets omit the preposition more freely: *as, silvisque agrisque viisque corpora foeda jacent, in forests and fields and roads lie revolting corpses.*

4. But many apparent ablatives of place may be explained as ablatives of means, cause, etc.

5. When a work is quoted, *in* is used: *as, in Iliade Homēri*; but when the author only is cited, *apud*: *as, apud Homērum, in Homer.*

6. For the ablative of names of towns, see § 148.

a. Prepositions are much used (1) with names of towns: *as, in Epheso est; in Ephesum abii*; *has litteras a Brundisio dedi.* So *ad* (*at or near*) and *apud*. (2) With *humus, domus*, and *rus*: *as, in domo Periclis.*

b. *Usque* is joined with names of places, with or without a preposition: *as, ab Aethiopiā usque, as far as from Aethiopia*; *usque Ennam, as far as Enna.*

184. ABLATIVE OF ROUTE.

The road by which is denoted by the ablative without a preposition: *as, ire viā Sacrā, to walk on the Sacred Road*; *ingredi urbem portā Esquilinā, to enter the city by the Esquiline gate*; *tendimus hinc rectā Beneventum* (sc. *viā*).

185. ABLATIVE OF TIME.

The ablative denotes time when and time within which:

As, hieme, in winter; *hōrā quartā, at the fourth hour* (ten o'clock); *Kalendis Jānuāriis, on the first of January*; *biennio, within two years*; *paucis diēbus, within a few days*; *tribus hōris Aduātucam venīre potestis.*

1. Recurring games, meetings, or festivals, in the ablative may denote the time when: *as, comitiis, at the elections*; *gladiātōribus, at the gladiators' show*; *Liberālibus, at the feast of Liber.*

2. Rarer idioms are *serēno, in a calm*; *austro, in a south wind*; and the like.

3. *Interdiu, noctu, mātne* (*māni*), *lūci, vesperi, heri, temperi, prīdie, postrīdie, quotīdie, crastini die*, represent old locatives.

4. The preposition used to define time when is chiefly *de*, *beginning from, ere the close of, during*: *as, multā de nocte, long before night ended.* *In* is sometimes used to express time within which; so also *intra*.

5. The ablative of time within which is sometimes emphatically defined by the pronouns *hic* or *ille*: *as, hoc triennio, within the next* (or *the last*) *three years*; the tense determining whether *hic* refers to future or past time.

6. *Post* is also used in answering the question *how soon?* *ante* in telling

how long ago: *as, paucis post diēbus, paucos post dies, or post paucos dies, within the next few days; paucis ante diēbus, paucos ante dies, or ante paucos dies, a few days ago.* We also have *abhinc* with the accusative or ablative: *as, abhinc triennium (or triennio) huc commigrāvit, she came here three years ago.*

7. *I saw him three days before he died* may be rendered in any of the following ways: *vīdi eum tribus diēbus (or trīduo) antequam mortuus est; v. e. tertio die antequam m. e.; v. e. ante tres dies (or ante trīduum) quam m. e.; v. e. ante tertium diem quam m. e.*

8. *He died six years after I saw him* may be translated in any of the following ways: *mortuus est sex annis (or sexennio) postquam eum vīderam; m. e. sexto anno postquam e. v.; m. e. sexto anno quam e. v.; m. e. post sex annos (or post sexennium) quam e. v.; m. e. post sextum annum quam e. v.*

9. *Cum, quo, quibus* are sometimes used for *postquam*: *as, bīduo quo (or cum) haec gesta sunt, two days after these things were done.*

10. The ablative may denote *time throughout which*; but rarely, except in post-Augustan writers: *as, maestitia est caruisse anno Circensibus ūno.*

11. *Prīdie quam mortuus est*, means *the day before he died* (*ante diem quam*); *postrīdie quam eum vīdi*, *the day after I saw him* (*post diem quam*).

186. ABLATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

The prepositions *ā, ab, or abs, absque, clam, cōram, cum, dē, ē or ex, palam, prae, prō, sine, and tenus*, govern the ablative:

As, pecūniam ā me accēpit, he received the money from me; cōram populo dixit, he spoke before the people; prae laetitiā lacrimae prōsiliunt mihi, tears start into my eyes for joy.

1. *Tenus* follows its case, and governs the ablative singular (rarely plural) and plural genitive (§ 133, 7, 1): *capulo tenus abdidit ensem, he buried his sword to the hilt; verbo tenus, as far as words go; quādam tenus, a certain way, to a certain extent.*

2. *Clam* (and *clanculum*) are found in comedy with the accusative. For *in, sub, super, and subter* with the ablative, see § 131, 3, 4.

187. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

1. A noun and a participle not connected with the main construction of the sentence, may stand by themselves in the ablative. This is called the *ablative absolute*.

As, imperante Augusto, when Augustus was emperor.

2. As the verb **sum** has no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may stand together in the ablative absolute :

As, **Camillo duce**, with *Camillus as commander* ; **vivo patre**, while my father is (or was) alive.

3. The ablative absolute may express any accompaniment of the principal action, as the *time*, a *condition*, a *concession*, a *cause*, according to the context.

Thus, **te invito** may mean, in different connections, *against your will*, *if you are unwilling*, *though you are unwilling*, *since you are unwilling*, etc.

4. An impersonal participle stands sometimes in the ablative absolute : as, **libāto**, after the libation was offered ; **mihi errāto**, **nulla venia** ; **recte facto**, **exigua laus prōpōnitur** ; to me, if I blunder, no indulgence ; if I succeed, small credit is offered.

5. A few participles, like **audīto**, **cognito**, **comperto**, **explōrāto**, **dēspērāto**, **intellecto**, **nuntiāto**, **ēdicto**, **permisso**, sometimes stand in the ablative absolute with a clause which is used as a noun : as, **Hannibal**, **cognito insidiis sibi parārī**, **fugā salūtem quaesīvit**. The place of such a participle is sometimes supplied by an adjective.

MOODS AND TENSES.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

188. The Indicative is the mood of simple assertion (affirmative or negative), or of direct question.

1. In conditional sentences, in which it is stated simply that a thing is (or is not) in case another thing is (or is not), without stating anything in regard to the actual truth of the two propositions, the Indicative is used in both :

As, **Si Deus mundum creāvit**, **conservat etiam**, if God made the world, he preserves it as well ; **nisi hoc ita est**, **frustra labōrāmus**, if this is not so, we are laboring in vain.

2. There are some idiomatic uses of the Indicative where other moods might have been expected. (See § 196 ; § 215, 3, n. 3, 4, 3.)

189. THE PRESENT TENSE.

1. The Present may denote (1) a *momentary* or (2) a *continued* present action :

As, (1) **prōcumbit humi bos**, the bull falls prostrate on the ground ; (2) **nāvigat aequor**, he is sailing on the sea.

2. The Present may denote an action or state as existing (1) *occasionally*, (2) *habitually*, or (3) *in all time* :

As, (1) *domesticus otior*, *I lounge at home* ; (2) *honor alit artes*, *honor nurtures the arts* ; (3) *deus mundum conservat*, *God preserves the universe*.

3. The Present may express the opinion or statement of an author, cited as still living in his books :

As, *praeclāre hunc locum Cicero tractat in libris de nātūrā deōrum*.

4. The Present is sometimes a lively substitute for the Future.

As, *ni propere fit quod impero, vincīrī vos jam jubeo*, *if what I command is not done with speed, I order you to be put in chains this moment* ; *īmusne sessum*, *shall we go and sit down?* *abeo an maneo*, *shall I go or stay?*

5. As a tense of incomplete action, the present sometimes denotes a thing as simply *attempted*, or as simply *begun*. In these uses it is called the *conative* or the *inceptive* present.

6. 1. The **Historic Present** is used for a past tense, in animated and picturesque narrative :

As, *dīmīssō senātu, decemvirī prodeunt in concionem abdicantque se magistrātu*, *when the senate broke up, the decemvirs go forth to the assembled people and resign office*.

2. The Present is commonly used in a temporal clause with *dum*, *while*, even when the principal sentence is past or future : as, *dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiātum est equites Ariovisti propius accedēre*. But the Perfect may also be used, of an action, or the Pluperfect, of a state of things.

7. The Present, with *jam*, *jamdiu*, *jamdūdum*, and *jamprīdem*, is used of that which has lasted for some time and still continues : as, *annum jam audis Cratippum*, *you have now for a year been attending the lectures of Cratippus* ; *jamdūdum video*, *I have seen it this long time*.

190. IMPERFECT.

1. The Imperfect denotes *continued* past action :

As, *scrībēbam*, *I was writing* ; *ībam viā Sacrā, accurrit quidam*, *I was walking on the Sacred Road, when a certain man ran up to me*.

2. The Imperfect denotes *repeated* or *habitual* past action :

As, *scrībēbam*, *I used to write* ; *dīcēbat melius quam scripsit Hortensius*, *Hortensius used to speak better than he has written* ; *noctes vigilābat ad ipsum mane, diem totum stertēbat*, *he would lie awake whole nights till daybreak, and snore all day long*.

3. The Imperfect denotes action in past time, *intended, attempted, or begun, but not completed* :

As, *Aenēas lenībat dictis animum*, *Aeneas was trying to soften her mind with his words*; *num dubitas id me imperante facere, quod jam tuā sponte faciēbas*, *do you hesitate to do at my command what you were already on the point of doing voluntarily?* *Hujus deditiōnis ipse, qui dedebātur, suāsor et auctor fuit*, *of this surrender the very man who was to be surrendered was the mover and adviser.*

4. The Imperfect is sometimes translated in English by a simple preterite.

5. The Imperfect sometimes expresses a fact which is just now recognized by the speaker or writer, having been previously overlooked: as, *quantā labōrābas charybdi*, *in what a whirlpool you are struggling*, and I did not know it!

191. FUTURE.

1. The Future expresses *continued and indefinite action in future time* :

As, *ambulābo*, *I shall be walking*; *ut voles me esse, ita ero*, *I will be as you shall wish me to be.*

2. The Future is often used as a polite imperative: as, *quod superest, puerum Cicerōnem cūrābis et amābis*, *for the rest, please to treat young Cicero with care and affection.*

3. The Future is used in subordinate sentences, qualifying a principal future sentence, and referring to the same time. In English the Present is generally found: as, *hoc, dum erimus in terris, erit illi caelesti vītæ simile.*

192. PERFECT AND AORIST.

1. The Perfect expresses an action *finished in present time* :

As, *dixi*, *I have spoken*; *vēnit summa dies*, *the last day is come.*

2. The Perfect may express :

a. In poetry, the rapid completion of an action: as, *terra tremit, fūgēre ferae*, *the earth trembles, beasts have fled*; *perii!* *I'm undone.*

b. Cessation of existence: as, *fuimus Troes, fuit Ilium*, *we Trojans have been, Ilium has been*, i. e., we are no longer Trojans, Ilium is no more.

c. Repeated action, or a general habit, like the *gnomic perfect* and *gnomic aorist* in Greek: as, *cum Fortūna reflāvit, adfligimur*, *when Fortune blows adverse, we are cast down*; *rēge āmisso, rūpēre fidem constructaque mella dīripuēre*, *if the queen bee is lost, they break faith and pull down their honey stores.*

d. Lively anticipation, for the Future Perfect: as, *Brutus si conservātus erit, vīcimus*, *if Brutus shall be saved, we have won the day.*

193. The Historical Perfect, or Aōrist, expresses a simple past action :

As, *vēni, vīdi, vīci, I came, I saw, I conquered.*

1. In historical narration the conjunctions **postquam, posteāquam, ubi, ubi primum, cum primum, simul, simul ac, simul atque, simul ut,** meaning *as soon as*, generally take the Historical Perfect (sometimes the Present), although our idiom prefers the Pluperfect.

194. PLUPERFECT.

The Pluperfect expresses an action *finished in past time* :

As, *postquam lux certior erat, et Rōmāni, qui caedibus superfuerant, in arcem confūgerant, conticescēbatque tumultus, tum Tarentinos convōcāri jubet, when the light became stronger, and the Romans, who had survived the massacre, had escaped into the citadel, and the uproar was getting quiet, he then orders the Tarentines to be convoked.*

195. FUTURE PERFECT.

1. The Future Perfect denotes an action *to be finished in future time* :

As, *qui Antōnium oppresserit, is bellum confēcerit, he, who shall have crushed Antonius, will have finished the war.*

Note.—The Latin is more precise and accurate than the English in its use both of the Future and the Future Perfect.

2. The Future Perfect is often used in connection with the Future tense : as, *ut sementem fēceris, ita metes, as you shall have sown, so will you reap.*

Rem.—English idiom often uses the Present, or the simple Future, for the Future Perfect : *as you sow, or, as you shall sow, instead of as you shall have sown.*

3. Especially in the comic poets, the Future Perfect is often used where we should expect the Future, to express the *immediate sequence* upon the future action to which it is related, or the *certainty* of the event :

As, *molestus si sum, reddite argentum; abiero; if I bother you, give back the money and I'll be off.*

4. It may denote the *future result* of an action now past :

As, *ūnus homo tantas strāges impūne per urbem ēdiderit? shall it be with impunity that a single man has made such heaps of slain throughout the city?*

5. The Future Perfect, like the Future, sometimes resembles the Imperative: as, *sitne malum dolor necne, Stoici viderint, whether pain is an evil or not, the Stoics will have to see.*

196. THE INDICATIVE AS AN AUXILIARY.

Latin writers often express *duty, necessity, propriety, possibility*, as facts, in the Indicative, where the English would have the Potential:

As, *ūtilius fuit, it would have been better.*

197. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

1. In the Future Periphrastic Conjugation, the participle in *-ūrus* expresses

a. *being about to; meaning to; purposing; being on the point of:* as, *apēs ēvolātūrae sunt, the bees are about to swarm; ubi rēx erat mansūrus, where the king intended to stay.*

b. *being likely to; being sure to; being ready to:* as, *haec sine doctrīnā crēditūri fuērunt, this they were sure to believe if they had not been taught (otherwise).*

c. *being destined to (am to, are to, etc.):* as, *si vērī amīci futūri sumus, if we are to be true friends; manet mansūrumque est, it abides and is destined to abide.*

2. Periphrastic past tenses may sometimes be idiomatically translated by *would have or should have:* as, *deditos ultimis cruciātibus affectūri fuērunt, they would have executed them, if surrendered, with the uttermost tortures.*

Note.—As the *passive* has no participle with a future signification, certain periphrases are used to express those relations of time which in the active are denoted by the future participle with *sum*: e. g., *futūrum est (erat, fuit) ut; fore ut or futūrum esse ut; in eo est (erat, fuit) ut:* as, *erat in eo, ut urbs caperētur, the city was on the point of being taken.*

198. PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

The combination of the *gerundive* with the tenses of the verb *esse* denotes *necessity or fitness*. (See § 82, 2.)

199. PASSIVE COMPOUND TENSES.

The *perfect passive participle* is sometimes used with *fui, fueram, or fuero* to form the perfect, pluperfect, or future perfect passive tenses. But generally the participle with these forms of *sum* is used adjectively, or to denote a state or condition rather than an act. (See also § 74, Note 1.)

200. TENSES IN LETTERS.

Writers of letters sometimes express time from the point of view of the *receiver* of the letter, to whom of course the time of writing is already **past**. Thus the **Imperfect** (and sometimes the **Perfect**) may be used where in English we have the **Present**, and the **Pluperfect** where we have the **Perfect**:

As, Ante diem viii. Kal. haec ego scrībēbam hōrā noctis nōnā. Marcellus ita stertēbat ut ego audīrem; *on the eighth day before the Kalends I write this at three o'clock in the morning. Marcellus is snoring so loud that I hear him.* Prīdie Idūs Febr. haec scripsi ante lūcem; eo die apud Pompōnium in ējus nuptiis eram cēnātūrus; *I have written this before day-break on the day before the Ides; I am going to dine with Pomponius to-day at his wedding.* Dederam litteras Ephesi prīdie; has dedi Trallibus; *I sent a letter from Ephesus yesterday; I send this letter from Tralles.* Quae ad eam diem cum haec scrībēbam audīverāmus, inānis rūmor vidēbātur; *what we have heard till the moment I write this seems idle rumor.*

1. This peculiarity is very frequently observed not at all, or only in part.

2. Matters which will remain present to the receiver are stated in the present: as, ego hic cōgito commorāri, quoad me reficiam, *I think of remaining here while I am recruiting my health.*

3. Expressions of time are often accommodated to the tense employed, so that *yesterday* becomes *prīdie*; *to-morrow*, *postrīdie* or *postero die*.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

201. 1. The Subjunctive Mood has two very different uses:

I. It denotes **contingency**, **possibility**, **will**, **desire**, or **purpose**, and is generally to be translated in English by the auxiliaries *may*, *might*, *can*, *could*, *would*, or *should*.

II. It is used in **consecutive clauses** to denote *result*, or in **subordinate or dependent clauses**, simply to show their *subordination* or *dependence*; and is then generally to be translated in English by the *Indicative*.

Note.—The first use represents the original force of the mood; the second has been derived from it, through steps more or less traceable. But the second use has become so characteristic that it has given the mood its ordinary name. Another name, **Conjunctive**, is preferred by many grammarians.

2. As contrasted with the Indicative, the Subjunctive is the

mood of **ideal** relations, and often represents a thing as **thought** or **supposed**, rather than as done or narrated.

202. POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. The subjunctive sometimes represents an action as possible or probable :

As, *quaerat quispiam*, *some one may ask*; *forsitan quaerātis*, *perhaps you may inquire*; *vix crēdiderim*, *I can hardly believe*; *forsitan quispiam dixerit*, *some one may perchance say*.

2. The subjunctive is often used for **mild**, **modest**, or **cautious** statement, in preference to the more direct and positive indicative :

As, *hoc sine ullā dubitātiōne confirmāverim*, *I might affirm this without any hesitation*.

Note.—*Velim*, *nōlim*, *mālim* are often thus used to express a wish modestly, *I could wish*, *could wish not*, *would rather*. A wish which cannot now be fulfilled is expressed by *vellem*, *nollem*, *mallem*.

203. OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. The subjunctive is used to denote a *wish* or an *exhortation* :

As, *sīs felix*, *may you be happy*; *valeant cīves mei*, *sint incolumes*, *sint beāti*, *may my fellow citizens be strong*, *may they be without harm*, *may they be happy*! *ne vīvam*, *may I not live*; *imitēmur mājōres nostros*, *let us emulate our ancestors*! *moriar*, *si puto*, *may I die*, *if I think*.

Note.—The **negative** particle with the optative subjunctive is *ne* (*nēve*, *neu*), rarely *non*.

2. *Utinam*, *would that*, *I wish that*, and *utinam ne* (sometimes *non*), *would that not*, are used with the present subjunctive, and rarely the perfect, in wishes whose fulfilment is *possible*, or is conceived of as possible, and with the imperfect and pluperfect in wishes whose fulfilment is *impossible* :

As, *utinam cōnāta efficere possim*, *O that I may be able to accomplish my purposes*! *utinam tam facile vērā invenīre possem*, *quam falsa convincere*, *would that it were as easy for me to discover the truth*, *as it is to refute falsehood*! *utinam in Ti. Graccho tālis mens ad rem publicam bene gerendam fuisset*, *quāle ingenium ad bene dīcendum fuit*, *I wish that Tiberius Gracchus had had a disposition for the good administration of the government*, *similar to his genius for good oratory*.

3. In the same manner *ut*, *si*, and *O si* are sometimes used :

As, *ut te omnes dii perduint*, *I hope that all the gods will destroy you ;*
O si praeteritos referat mihi Juppiter annos, *O if Jupiter would give me*
back my bygone years !

4. The particle is sometimes omitted in the poets: as, *tēcum lūdere sicut ipsa possem*, *O that I could sport with thee like her !*

5. The subjunctive, in the third person, is sometimes used in *commands* and *prohibitions* :

As, *aut bibat aut abeat*, *let him either drink or depart ;* *puer tēlum ne habeat*, *let not a boy have a weapon.*

6. The subjunctive, in the *second person*, is used of a subject that is only assumed ; rarely of a definite person, and then mostly in the poets :

As, *injūrias fortūnae dēfugiendo relinquas*, *you must escape the wrongs of fortune by flight ;* *si sciens fallo, tum me, Juppiter optime maxime, pessimo lēto afficias* (Liv.).

7. The second person of the perfect subjunctive is used in *prohibitions* : as, *ne transieris Ibērum*.

8. In the imperfect and pluperfect, the advisory or imperative subjunctive is used of a thing which ought to have been done, as distinguished from what was actually done: as, *potius dīceret*, *he should rather have said ;* *frūmentum ne ēmisses*, *you should not have bought any wheat.*

9. The want of a first person in the imperative is supplied by the subjunctive.

10. An exhortation may be given in Latin by a question with *quin*: as, *quin īmus*, *why are we not going ?*

204. CONCESSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Permission* and *concession* are expressed by the subjunctive :

As, *fruātur sāne hoc sōlācio*, *let him enjoy forsooth this consolation ;*
nātūram expellas furcā, tamen usque recurret, *you may drive nature off*
with a pitchfork, still she'll be all the time running back ; *sit fur*, *granted*
that he be a thief ; fuerit aliis ; tibi quando esse coepit ? *suppose he has*
been so to others ; when did he begin to be so to you ?

2. The concessive subjunctive is often preceded by the particles *quamvis*, *ut*, and *ne*, or by *licet* :

As, *homines, quamvis in turbidis rēbus sint, tamen interdum animis relaxantur*, *men, allowing that they are in circumstances as troubled as you please, still at times unbend ;* *ut dēsint vīres, tamen est laudanda voluntas*, *though strength be wanting, yet praiseworthy is the will ;* *ne sit summum*

malum dolor, malum certe est, *granting that pain is not the greatest evil, an evil it certainly is.*

1. **Quamquam** is used mostly with the **indicative** in the best authors, but sometimes, especially in the poets and in Livy and later writers, with the subjunctive. **Quamvis** is found with the **indicative** sometimes in Livy, and often in later writers and in the poets; in the same writers **quantumvis** and **quamlibet** are found with the **subjunctive**. The verb **licet** takes the present or perfect subjunctive. **Cum** when meaning *although*, and **qui** meaning *although I (thou, he, etc.)*, take the subjunctive; but they are found with the indicative usually in Plautus and Terence, and sometimes in the classical period.

2. The compounds of **si**, when denoting **concession**, take the same moods and tenses as when denoting condition.

205. QUESTIONS OF DELIBERATION OR OF APPEAL.

1. Questions of *doubt* or of *appeal* take the subjunctive :

As, **quid faciam?** *what am I to do?* **quid facerem?** *what was I to do?* *what could I do?* or *what ought I to have done?*

2. The hesitation or doubt is often in regard to what may with the greatest propriety or fitness be done.

3. Questions with the subjunctive are sometimes *potential*; and they often imply a negative answer.

206. SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE.

The subjunctive is used to denote a *purpose*, after **ut**, **quo**, **ne**, and the relative **qui** :

As, **Platōnem ferunt, ut Pŷthagorēos cognosceret, in Italiam v̄nisse**, *they say that Plato came to Italy in order that he might become acquainted with the Pythagoreans*; **Dionŷsius, ne tonsōri collum committeret, ton-dēre fīlias suas docuit**, *Dionysius taught his daughters to shave, in order that he might not entrust his neck to a barber*; **medico puto aliquid dan-dum, quo sit studiōsior**, *I think the physician should have something given to him that he may be more zealous*; **Clūsīni lēgātos Rōmam qui auxilium a senātu peterent mīsere**, *the Clusini sent ambassadors to Rome to ask aid from the Senate*.

1. **Qui** (§ 220) in such clauses is equivalent to **ut** **is**, **quo** to **ut eo**. When **quo** is used with comparatives, the ablative denotes the *measure* (§ 176).

2. **Relative adverbs**, also, may be followed by the **subjunctive of purpose**.

3. **Ut ne** and **quo ne** are sometimes used with clauses of negative purpose.

4. **Ne** is used in clauses denoting the **purpose**, not of the principal action, but of the *mention* of the action: as, **ne dīcam**, *not to say*; **ne longior sim**, *vale, not to be too long, good-bye*.

5. *Ne* and *nēdum* take the subjunctive in the sense of *much less*; the prevention of the greater event being rhetorically regarded as the purpose of the less event: as, *vix in tectis frigus vitātur*; *nēdum in mari sit facile abesse ab injuriā temporis*, *much less is it easy on the sea, lit., that it should not be easy.*

207. SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT.

Ut, *ut non*, and *quin*, denoting a consequence or a result, take the subjunctive:

As, *Verres Siciliam ita vexāvit, ut restitui in antiqum statum nullo modo possit*, *Verres so harried Sicily that it could in no way be restored to its ancient condition*; *ruere illa non possint, ut haec non concidant*, *those things cannot fall without these things falling with them*; *nunquam accēdo quin abs te abeam doctior*, *I never come near you, without going away more learned.*

SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES USED AS SUBJECTS, OBJECTS, OR APPOSITIVES.

208. The subjunctive is used in substantive clauses introduced by *ut*, *that*, *ut non* and *quōminus*, *that not*, which are the subjects of a verb:

As, *accidit ut eo tempore in urbe essem*, (*it*) *happened that at that time I was in the city*; *per me stetit quōminus hae fierent nuptiae*, (*it*) *was owing to me that this marriage did not take place*; *saepe fit ut ii qui dēbeant non respondeant ad tempus.*

Note.—Such substantive clauses are the subjects of such verbs and phrases as *fit*, *futūrum est*, *accidit*, *contingit*, *ēvenit*, *ūsu venit*, *est* (*it is the case that*), *sequitur*, *restat*, *reliquum est*, *super est*, *proximum est*, *extrēmum est*, *prope est*, *longe abest*, *tantum abest*.

209. The subjunctive is used in substantive clauses introduced by *ut*, *that*, *ne* and *ut ne*, *that not*, which are the objects of a verb:

As, *sol efficit ut omnia floreant*, *the sun causes that all things should flourish*; *vos adepti estis ne quem civem metuerētis*, *you have obtained that you should fear no citizen.*

Note.—Such object clauses follow verbs signifying *to effect*, *bring about*, *ask*, *persuade*, *advise*, *exhort*, *command*, *wish*, *strive*, and the like.

1. After verbs of *effecting*, *bringing about*, *ut non* is also used.

2. When the object of these verbs is an opinion or belief, the accusative with the infinitive is generally used. *Fac*, *suppose*, always has the accusative with the infinitive.

3. Verbs of *wishing, willingness, commanding*, and their opposites, often take after them an accusative with the infinitive (§ 242).—So generally **jubeo**.

4. **Ut** is sometimes omitted: as, **dic veniat; fac cōgites qui sīs; sine te exōrem**; Caesar Labiēno mandat, Rēmos adeat; oppidānos hortātur moenia dēfendant.

5. **Volo, nōlo, mālo, sino**, take the subjunctive in short and unambiguous expressions generally without **ut**: as, **quid vis faciam? sine te exōrem; volo ut mihi respondeas**. So **facio, faxo ferant** (Aen. ix. 155), and **jubeo** in poets and late writers.

210. Verbs signifying *to hinder, resist, prevent, refuse, avoid*, take the subjunctive with **ne**: as, **impedior dolōre ne plūra dīcam**, *I am hindered from saying more*; **Rēgulus ne sententiam dīceret recūsāvit**, *refused to give his vote*.

1. **Ne** is often omitted after **cave**; **impedio** and **prohibeo** often, and **caveo** sometimes, have the infinitive.

2. **Quōminus** with the subjunctive may be used after verbs and phrases of *hindering*, or verbs implying *resistance* or *refusal* when qualified with a negative.

211. **Quin** with the subjunctive is used after verbs and phrases of *resisting, detaining from, omitting, delaying*, when they are **negatived** or **questioned**: as, **vix me contineo, quin involem in eum; haud multum abfuit quin Ismēnias interficerētur**.

1. After verbs meaning properly *to hinder* and *forbid*, **quōminus** is regularly used, **quin** very seldom; after those meaning *to omit*, only **quin**.

212. The subjunctive with **ut**, etc., is used in **appositive clauses**: as, **damnātum paenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremārētur**, *it was necessary that the punishment of being burnt with fire should follow his condemnation*.

213. AFTER VERBS OF FEARING.

After verbs and phrases of *fearing*, **ut** is translated by *that not*, **ne** by *that*:

As, **timeo ne pereas**, *I fear you will perish*; **metui ut effugeres**, *I feared you would not escape*.

1. **Pavidus sum, timor est, perīculum est**, are examples of such phrases. The **ut** is the oblique interrogative *how*.

214. TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

Adverbs of time generally take the **indicative** when they simply denote actual *time*; but if they denote also *cause*, or *purpose*, or introduce *general* statements, they take the **subjunctive**.

1. **Dum, dōnec, and quoad**, take the present and imperfect subjunctive of an action *expected* or *purposed*:

As, **exspecta dum Atticum conveniam**, *wait till I meet Atticus*; **multa bello passus, dum conderet urbem**, *much did he suffer in war, that he might found a city* (while he was striving to found); **rēx quattuor millia armātōrum, dum recens terror esset**, *Scotūssam misit, while the terror should be* (as he expected) *fresh in men's minds*.

Note 1.—When meaning *as long as*, these adverbs take the indicative, unless a design is also expressed; in the sense of *until* they take the indicative if the event is thought of as really happening: as, **Ti. Gracchus tamdiu laudābitur, dum memoria rērum Rōmānārum manēbit**; **dōnec rediit Marcellus silentium fuit**; **haud dēsinam dōnec perfēcero**; **Milo in senātu fuit eo die quoad senātus dīmissus est**.

Note 2.—**Dum**, *while, while yet*, generally takes the present when two things are described as occurring simultaneously, or one is the occasion of the other: as, **Tityre, dum redeo—brevis est via—pasce capellas**, *lit., while I am on way back, feed my kids*; **dum obsequor adulescentibus, me senem esse oblītus sum**; **dum elephantī trājiciuntur, Hannibal equites ad castra mīserat**. So also where *waiting* is spoken of: as, **tu hic nos, dum exīmus, interea opperibere**, *till we come out*.

Note 3.—Chiefly in Livy and later historians, as Tacitus, after **dōnec**, *so long as, until*, the subjunctive is sometimes used of **facts**, where we generally have the indicative.

2. **Priusquam and antequam** take the subjunctive (1) when the occurrence, or prior occurrence, of an expected or purposed event is *prevented*, or (2) when the principal sentence is *negative*:

As, **Rōmānus prius quam fores portārum ōbicerentur, velut agmine ūno irrumpit**; **is videlicet antequam veniat in Pontum, litteras ad Cn. Pompēium mittet**; **non ante datam cingētis moenibus urbem quam vos dīra fames . . . ambēsas subigat mālīs consūmere mensas**.

1. So **potius quam, citius quam**, and similar expressions.

2. The subjunctive is used after **antequam** and **priusquam** in general or indefinite statements: as, **tempestas minātur antequam surgat**.

3. The **imperfect** and **pluperfect** subjunctive are sometimes used in denoting a point of time, or an action which has really taken place: as, **paucis ante diēbus quam Syracūsae caperentur, Otācilius in Africam transmīsīt**. This is analogous to the use of **cum** in narration.

4. The following are examples of the indicative of actual time: **neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt**; **ante ferit amor quam cernimus hostem**. (The **imperfect** is rarely used, and is then picturesque; the **pluperfect** never.)

5. The **indicative** is occasionally found even when the occurrence is a thing to be prevented.

6. The **present indicative**, of actions strictly **future**, occurs: as, *ante quam de accūsatiōne ipsā dīco*, de accūsātorum spe pauca dīcam.

3. **Cum** (quom, quum) takes the **subjunctive** when it means *because, since, or although*:

As, *quae cum ita sint*, now since these things are so; *cum mīlites periculum verērentur*, non audēbant cum hostibus confligere, *because the soldiers feared danger*, etc.; *Pyladēs cum sīs*, dices te esse Oresten? *when* (i. e. although) *you are Pylādes*, will you say that you are Orestes?

1. In early Latin, the **indicative** is more common; and it is found sometimes even in Cicero.

2. **Cum** takes the **subjunctive** when it makes a kind of **comparison**, or denotes a **contrast**, and may be translated *while on the other hand, whereas*.

4. **Cum**, *when*, takes the **indicative** in the present, futures, and perfect:

As, *cum tacent, clāmant*; sed plūra, *cum ista cognōro*; *cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit*, alterius Gallōrum factiōnis principes erant Aedui, alterius Sēquani.

Note 1.—**Cum** takes the **perfect indicative** (or **historical present**) if the action is conceived as a point of time coincident with the main action. (Fischer.)

Note 2.—If *when* means *in doing*, **cum** takes the **indicative**: as, *amice facis quom me laudas*, *in praising me*.

Note 3.—**Cum** takes the **indicative** when it means *from the time when, since*.

5. **Cum**, *when*, generally takes the **imperfect** and **pluperfect subjunctive**, especially when the time is also the *cause* or *occasion* of the action stated in the principal sentence:

As, *cum mīlites de hostium adventu ēdocērentur*, continuo summo pugnandi ardōre flagrāvērunt; Alexander, *cum interēmisset Clītum*, vix a sēsē manus abstinuit.

1. Sometimes the only reason that can be seen for this subjunctive after **cum** temporal is the **secondary** or **subordinate** character of the temporal clause.

2. Especially in the ante-classical writers and Cicero, **cum** may take an **imperfect indicative**, if there is an imperfect or aorist in the principal sentence.

3. The imperfect, whether in the subjunctive or indicative, is used if the action is conceived as occupying a period of time within which the main action took place. (Fischer.)

4. **Cum** may take a **pluperfect indicative**, when a demonstrative marks

the point of time: as, *tum cum* in Asiā res magnas permulti *āmiserant*, at the very time when many persons had lost great properties in Asia.

5. *Cum* meaning *as often as* takes the **pluperfect indicative** in Cicero and Caesar, there being an imperfect in the principal sentence. Livy and the later historians use the subjunctive.

215. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

1. In conditional sentences, the clause containing the *condition* is called the *protāsis*, and that containing the *conclusion* is called the *apo'dōsis*. The protasis is often introduced by *si*, *if*, *nisi* or *si non*, *unless*, *if not*.

Note 1.—*Nisi* denies a negative supposition; *si non* supposes a negative: as, *nēmo fere saltat sōbrius*, *nisi forte insānit*, hardly any sober person dances, *unless perhaps he is mad* (denying the supposition that he is not mad); *si non quaeret*, *nullus dixeris*, *if he shall not ask*, you will say nothing (making the supposition that he will not ask).

Note 2.—The compounds of *si*, *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi*, are used in conditional clauses with the same moods and tenses as *si* itself.

2. In simple conditions, which imply nothing about the truth or falsity of the supposition made, yet *in form* are stated as *facts*, the **indicative** is often found.

The *apodōsis*, or following clause, is usually in the **indicative** or **imperative**, but it may be in the **subjunctive** of modest assertion, wish, exhortation, or prohibition:

As, *si hoc dīcis*, *erras*; *parvi sunt foris arma*, *nisi est consilium domi*; *si nōles sānus*, *curres hydrōpicus*; *haud errāvero*, *si a Zēnōne disputātiōnis principium duxero*; *si occīdi*, *recte fēcī*; *sed non occīdi*; *si quid in te peccāvi*, *ignosce*; *mīrer*, *si vāna vestra auctōritas est*; *si sciens fallo*, *tum me pessimo lēto afficias*.

Note 1.—The combinations of *tense* may be as various as the logic of language allows.

Note 2.—In all forms of conditional sentences, *si* is sometimes omitted: as, *rīserit*, *adrīde*; *dedisses huic animo par corpus*, *fēcisset quod optābat*, *had you given*.

3. In conditions stated merely as *thought of*, the **subjunctive**, either in the present or perfect, is used both in the protasis and the apodosis:

As, *nec possim*, *si velim*, *nec velim fortasse*, *si possim*; *si existat hodie ab inferis Lycūrgus*, *gaudeat mūrōrum Spartae rūinis*; *si scieris aspidem occulte latēre uspiam*, *improbe fēceris nisi monueris alterum ne assideat*.

Note 1.—The time is either present or future. The present subjunctive is often used of a **future contingency**, and the perfect like a **future perfect**.

Note 2.—The primary tenses of the subjunctive may be used even in a condition contrary to fact: as, *tu si hic sis, aliter sentias*; but this is simply avoiding to add to the statement of the pure supposition an indication of its quality as false.

Note 3.—The apodosis may be in the indicative; especially in the case of verbs of *ability* or *duty*, or of *est* with *longum*, *immensum*, *infinitum*, or a *gerundive*: as, *hi te homines neque debent adjuvare si possint, neque possunt si velint; immensum est, si velim singula referre; si valeant homines, ars tua, Phoebe jacet* (here the *certainty* is emphasized).

Note 4.—The second person singular of the subjunctive represents an indefinite subject, *you* being used in a lively way for *some one, any one*.

4. In conditions stated as *contrary to fact*, both in protasis and apodosis the **imperfect subjunctive** is used of present or general time, and the **pluperfect subjunctive** of past time:

As, *pacem non peterem, nisi utilem crederem*, *I would not seek peace, if I did not believe it advantageous* (the supposition that I did not believe it advantageous is contrary to the fact); *si Metelli fidei diffusus essem, iudicem eum non retinuissem*; *ulla si tibi poena nocuisset unquam, crederem*; *consilium, ratio, sententia nisi essent in senibus, non summum consilium majores nostri appellassent senatum*.

1. The imperfect is sometimes found of **past time**, by a liveliness of speech similar to that in the use of the **historical present**.

2. The imperfect is sometimes used in conditional sentences of **continued action** in the past.

3. The **indicative** is sometimes found where either the condition or the conclusion is stated in a **lively** manner as if a fact: as, *Antoni gladios potuit contemnere, si sic omnia dixisset*, he *really could* have despised; *labobar longius, nisi me retinuissem*; *pons sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit, ni unus vir fuisset, Horatius Cocles*. The last two examples may be explained by supplying an apodosis for the following conditional clause: I was slipping, *and should have fallen*, had I not checked myself; almost gave a way, *and would have given it*.

4. When the apodosis itself depends upon a clause requiring to be followed by the subjunctive, instead of the pluperfect subjunctive the **periphrastic perfect subjunctive** is used.

5. The **periphrastic pluperfect subjunctive** is sometimes found in a dependent question, after a secondary tense.

216. MIXED CONDITIONAL CONSTRUCTIONS.

In Latin, as in all other cultivated tongues, various **unusual combinations** of moods and tenses in the protasis and apodosis sometimes occur, the propriety of which is shown in each instance by *general principles* of language.

217. OTHER WAYS OF DENOTING CONDITIONS.

1. A condition may be denoted by a participle, an adjective, or an ablative absolute, or be merely implied in the context :

As, *ūno proelio victus* (= si victus esset) Alexander bello victus esset; *animi magnitūdo, remōtā commūnitāte hūmānā* (= si remōta sit commūnitas) feritas sit quaedam et immānitas; *nēmo sine spe immortalitātis* (= nisi spes esset) se pro pātriā offerret ad mortem; *illius impulsu* (= si ab illo impulsa essent) moenia mōta forent.

a. So sometimes the apodosis :

As, *vir, nisi in liberā cīvitatē nātus esset, memorābilis*, a man (*who would be*) *worthy of renown*, had he not been born in a free state.

2. A concessive clause may serve as a condition :

As, *ut ratiōnem Plato nullam afferret*, *ipsā auctōritāte me frangeret*, *even if Plato adduced no argument*.

3. *Dum, modo, dummodo*, with or without *ne*, *if only, if only not*, take the subjunctive.

4. A question, or an imperative, may serve as a condition.

5. Clauses introduced by *temporal* or *local adverbs* are sometimes equivalent to conditional clauses.

218. GNOMIC SUBJUNCTIVE.

The subjunctive, generally in the second person singular, is often used in *general maxims*: as, *bōnus segnior fit ubi nēglegas*, *a good man's energy declines when you neglect him*.

219. SUPPRESSED PROTASIS.

A condition is sometimes *not expressed* :

As, *hoc tantum bellum quis umquam arbitrārētur ūno anno confici posse*, *who would think? id velim mihi ignoscas*, *I should like*; *libenter omnibus omnis opes concesserim*, *I would grant*.

1. The unexpressed condition may be *if occasion arose, if a trial were made, if I (or other person) were there, were to do what the expressed verb implies, and the like*.

2. Cases of this kind may often be explained more simply as instances of the subjunctive's implying directly *willingness* or *inclination*.

3. The *second person singular* is used where the subject is *indefinite* (*you meaning any one*) :

As, *maesti, orēderes victos, redeunt*, *you would believe them conquered*.

220. OMITTED APODOSIS IN SENTENCES OF COMPARISON.

With *quasi*, *ut si*, *velut si*, *ac si*, *tamquam si*, *sicuti*, *ceu*, etc., the verb of the apodosis is often omitted :

As, *ita honōres petunt, quasi honeste vīxerint*, *as if they led honorable lives*, i. e., *as they would seek them, if they led*, etc.

1. With *tamquam* and *velut*, the *si* also is sometimes omitted.
2. The omitted verb is a hypothetical repetition of the verb of the principal sentence.
3. There is a similar omission when *si* is used in *wishes* (§ 203, 3).

221. RELATIVES IN THE PROTASIS.

The protasis in a conditional sentence may be introduced by a relative : as, *qui* (= *si quis*) *vidēret* equum Trojānum intrōductum, urbem captam diceret; *haec qui videat*, *nonne cōgātur* confitēri deos esse, *if any one sees this, will he not be compelled?*

1. The same mood and tense are used as in ordinary conditional sentences.

222. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

A relative clause denoting a *purpose*, and equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, takes the subjunctive :

As, *Clūsini lēgātos Rōmam qui auxilium a senātu peterent* mīsere, *to seek aid from the senate* (*qui* = *ut ii*, *that they should seek aid*); *homini nātūra addidit ratiōnem, quā regerentur animi appetītus*, *that by it the passions of the soul might be governed*.

Note 1.—A relative clause denoting a *destination* takes the subjunctive : as, *Germāni neque Druīdes habent, qui rēbus dīvīnis praesint*, *to preside over their religious ceremonies*.

Note 2.—A relative clause may be introduced by a relative particle (*as*, *ubi*, *quo*, *unde*), as well as by a relative pronoun.

223. RELATIVE CLAUSES DEFINING A QUALITY.

1. A relative clause defining a quality of an antecedent, takes the subjunctive :

As, *L. Pinārius erat vir ācer et qui nihil in fide Siculōrum repōneret*, *one who trusted nothing*, etc.; *Syrācūsāni, homines perīti, qui etiam occulta suspicāri possent*, etc., *such as could*.

Note 1.—Such clauses are similar to clauses of *result*, *qui* being equivalent to *tālis ut is*.

Note 2.—The antecedent is frequently a demonstrative, as *is, tālis, tantus, tam*, etc.: *as, ea est Rōmāna gens quae victa quiescere nesciat; innocentia est affectio tālis animi quae noceat nēmini; quis potest esse tam āversus a vērō qui neget*, etc.

2. The adjectives *dignus, indignus, idōneus, aptus, sōlus, ūnus, prīmus, ultimus*, are often followed by a relative with the subjunctive completing their meaning:

As, digna res est quam diu consīderēmus, the matter is worthy of our long consideration; sōla est in quā merito culpētur pecūniae cupiditas, the only thing in which he can be rightly blamed.

Note.—The infinitive after adjectives of this kind is frequent in poets, but rare in prose: *as, legi dignus, worthy of being read. Ut* with the subjunctive is sometimes found.

3. Indefinite and interrogative pronouns, and general negatives, are defined by relative clauses with the subjunctive:

As, est aliquid quod non oporteat; quis est qui ūtilia fugiat? nēmo est qui haud intellegat; nihil est quod tam miseros faciat quam impietas et scelus.

1. In a negative relative clause, depending on a negative or interrogative clause, *qui non* (*qui nunquam, qui nusquam*) may be used, or *quin* for *qui non*: *as, nec quisquam rēx Persārum potest esse, qui non ante Magōrum disciplinam percēperit; nihil est quin (= quod non) male nar-rando possit dēprāvāri; nullum intermīsi diem quin (= quo non) scrīberem, without writing.*

2. *Quin* rarely stands for any case except the nominative or ablative; but exceptions occur: *as, nego ullum vas fuisse, quin (= quod non) Verres conqūsierit.*

4. Indefinite general expressions are defined by a relative clause with the subjunctive:

As, sunt qui discessum animi a corpore putent esse mortem, there are those who think, etc.; pauciores viri reperti sunt qui suas cupiditates quam qui hostium cōpias vincerent.

Note.—Such expressions are *est qui, sunt qui, reperitur qui; habeo, invenio, reperio qui; exstitit qui.*

5. A relative clause after a comparative with *quam* takes the subjunctive:

As, Campāni mājōra delīquerant quam quibus ignosci posset, greater offences than could be pardoned.

Note.—*Quam ut* is also found, and even *quam* alone, without a relative: *as, mājor sum quam ut mancipium sim mei corporis, I am too great to be the slave of my body.*

6. Relative clauses **restricting** a general assertion may take the subjunctive :

As, ex oratoribus Atticis antiquissimi sunt, **quorum quidem scripta constant**, Pericles et Alcibiades, *of those at least whose writings are known*; Epicurus se unus, **quod sciam**, sapientem profiteri est ausus, *as far as I know*.

1. This subjunctive is used especially with **qui quidem**, **qui modo**.

224. QUI MEANING BECAUSE HE.

A relative clause expressing the **reason** of the leading proposition takes the subjunctive :

As, miseret tui me, **qui hunc tantum hominem facias** inimicum tibi, *because you make*; O fortunata adulescens, **qui tuae virtutis Homërum præconem inveneris**, *in that you have found*.

Note 1.—The assigning of the reason is strengthened by using **utpote qui**, **ut qui**, or **praesertim qui**, with the subjunctive. **Quippe qui** takes the subjunctive, or in some writers, as Sallust and Livy, the indicative.

Note 2.—The indicative is common, particularly in old Latin.

Note 3.—The relative pronoun followed by **quia** or **quoniam** generally takes the indicative.

225. QUI MEANING ALTHOUGH HE.

Qui equivalent to *although* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun takes the subjunctive :

As, nosmet ipsi, **qui Lycürgei a principio fuissēmus**, quotidie demitigāmur, *though we had been strict as Lycurgus*.

1. On the indicative in such clauses, see § 204, 1.

226. SUBJUNCTIVE DEPENDENT ON ANOTHER SUBJUNCTIVE OR AN INFINITIVE.

A relative clause forming an **essential part** of a sentence whose verb is in the **subjunctive** or the **infinitive**, takes the subjunctive :

As, erat in Hortensio memoria tanta ut, **quae sæcum commentātus esset**, ea sine scripto verbis eisdem redderet, quibus cōgitāvisset; non is sum, qui, quicquid videtur, tāle dicam esse, **quāle videatur**; spem afferunt **posse animos**, cum e corporibus excēsserint, in caelum pervenire.

Note 1.—If a **fact** is to be stated **as such**, the indicative must be used. In many cases it seems indifferent whether the indicative or subjunctive be chosen.

Note 2.—The incorporated clause may be introduced by a relative adverb or conjunction, as well as by a pronoun.

227. RELATIVES WITH THE INDICATIVE.

In any of the uses of the relative, after affirmative expressions, the **indicative** may be found when a fact is stated or emphasized, rather than a quality or a thought.

1. Thus the indicative may be used in simple definitions of existing things or persons or classes: as, Sp. Thorius, **is qui agrum publicum lēge vectigālī levāvit**; eae artes, **quas qui tenent** ēruditi appellantur; **utrum tibi commodum est**, ēlige; virtus est **ūna quae** nunquam vi ullā labefactāri potest; **sunt multi qui** ēripiunt aliis quod aliis largiantur; sunt qui non habeant, **est qui non cūrat habēre**, *there is one whom I have in mind* (perhaps the poet himself), *who certainly does not care* to have; Catōnem vēro quis nostrōrum ōrātōrum, **qui quidem nunc sunt**, legit?

228. ORATIO OBLIQUA.

Note.—When a reported statement, question, or supposition is dependent upon such a verb as **said**, or some similar expression, in such a way as to change any of the pronouns, cases, moods, or tenses used by the original speaker, the narrative is called **indirect**, or **ōrātio oblīqua**.

In **ōrātio recta**, or direct narration, on the contrary, the **very words** of the speaker or writer are quoted.

1. In **ōrātio oblīqua** *principal clauses* take the **infinitive**, generally with a **subject-accusative**; *dependent clauses* take the **subjunctive**:

As, Antōnius docet, **artem eārum rērum esse, quae sciantur**; ōrātōris autem omnem **actiōnem** opīniōnibus, non scientiā, **continēri**; **quia** et apud eos **dīcat, qui nesciant**, et ipse **dīcat, quod nesciat**.

In **ōrātio recta** we should have: ars eārum rērum est, quae sciuntur; ōrātōris autem omnis actio opīniōnibus, non scientiā, continētur; nam et apud eos dīcit, qui nesciunt, et ea dīcit, quae nescit ipse.

1. Dependent clauses are chiefly **relative**, or introduced by **si, cum, dum, quod, or quia**.

2. Occasionally **short relative clauses** are attracted into the **infinitive**. Those relative sentences in which **qui = et is** or **nam is, quum = et tum**, etc., usually have the **infinitive**.

3. **Dum** is sometimes found with the **indicative**, especially in the poets: as, dic hospes Spartae nos te hic vīdisse jacentes, **dum sanctis patriae lēgibus obsequimur**.

2. The imperative in *oratio recta* becomes the imperfect subjunctive in *ōrātiō oblīqua* :

As, *fidem Pompēii implōrārent*: *praestāret* quod recēpisset, *calling on* him to *make good* the promise he had made; in *oratio recta*, *praesta* quod recēpisti.

1. But the present and perfect subjunctive are sometimes found. (See § 228, 9.)

3. Questions to which an answer is expected, are put in the subjunctive in *ōrātiō oblīqua* :

As, *Vēios jam fore in potestāte populi Rōmāni*: *quid de praedā faciendum censērent*? [Camillus reported] that Veii would soon be in the power of the Roman people, [and asked] *what they thought* should be done with the booty; in *oratio recta*, *quid de praedā faciendum censētis*?

4. Mere rhetorical questions are generally treated as belonging to the *principal clause*, and are put in the infinitive in *ōrātiō oblīqua* :

As, *quid esse turpius quam auctōre hoste capere consilium*? [the military tribunes asked indignantly,] *what could be* baser than to shape one's plans by an enemy's advice? in *oratio recta*, *quid est turpius*?

5. When an indicative is found in *ōrātiō oblīqua*, it gives an assertion of the narrator, not of the person whose speech is reported :

As, *Caesar per explorātōres certior factus est, ex eā parte vici quam Gallis concesserat*, omnes discessisse, Caesar was informed through scouts that all had retired from that part of the town *which he had granted* to the Gauls. *Quam Gallis concesserat* is Caesar's explanation for his readers. Had it been *part of what the scouts said*, *concessisset* would have been used.

6. The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, in the apodosis to a conditional sentence in *oratio recta*, are in *oratio oblīqua* expressed in the active voice by the future participle with *fuisse*: in the passive by the periphrase *futūrum fuisse ut*. The future participle with *esse* is used also for the present (and sometimes for the imperfect) subjunctive active; and *fore* or *futūrum esse ut* for the present (and sometimes for the imperfect) subjunctive passive.

7. The ordinary perfect infinitive is sometimes found, representing the pluperfect subjunctive of the *oratio recta*, in the same way as the indicative is sometimes used for the subjunctive in independent sentences.

8. The tenses of the infinitive are present, perfect, or future, according as the time would have been present, past, or future in the *ōrātiō recta*.

9. The tenses of the subjunctive are usually the imperfect and the pluperfect, especially in commands or questions ; but the present and perfect are sometimes used, especially if the verb on which the whole indirect narration depends is in the present.

10. The two methods of reporting speech are illustrated in the following extract :

ORATIO RECTA.

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvetii, ubi tu eos constitueris atque esse volueris ; sin bello persequi perseverabis, reminiscitor et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improvise unum pagum adortus es, cum ii qui flumen transierant suis auxilium ferre non poterant, ne ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtuti tribueris aut nos despexeris. Nos ita a patribus majoribusque nostris didicimus, ut magis virtute, quam dolo contendamus aut insidiis nitamur. Quare ne commiseris ut hic locus ubi constitimus ex calamitate populi Romani et internecone exercitus nomen capiat aut memoriam prodat.

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

(Is ita cum Caesare egit) : Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset : sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improvise unum pagum adortus esset, cum ii qui flumen transissent suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret : se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute, quam dolo contenderent aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret ut is locus ubi constitissent ex calamitate populi Romani et internecone exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam proderet.

229. PRONOUNS IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.

Instead of pronouns of the first and second persons, *se*, *suus*, *ipse*, *is*, and *ille* are used in *oratio obliqua*. *Se* and *suus* refer to the subject of the verb on which the narrative depends, unless another subject is introduced, in which case the reference is to be determined by the general sense.

1. *Nos* and *noster* are sometimes used by Caesar of the Roman people or Roman army generally.

2. *Quisque*, *quisquam*, *quis*, with the reflexive pronoun, sometimes show that the reflexive is to be referred to the subject of the clause in which it stands.

3. *Ipse*, by agreeing with the subject of a clause in which there is a reflexive pronoun, shows the reference of that pronoun to the subject of the clause, rather than to the principal subject: *as, nātūra movet infantem ut se ipse dīligat*. (Without *ipse*, *se* might have been referred to *nātūra*.)

4. *Ipse* may stand for *se* when *antithetic* to some other word (a noun, *suus*, or another pronoun); it then refers to the *principal subject*: *as, pertimuerunt ne ab ipsis descisceret et cum suis in grātiā redīret*, the Lacedaemonians feared that he would withdraw from *themselves*, and return into favor with *his own* countrymen.

5. *Hic* and *iste* are rarely used in *oratio obliqua*.

6. Instances are found of *is*, *ejus*, where the ordinary rules would require *se* or *suus*.

230. VIRTUAL ORATIO OBLIQUA.

A clause expressing the thoughts, words, or alleged reasons of *another than the writer*, takes the subjunctive.

1. Indirect statements of *one's own* former thoughts or words may take the constructions of the *ōrātiō oblīqua*.

2. While special rules are convenient for use, *indirect questions*, *ōrātiō oblīqua*, and *petītiō oblīqua*, may all be referred to the same principle.

Note.—The term *petītiō oblīqua* is applied to dependent constructions following verbs of *wishing, commanding, permitting, caring, striving, fearing*, and the like.

231. INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

1. Indirect questions take the subjunctive:

As, ne ūtile quidem est scīre, quid futūrum sit, it is not even advantageous to know *what is to be in the future*; *quālis sit animus, ipse animus nescit*; *nātūra dēclārat quid velit*.

Note 1.—An indirect question is a *dependent clause* introduced by an *interrogative pronoun* or *particle*, and depending on some other verb or proposition.

Note 2.—All the words which are used in direct questions with the indicative take in dependent interrogative clauses the subjunctive; *as, quis, quae, quid; qui, quae, quod; quot, quālis, quantus, quam, quando, ubi, unde, quāre, cur, uter, quo, quōmodo, quemadmodum, utrum, an, ne* (enclitic), *num*. Sometimes also *si*.

2. Sometimes in the older writers, and occasionally in Horace and Vergil, an *indicative* is found in indirect questions: *as, adspice ut antrum silvestris rāris sparsit labrusca racēmis*, *see how the wild labrusca has sprinkled the cave with scattered grapes*.

3. An interrogative clause sometimes accompanies the phrase *quid ais*,

the imperatives *dic, vide, quaere, cedo*, or the indicative *quaeso*, *without* being dependent on them, and hence has its verb in the indicative.

4. After *nescio quis, nescio quid, nescio qui, nescio quod, nescio quōmodo, mīrum quam, mīrum quantum, nimium quantum*, and some similar expressions, which have come to express a single idea, the indicative is used, as it would be after *aliquis*, etc. But *dubito an, nescio an, haud scio an*, are of course followed by the subjunctive.

232. CAUSAL CLAUSES.

Causal conjunctions, *quod, quia, quoniam, quando*, take the **indicative** when the writer states the cause or occasion as a **fact**, on *his own* responsibility, but the **subjunctive** if the reason is given as believed or stated by *another party*.

In other words: **Causal conjunctions** take the **indicative** in direct discourse, the **subjunctive** in indirect (or virtually indirect):

As, *laudo te, quod rem tam bene gessisti*, *that you have*, as I see, *managed*, etc.; *Aristides expulsus est patriā, quod praeter modum justus esset*, *because*, as the people said, *he was too just*; *Themistoclēs noctu ambulābat, quod somnum capere non posset*, *because*, as he alleged, *he could not sleep*.

1. The **subjunctive** sometimes intimates that the reason given is not the true reason: especially with **non quod**, or **non quo**; after which the true reason is introduced by **sed quod** or **sed quia** with the **indicative**.

2. A writer or speaker may treat **his own** opinion as if it were that of **another man**, and thus use the subjunctive: intimating that at a certain time this was his opinion, without showing what his opinion now is (§ 230, 1).

3. **Quod** takes the **subjunctive** of verbs meaning to **say** or **think**, when logically not these verbs, but the verbs **depending** upon them should have been in that mood: as, *rediit, quod se oblitum nescio quid dīceret* (= *quod oblitus esset*, or, *quod se oblitum esse dīcēbat*); *multi praetōres quaestōres et lēgātos suos de prōvinciā dēcēdere jussērunt, quod eōrum culpā se minus commode audīre arbitrārentur*. So with *nego, puto*, etc.

4. After verbs denoting a **feeling** of pain or joy, admiration, thanks, complaint, **quod** may be used, or, *more often*, the accusative and infinitive; after verbs denoting the **expression** of such feelings, **quod** is more often used than the accusative and infinitive. The mood after **quod** is determined by general rules.

5. **Quod** is used in clauses explaining a demonstrative pronoun: as, *contentus eo, quod ratio plēbēiōrum habita esset*, *content with this, that regard had been had*, etc.

233. QUOD MEANING THE FACT THAT.

Quod is used with the **indicative** (or subjunctive in *oratio obliqua*) to mean *the fact that*, or *as regards the fact that*.

Utile est patrem adisse means *the presence of the father is useful*, without implying whether he is present or not; **ūtīle est, quod pater adest**, signifies the father is present, and his presence is useful.

Quod scrībīs, te ad me ventūrum, ego te istic esse volo, *as regards your writing* that you will come to see me, I wish you to remain where you are. **Quid quod eādem mente res dissimillimas comprehendimus?** *what of the fact that*, etc. Similarly **nisi quod**, *with the exception that*.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

234. The present and perfect are used in sentences dependent on primary tenses; the imperfect, aorist, and pluperfect, in sentences dependent on secondary tenses.

In other words: on primary tenses (§ 66, 7) primary tenses follow; on secondary tenses, secondary.

1. The **historical present** may be followed either by primary or by secondary tenses. In the former case the *form* governs, in the latter (which is more common), the *meaning*: as, **rogat** Rubrium ut quos ei commodum sit **invitet**; servis suis Rubrius ut januam **clauderent** **imperat**.

2. Even in sentences dependent on a secondary tense, the **present** is used of such actions as belong to the present time only: as, Siciliam ita **vexāvit**, ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo **possit**, *he did such damage to Sicily, that it cannot be restored*.

3. A secondary tense may be used in the statement of a **general truth**, if the law of sequence requires, although the **present** is preferred in English.

4. The true **perfect**, though a primary tense, is sometimes followed by secondary tenses.

5. The perfect is used in consecutive sentences of a result completed in the present time only; and the historical perfect, or aorist, of an event simply regarded as in past time, without reference to its being contemporaneous or prior to other past events: as, *a.* Aemilius Paullus tantum in aerarium pecūniae invexit ut unius imperatoris praeda finem **attulerit** tributōrum, *has put an end*; *b.* tantum opes creverant, ut ne morte quidem Aenēae **mōvere** arma Etrūsci **ausi sint**, *did the Etrurians dare*. Cicero rarely uses this aorist subjunctive; Nepos often.

6. Clauses following an accusative with the infinitive are governed in tense by the **leading verb** on which the accusative itself depends.

7. After the primary tenses, the **future** is represented by the **present subjunctive**, the **future perfect** by the **perfect subjunctive**; after secondary tenses, the **future** is represented by the **imperfect**, the **future perfect** by the **pluperfect**. But when future time is to be strongly marked, the **active periphrastic conjugation** is used (i. e., part. in -rus with *sim* or *essem*).

8. When the pluperfect subjunctive in the apodosis of a conditional sentence is subordinated, so as to form a clause of result or an indirect question, the periphrastic perfect subjunctive takes its place.

THE INFINITIVE.

235. The Infinitive is an indeclinable verbal noun: but it may have a subject or object; it contains the notion of time; it governs the case of its verb; and it is modified by adverbs, not by adjectives.

236. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT, PREDICATE, OR APPOSITIVE.

The infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, may be the *subject* or *predicate* of a finite verb, or used as an *appositive*:

As, *turpe est fugere*, to fly is disgraceful; *vīvere est cōgitāre*, living is thinking; *vidētur sapiens esse*, he seems to be wise; *istuc ipsum, non esse cum fueris*, miserrimum puto, I think this very thing most wretched, not to be when you have been.

1. The infinitive as subject is found chiefly with *esse* and impersonal verbs.

237. INFINITIVE AS OBJECT OF A VERB.

The infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, may be the *object* of a verb:

As, *vincere scis, Hannibal*; *victōriā ūti nescis*, you know how to win a victory, Hannibal, you do not know how to use it; *scio Caesarem abisse victōrem*, I know that Caesar came off victorious.

238. INFINITIVE WITH A SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

The infinitive with a subject-accusative is governed by verbs signifying to feel, think, know, say, and the like:

As, *sentīmus nivem esse albam*, we perceive by our senses that snow is white; *crēdunt se neglegi*, they believe that they are neglected; *scio plērosque scripsisse*, I know that most writers have recorded; *nuntiat regi adversārios ejus in fugā esse*, he informs the king that his enemies are in flight.

Note 1.—Such verbs are called *verba sentiendi et dēclārāndi*. The principal verbs of this kind are *audio*, *video*, *sentio*, *animadverto*, *cognosco*, *intellego*, *percipio*, *disco*, *scio*, *crēdo*, *arbitror*, *puto*, *opīnor*, *dūco*, *statuo*, *memini*, *recordor*, *oblīviscor*; *dīco*, *trādo*, *prōdo*, *scrībo*, *refero*, *nuntio*, *confirmo*, *nego*, *ostendo*, *dēmonstro*, *perhibeo*, *prōmitto*, *polliceor*, *spondeo*, and some others.

Note 2.—For the accusative and infinitive after verbs of joy, pain, etc., see § 232, 4.

Note 3.—Where a clause containing an accusative with an infinitive is followed by a relative clause in which the **same verb** is understood, the subject of the latter clause is in the infinitive: as, **Platōnem ferunt censisse idem, quod Pythagoram** (sc. *sensisse*). So in clauses introduced by **quam** after a comparative.

a. Phrases equivalent to verbs, like **certior factus est, auctor est, aliquem spes tenet, spem affero**, etc., in like manner take the accusative and infinitive.

239. The accusative with the infinitive is the **subject** of the verb *sum* with a predicate, or of an impersonal verb:

As, **accūsātōres multos esse in cīvitatē ūtile est**, *it is advantageous that there should be many accusers in a state*; **lēgem brevem esse oportet**, *a law ought to be brief*; **facinus est cīvem vinoīri**.

1. The subject cannot be expressed with the infinitive when it is an **indefinite person**; hence we say **ignoscere amico hūmānum est**, *to forgive a friend is becoming in a man*; **facinus est vincīre cīvem Rōmānum**, *to bind a Roman citizen is a crime*.

2. The verbs **sum**, and those denoting *to appear, to be considered, to be called*, require the predicate, if declinable, to agree with the unexpressed subject in the accusative: as, **contentum suis rēbus esse maximae sunt divitiae**; **magnis in laudibus tōtā ferē fuit Graeciā victōrem Olympiae citāri**; **fidēlem esse in minimo magnum est**; **non esse emācem vectigal est**.

3. The impersonals **licet, decet, oportet, opus est, necesse est**, are joined with the **infinitive active alone**, or with an **accusative with the infinitive in the passive**: as, **ex malis eligere minima oportet**; **ex malis eligi minima oportet**.

240. The accusative with the infinitive stands by itself in **exclamations**, and in **indignant questions**:

As, **te nunc, mea Terentia, sic vexāri, idque fieri meā culpā**, *for thee now, my dear Terentia, to be in such distress! and that this should happen by my fault!* **mēne incepto dēsistere victam**, *I, vanquished, give up what I have undertaken?*

1. In these cases the accusative with the infinitive is the **object** of some unexpressed thought or feeling.

2. **Ut** with the subjunctive is also used in exclamatory questions: as, **victamne ut quisquam victrici patriae praeferat**, *that any one should prefer a conquered to a victorious country?*

241. INFINITIVE AFTER CAN, WISH, OUGHT, AM ACCUSTOMED, ETC.

Verbs which require to be followed by a second verb with the same subject govern the infinitive of that second verb :

As, possum (or volo, audeo, dēbeo, soleo, etc.) hanc rem facere; vincere scis, Hannibal; victoriā ūti nescis; non dēstitit monēre; institit sequi; mātūrat proficisci; mitte ōrāre; ōdi peccāre; Antium me recipere cōgito; nēmo alteri concēdere in animum indūcēbat.

1. Such are verbs signifying will, power, duty, purpose, custom, beginning, continuance, ending, neglect, etc.; and in the poets other verbs admitting a similar meaning figuratively; also phrases of similar purport: as, habeo in animo, in animo est, consilium est, consilium cēpi, certum est, animum (or in animum) indūxi, etc.

2. Verbs denoting a determined purpose are found also with ut.

3. When these verbs are joined with esse, habēri, jūdicāri, vidēri, and the like, the predicate is put in the nominative: as, solet tristis vidēri; aude sapiens esse; merētur (scit, didicit) liber esse.

4. Volo, nōlo, mālō, cupio, opto, studeo, have a twofold construction: the infinitive without a subject-accusative is used after them when the subject remains the same; and when they are followed by esse, habēri, jūdicāri, vidēri, etc., the predicate is in the nominative: but the accusative with the infinitive is used when the subject is changed, or when the pronoun of the same person is repeated: as, volo ērudītus fieri; volo me ērudītum fieri; volo te ērudītum fieri; princeps esse māluit quam vidēri; principem se esse māluit quam vidēri.

5. The use of the nominative with the infinitive after other *verba sentiendi et declarandi* (§ 238, n. 1) is very rare and poetical: as, vir bonus et sapiens dignis ait esse parātus.

6. Vergil, in imitation of the Greek idiom, uses a participle in one passage instead of an accusative with the infinitive: sensit medios dēlapsus in hostes, instead of se dēlapsum esse.

242. INFINITIVE, ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE, OR UT WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. Verbs denoting willingness, unwillingness, permission, and necessity, commonly take the infinitive or the accusative with the infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive.

2. Volo takes after it the accusative with the infinitive passive. With the perfect infinitive, esse is often omitted: as, hoc factum volo.

3. Volo ut is more rare, but is used to express a strong emphasis. Mālō takes either ut or the infinitive.

4. Patior and sino are generally followed by the accusative and infini-

tive, sometimes by *ut* with the subjunctive; *opto*, *concēdo*, *permitto*, may have either the infinitive or *ut*; *posco*, *postulo*, *flāgito*, *cōgo*, more frequently *ut*.

5. Verbs of **resolving** and **endeavoring** are followed by *ut* or *ne* when the dependent clause has a subject of its own; when the same subject remains, they more often have an infinitive.

6. Verbs of **asking**, **advising**, **exhorting**, **persuading**, are followed by *ut* or *ne*. They take the infinitive only exceptionally.

7. *Jubeo* and *vēto* take generally the accusative with the infinitive, or the infinitive alone, if the subject is a **general word** or **easily understood**; sometimes the subjunctive with (or rarely without) *ut* or *ne*: *as, eos suum adventum expectāre jussit*; *infandum jubes renovāre dolōrem*; *jussit ut nāves Euboeam peterent*; *jube mihi dēnuo respondeat*; *avārum vēto te fieri*; *dēspērātis Hippocratēs vētat adhibēre medicinam*. *Impēro*, besides the subjunctive, takes an **infinitive** in early and post-Augustan Latin, but only the **passive** infinitive in Cicero and Caesar.

8. **Many Latin verbs** which we might suppose would take the accusative with the infinitive, take *ut* with the subjunctive, either exclusively, or admit the construction of the accusative with the infinitive besides.

Observation of the **usage** of classic writers, and reference to lexicons for the tyro, will gradually teach the constructions usual with any particular verb.

243. HISTORIC INFINITIVE.

The infinitive is sometimes used with a nominative, when we might expect the imperfect indicative :

As, pars cēdere, alii insequi; neque signa neque ordines observāre; ubi quemque periculum cēperat, ibi resistere ac prōpulsāri; arma, tēla, equi, viri, hostes, cīves permixti; nihil consilio neque imperio agi; fors omnia regere, some were retiring, others pursuing; keeping neither to their standards nor their ranks; where peril encountered each man, there was he resisting and repelling; arms, darts, steeds, men, foes, countrymen intermingled; nothing was proceeding by counsel or command; chance directed everything.

1. This is an *absolute* use of the infinitive. In time it is not always **past**, but sometimes **present** or **general**.

2. The historic infinitive is frequent in **animated description**. Only the **present tense** is used, except in praeteritives: *as, ōdisse, meminisse*.

244. SPECIAL USES OF THE INFINITIVE.

1. The poets sometimes use the infinitive after verbs to express **purpose** or **destination**: *as, pecus ēgit altos vīserē montes; frūges consūmere nāti; lōricam dōnat habēre viro*.

2. The infinitive sometimes follows nouns: as, *tempus est jam mājōra cōnāri*.

3. In poetry and later prose the infinitive sometimes follows adjectives: as, *cantāre perīti*; *niveus vidēri*.

4. The infinitive is very rarely dependent on prepositions: as, *multum interest inter dare et accipere*.

245. PERSONAL CONSTRUCTION OF PASSIVES FOR IMPERSONAL.

Instead of an impersonal passive of a verb of *saying, relating, thinking, believing, finding, perceiving, commanding, or forbidding*, or of the verb *vidēri*, followed by an accusative with the infinitive, a **personal** construction is preferred, what would be the accusative being made the subject of the passive verb, and the infinitive subjoined: as, *lectitāvisse Platōnem Dēmōsthenēs dīcitur*, *it is said that Demosthenes read Plato eagerly*; *malum mihi vidētur esse mors*, *it seems to me that death is an evil*; *vidēris mihi satis bene attendere*, *it seems to me that you are sufficiently heedful*.

1. The personal form instead of the impersonal is sometimes found also in *scribor, dēmonstror, audior, intellegor*, and other verbs. It is the regular construction with *jubeor, vētor, and videor*. Poets and later writers extend this usage widely.

2. *Videor* has a similar personal use in a parenthesis with *ut*: as, *ut mihi vidēbar*, *as it seemed to me*.

3. With verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, the **impersonal** form is more usual in the compound tenses: as, *trāditum est Homērum caecum fuisse*.

246. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

The Tenses in the Infinitive represent time as **present, past, or future, relatively to the time of the principal verb** in the clause.

1. The perfect infinitive is found as the object of a verb:

a. When it is important to speak of the action or event as already done or ready: as, *non potest non optasse*, *she cannot revoke the wish already made*; but *non potuit non optare*, *she could not help wishing*; *mālui dīxisse*, *I preferred to have done with speaking, i. e., to say no more*; but *mālui dīcere*, *I preferred speaking*; *dēbeo vīcisse*, *I ought to be pronounced winner*.

b. When the perfect is used like the Greek aorist. This conveys no idea of time, either as past or as continuing, but denotes a simple occurrence of the action. It is found in the oldest Latin and in Plautus and Terence, and was revived subsequently under Greek influence, as in Livy and the Augustan poets. It is not found in Caesar, Cicero, Sallust, and Tacitus.

Verg.: magnum si pectore possit excussisse deum; Horat.: sunt qui nōlunt tetigisse.

2. But commentators have sometimes rashly called perfects infinitive aoristic, when they are *true perfects* and denote completed past time.

3. English and Latin idiom differ in the **tense** of the infinitive after verbs denoting **power, duty, permission**. In Latin the **time** is marked by the verb in the **indicative**, and the **present infinitive** is used, unless the action is to be stated as **over** before the time to which the leading verb refers: as, *mihi ire licet, I may go; mihi ire licuit, I might have gone; facere dēbeo, I ought to do it; facere dēbui, I ought to have done it.*

4. **Memini** is used with the **present** (and sometimes the perfect) **infinitive** of events at which the speaker himself was present: as, *memini Pamphylum mihi narrāre, I remember Pamphylus's telling me.* So sometimes after such expressions as *memoriā teneo, scrībit, accēpimus.*

5. For the future infinitive, both active and passive, the periphrase **fore** **ut** or **futūrum esse ut** is often used.

6. **Fore** with the perfect participle, in deponent and passive verbs, corresponds to the **future perfect**.

7. In the compound infinitive, the participle often is alone expressed, and **esse** or **fuisse** omitted.

THE IMPERATIVE.

247. 1. The Imperative Present *commands* or *entreats*:

As, *perge quo coepisti, ēgredere ex urbe, proficiscere, proceed on your chosen path, quit the city, go forth; pergite, adulescentes, atque in id studium in quo estis incumbite, go on, young men, and devote yourselves to that study on which you are engaged.*

2. The **Imperative Future** may either entreat or command; but it oftener commands, and is used especially in legal formularies: as, *cum faciam vitulā pro frūgibus, ipse venīto, when I shall be sacrificing a calf for the crops, do you come yourself; rēgio imperio duo sunt, there shall be two magistrates with royal power.*

Note.—The imperative future often puts a command in connection with some other action, and denotes that something is to be done in future when, or as soon as, something else takes place or has taken place: as in the first example above, and, *cum valētūdini tuae consulueris, tum consulito nāvigātiōni.*

3. The **second person** of the **Future Indicative** may be substituted for the imperative in familiar style, in affirmative sentences, and the **third person** of the **Present Subjunctive** in advice or exhortation. The **second person** of the **Present Subjunctive** may be used of an indefinite subject.

4. **Ne** with the **Imperative Present** is found in poetry, but

is rare in prose. It is used in *legal forms* with the **Imperative Future** :

As, *equo ne crēdite* ; *hominem mortuum in urbē ne sepelīto nēve ūrito*, *thou shalt not bury or burn.*

5. Instead of the **negative imperative**, we may have the **second person** of the **Future Indicative** with *non*, the **second person** of the **Perfect Subjunctive** with *ne*, and the **third person** of the **Present** or (rarely) the **Perfect Subjunctive** with *ne*: as, *non facies* ; *ne transieris Ibērum* ; *illum jocum ne sis aspernātus* ; *puer tēlum ne habeat* ; *capessite rempublicam*, *neque quemquam metus cēperit.*

Note 1.—The **second person** of the **present subjunctive** may be used, both affirmatively and negatively, when the subject is **indefinite**: as, *isto bono ūtare*, *dum adsit*, *cum absit*, *ne requīras.*

Note 2.—As **not** is expressed by *ne*, so is **nor** by *nēve* or *neu*. But *non* and *neque* or *nec* are sometimes found in the poets. The *non*, however, often serves rather to qualify a **single word** in the sentence.

6. **Periphrases** of the imperative are made by *fac*, *fac ut*, *cūrā ut*, *velim*, with the **subjunctive**, and in poetry by *memento* with the **subjunctive** or the **infinitive** ; and negatively by *fac ne*, *cave*, *nōlim*, with the **subjunctive**, by *nōli*, and in poetry *parce*, *mitte*, *omitte*, *absiste*, *fuge*, and similar words with the **infinitive**: *magnum fac animum habeas*, *mind you have a lofty spirit* ; *cūrā ut valeas*, *take care of your health* ; *aequamemento servāre mentem*, *remember to keep an even mind* ; *cave facias*, *beware of doing it* ; *hoc nōlim me jocāri putes*, *I would not have you think I say this in jest* ; *nōlīte id velle quod fieri non potest*, *do not wish what cannot be* ; *mitte sectāri*, *search not* ; *fuge suspicāri*, *do not suspect.*

7. **Imperative phrases** are softened by the **polite expressions** *sis* (= *si vis*), *sultis*, *sōdes*, *amābo*, etc., *please, pray*: as, *refer te, sis*, *ad vērītātem* ; *hoc agite sultis* ; *id agite, amābo.*

8. An imperative of the **perfect passive** is found, though very rarely: as, *admoniti este*, *Ov.*, and *Caesar's famous cry*, *jacta ālea esto* !

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

248. **Active participles** govern the same cases as their verbs :

As, *amans virtūtem* ; *faventes rēbus Carthāginiensium* ; *catulōrum oblīta leaena* ; *arcens reditu tyrannum* ; *ūtendum est aetāte.*

249. **Participles** represent *time* as **present**, **past**, or **future**, *relatively* to the time of the principal verb :

As, *Plato scribens mortuus est*, *Plato died while writing* ; *Alexander, Persidis fines aditūrus*, *urbem Archelāo trādīdit*, *Alexander, when about*

to enter the borders of Persia, gave up the city to Archelāus; plēraequē scribuntur ōrātiōnes habitae jam, non ut habeantur, most speeches are written after being delivered, etc.

1. The future participle sometimes denotes *purpose*: as, Alexander Hephaestiōnem in regiōnem Bactriānam mīsit, **commeātus** in hiemem parātūrum, Alexander sent Hephaestion into the Bactrian country to get provisions for the winter. See § 253, n.

2. The want of a present passive participle is supplied by a passive verb with a relative or particle: as, pueri, **qui docentur**, discunt (or **cum docentur, dum docentur**), children learn by *being taught*.

3. There being no participle corresponding to the English perfect active, except in deponent verbs, its want is supplied by an active verb, with a relative or particle, or by an ablative absolute passive: as, Tarquinium rēgem **qui non tulerim**, Sicinium feram, *having refused to endure* Tarquin as king, shall I endure Sicinius? Alexander, **cum interēmisset** Clitum, vix se manus abstinuit, Alexander, *having slain* Clitus, hardly abstained from suicide; Pompēius, **captis Hierōsolymis**, victor ex illo fāno nihil attigit, Pompey, *having taken Jerusalem*, in the very moment of victory, meddled with nothing belonging to that temple.

4. The want of a future passive participle is supplied by a verb with a relative: as, grāta super veniet quae non spērābitur hōra.

250. THE CIRCUMSTANTIAL PARTICIPLE.

Participles are often used to denote the *circumstances* of an action, such as *time, cause, manner, means, purpose, condition, concession*:

As, Herculem Germāni itūri in proelia canunt, the Germans *when about to march* to battle chant Hercules; Hephaestio longe omnium amicōrum cārissimus erat Alexandro, cum ipso pariter **ēducātus**, of all his friends Hephaestion was by far the dearest to Alexander, *because he had been brought up* with him; aēr **effluēns** huc et illuc ventos efficit, the air *by flowing* this way and that produces the winds; milites, **pīlis missis**, phalangem hostium perfrēgērunt, the soldiers *by hurling* their javelins broke through the phalanx of the enemy; Catilīna ad exercitum proficiscitur, **signa illāturus** urbi, Catiline goes to the army, *intending to march* on the city; epistolae offendunt, non lōco **restitutae**, letters annoy, *if not delivered* in season; scripta tua **jam diu exspectans**, non audeo tamen flāgitāre, *though I have long been looking for* your writings, yet I dare not demand them.

1. Clauses of concession are sometimes called *adversative*.

2. **Nisi, etsi, quamquam, quamvis, quasi**, may be found with participial conditional and adversative clauses, especially in later writers.

251. SOME PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTIONS.

1. **Participles** may be used instead of a **relative clause**: as, *Pisistratus Homēri libros, confūsos antea, disposuit*, Pisistratus arranged the books of Homer, *which were heretofore confused*.

2. The English idiom "*without*," followed by a participle or verbal noun, is often represented in Latin by the **participle** accompanied by some **negative expression**: as, *Nātūra dedit ūsūram vītæ, tamquam pecūniæ, nullā præstitūtā die*, Nature has given the loan of life, as it were of money, *without fixing any day for repayment*.

3. In such forms as *hoc cognitum habeo*, and the corresponding expression in Greek, we see the origin of the perfect tense in modern languages, as made up of the auxiliary *have* and the past participle. But in the classical languages the **have** is used in its full sense of present possession, and is no mere auxiliary. Besides *habeo*, *teneo* and *possideo* and other verbs are used in the same way with perfect passive participles.

4. The **Perfect Participle** is elegantly used when in English we should have a **verbal noun**:

As, *anno urbis conditæ*, in the year from *the building of the city*; *Prūsiam rēgem suspectum Rōmānis et receptus Hannibal et bellum adversus Eumenem mōtum faciēbat*, both *the reception of Hannibal and the beginning of war against Eumēnes* made king Prusias an object of suspicion to the Romans.

Note.—Livy, Tacitus, and Lucan use the **neuter of the perfect passive participle** as a **passive verbal noun**.

5. Still more frequently is the **Gerundive** used where we use a noun:

As, *de urbe trādendā*, *concerning the delivery of the city*; *temperantia constat ex prætermittendis voluptātibus*, temperance consists in *abstinence from bodily pleasures*; *ante conditam condendamve urbem*, before *the actual or designed foundation of the city*.

6. A **Participle and Verb** are often best translated by two verbs: as, *Caesar scribit se cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore*, Caesar writes word *that he has set out with his legions and will soon arrive*.

7. A **Participial construction** is often **involved** with an indirect question or a relative clause, so that it can hardly be translated without periphrase: as, *cōgitāte quantis labōribus fundātum imperium, quantā virtūte stabilitam libertatem ūna nox paene dēlērit*, *think how vast the toil that founded this empire, how great the valor that established this freedom, which a single night all but destroyed*.

8. The **nouns** *man, men, things*, are frequently understood with **Participles**: as, *beātos pūto, quibus datum est aut facere scribenda aut scribere*

loquenda, I deem *them blest*, to whom it has been given either to do things worthy to be written, or to write things worthy to be spoken of; *grande locūtūri* nebulas Helicōne legunto, let *those that would utter* a sublime strain cull mists on Helicon.

9. Some Participles are sometimes used as **Adjectives**: such are *neglegens, patiens, sapiens, doctus, horrendus, tremendus, venerandus*, etc.

10. Some Participles are sometimes used as **Nouns**: such are *amans, adulescens, sponsus, nupta, sponsa, coeptum, dictum, factum, praeceptum*, etc. Neuter Participles so used are sometimes modified by Adverbs: as, *vērūm est fortes et sapientes viros non tam praemia sequi solēre recte factōrum quam ipsa recta facta*.

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

252. Gerunds govern the same case as their verbs :

As, *spes satisfaciendi reipublicae; et agendi aliquid et diligendi aliquos principia in nobis continēmus; parsimōnia est ars re familiāri moderāte ūtendi*.

1. A transitive gerund in classic authors seldom takes an accusative except of pronouns or neuter plural adjectives: as, *aliquid, multa, omnia*, etc. But it may do so for the sake of rhythm or perspicuity: as, *salūtem hominibus dando*.

2. Instead of the Gerund with its object in the Accusative, the Gerundive is generally used, the Gerundive taking the gender and number of its object, and the object taking the case of the Gerund :

As, *tuendae urbis, of protecting the city (for tuendi urbem); ad liberandos cīves, for freeing the citizens (for ad liberandum cīves)*.

Note.—This is the substitution of a passive for an active construction: thus, for *consilium scribendi epistulam, the design of writing a letter*, we have more frequently *consilium scribendae epistulae*, lit. *the design of a letter to be written*.

3. The Gerund is preferred where the Gerundive would cause an ambiguity as to **gender**.

4. The **Genitive** of Gerunds and Gerundives defines Nouns and Adjectives: as, *ars canendi; scientia cīvitātis regendae; cupidus audiendi*.

5. The Genitive of a Gerund is sometimes found governing a Genitive case instead of an Accusative: as, *facultas agrōrum latrōnibus dōnandi*.

6. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive in the predicate after *esse* sometimes denotes the **purpose** which a thing serves or the **end** to which it tends: as, *rēgium imperium initio conservandae libertātis atque augendae*

libertātis fuerat; tribūni plebis concordiam ordinum timent, quam dissolvendae maxime tribūniciae potestātis rentur esse.

7. In a few writers, especially later ones, the Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is used to denote the purpose of an action: as, *Germānicus in Aegyptum proficiscitur cognoscendae antiq̄uitātis*. In better Latin *causā* or *gratiā* is added.

8. The genitives of the personal pronouns, *mei*, *tui*, etc., being really genitives of the neuter adjective pronoun, with them the Gerundive is used without variation for gender and number: as, *sui conservandi*; *sui colligendi facultas*, the power of collecting themselves together; *vestri adhortandi causā*, for the sake of exhorting you.

9. The Dative of Gerunds and Gerundives is used after adjectives which take a dative, and sometimes after nouns and verbs to express the purpose or design: as, *aqua nitrōsa ūtilis est bibendo*, nitrous water is useful for drinking; *studēre revōcandis rēgibus*, to plot for recalling the kings.

1. To express purpose, the Accusative of the Gerund or Gerundive with *ad*, or *ut* with the subjunctive, is more common in Cicero.

2. The adjectives and verbs or phrases most used with the Dative of Gerunds and Gerundives are *ūtilis*, *inūtilis*, *noxius*, *aptus*, *idōneus*, *par*; *studēre*, *intentum esse*, *tempus impendere* or *consūmere* or *insūmere*, *praeesse*, *operam dare*, *diem dīcere*, *locum capere*, *sufficere*, *satis esse*, *deesse*, and *esse* in the sense of *serving for* or *being adequate to*.

3. The following are examples of the predicative use after *esse*: *quae diūtinae obsidiōni tolerandae erant*, the things which were serviceable for enduring a long siege; *divites, qui oneri ferendo erant*, the rich, who were able to bear the burden; *solvendo non eras*, you were insolvent (lit., not adequate for paying, not able to pay).

10. The purpose of an office is stated in the Dative: as, *triumvir dīvidendis agris*, one of the three commissioners to divide the lands; *tresviri rei publicae constituendae*.

11. The Accusative of Gerunds and Gerundives is governed by prepositions: most commonly *ad* or *inter*; sometimes *ante*, *circa*, *in*, *ob*, or *post*: as, *haec ad iūdicandum sunt facillima*; *magna summa erogāta est in servos armandos*.

Note.—Instead of the accusative gerund with a direct object, the gerundive construction is always used: as, *missus est ad animos rēgum perspicendos*.

12. The Accusative of the Gerundive, agreeing with an object, is used after such verbs as *do*, *trādo*, *condūco*, *loco*, *prōpōno*, *cūro*, *habeo*, to denote purpose: as, *ēdiscendos fastos populo prōposuit*, he published the calendar for the people to learn by heart; *Caesar pontem in Arare faciundum cūrat*. (On the Accusative with *ad*, see § 252, 9, 1.)

Note.—If the governing verb is put in the passive, the gerundive becomes a predicate nominative.

13. The **Ablative** of Gerunds and Gerundives is used of **means, manner, or cause**, or is governed by **ab, de, ex, or in**, rarely **pro**, and very rarely **super**: as, *Caesar dando glōriam adeptus est; hodie stat Asia Lūculi institūtis servandis; de contemnendā morte; in accūsando atque in explicandis crīminibus operam consumpsi.*

Note.—The ablative gerund is rarely used with a *direct object* depending on it, unless it be a **neuter pronoun**: as, *nōmen lēgis Graece a suum cuique tribuendo ductum est.*

14. The **neuter Gerundive** may be used **impersonally**, either without case, or with the **dative or ablative**: as, *bibendum est, we must drink; serviendum est lēgibus, it is right to comply with the laws; ūtendum est aetāte.*

Note 1.—This is called by some grammarians the **nominative** of the Gerund.

Note 2.—In old Latin an object in the **accusative** is found: as, *aeternas quoniam paenas in morte timendumst.*

15. **Transitive verbs** have a **personal gerundive** construction: as, *aqua bibenda est.*

16. The Gerundive often takes a **dative** of the **person** concerned or to whom the action is related: as, *moriendum est omnibus.* (§ 157, 1.) An **ablative** of the **agent** with **ab** may be used, if required for perspicuity.

17. The Gerundive when used **attributively** implies *obligation, destiny, or desert*; and in negative sentences it sometimes approaches the meaning of *possibility*:

As, *venerandus a nōbis et colendus est, he should be worshipped and honored; dēlenda est Karthāgo, Carthage must be destroyed; labōres aut jam exhaustos aut mox exhauriendos, destined soon to be spent; vix erat crēdendum, it could scarcely be believed; labōres non fugiendos, that cannot be shunned.*

SUPINES.

253. ACCUSATIVE SUPINE.

The **accusative supine**, after verbs expressing or implying *motion*, denotes **purpose**:

As, *lūsum it Maecēnas, dormītum ego, Maecenas goes off to play ball, I to go to bed.*

Note.—Purpose is more often expressed in other ways: thus, for *eunt consultum Apollinem*, we may have *ut consulerent, qui consulerent, ad consulendum, consulendi causā*, and, less frequently, *consultūri*.

1. This supine may govern a case: as, *Hannibal dēfensum patriam revōcātus est, to defend his country.*

2. The implication of motion is sometimes only indirect: as, *coctum conductus sum, I was hired to cook.*

3. *Ire* with the accusative supine means *to set about*: as, *ultum īre, to set about to revenge.* Hence the use of the impersonal passive infinitive *īri* with the supine to make a **passive infinitive future**: as, *audierat non datum īri filio uxōrem*, lit., that there is not a going to give a wife to his son, i. e. *that a wife will not be given to his son.*

254. ABLATIVE SUPINE.

The supine in *-u* is an ablative of specification. It limits *fas*, *nēfas*, *opus*, and adjectives meaning *good or evil, easy or difficult, pleasant or unpleasant, fit or unfit*:

As, *nēfas vīsu*, (horrible in the seeing) *horrible to behold*; *turpe dictu*, (shameful in the saying) *shameful to say.*

1. The ablative supine is found rarely after verbs: as, *pudet dictu*, Tac.

2. The supine in *-u* is found very rarely as an ablative of separation: as, *vilicus primus cubitū surgat, postrēmus cubitum eat* (Cato).

PARTICLES.

255. ADVERBS.

1. **Adverbs** qualify verbs, adjectives, participles, and sometimes other adverbs:

As, *prūdentē agit*; *male salsus*; *domus celeriter exstructa*; *satis bene.*

2. Adverbs sometimes qualify nouns, but very rarely, and only when the noun is used as an adjective or participle, or when a participle is understood: as, *admodum puer*, very much like a boy, *very young*; *lātē rēx* (= *lātē regnans*); *gravibus superne ictibus*, blows coming from above; *circa civitātum* (of states round about), *of neighboring states.*

256. TWO NEGATIVES.

Two negatives destroy each other:

As, *nullā non arte petitus*, sought by every art (with no art untried).

1. Not only does **non** before a negative word (as *nēmo*, *nunquam*, *nescio*) make it affirmative, but **neque** gets the affirmative sense of *et* when followed by a negative word in the same proposition: as, *neque haec non evēnērunt*, and this came to pass indeed.

2. **Non** followed by **ne**—*quidem* remains negative: as, *non fugio ne hos quidem mores*, I do not shun even this character. So *neque*—*neque*, *neve*—*neve*, following a negative leading proposition, are translated like *aut*—*aut*. **Ne non** after *vide* must be rendered by *whether*.

3. **Non modo**, or **non solum**, is used before **sed ne—quidem**, or **sed vix**, where at first thought we should expect to find **non modo non, non solum non**. The negation in **ne—quidem** belongs conjointly to both clauses; or we may say, with Herzog, that it changes the affirmation of the verb to negation.

4. In a few cases two negatives strengthen the negation, as in Greek: an exceptional usage, from the language of common life.

257. CONJUNCTIONS.

1. **Co-ordinative conjunctions** (§ 101, 2) connect words or clauses which are on an equality with each other.

2. In quick and lively discourse the copulative conjunctions are sometimes omitted. This is called **asyndeton**.

3. Three or more co-ordinate words may be connected **each with the preceding** by a conjunction; or the conjunction may be **omitted entirely**; or it may be omitted between the first members and **que** annexed to the last. Thus we may say **fides et constantia et iustitia**, or **fides, constantia, iustitia**, or **fides, constantia, iustitiaque**.

4. Two words **essentially different in meaning** are separated by **aut**. **Vel** (for **velis, choose you**) denotes a distinction which is of **no great importance**, or relates only to the **choice of an expression**.

5. The meaning of **-ve** is similar to that of **vel**. With numerals it means **or at most**: as, **bis terve, twice or (at most) three times**; while **bis terque** means **two or three times (at least)**.

6. When two words are united by a conjunction, which stands also before the first, without connecting it with a preceding word, the first **et** is translated **both**, the first **aut** or **vel, either**, the first **sive, whether**, the first **nec** or **neque, neither**. So **cum . . . tum**, may be rendered by **not only . . . but also**; **both . . . and**; **tum . . . tum, at one time . . . at another time**.

7. After words of likeness, **ac** and **atque** signify **as**; after words of unlikeness, **than**, or sometimes **from** or **to**.

8. **Subordinative Conjunctions** (§ 101, 3) connect a secondary clause to a primary or leading clause.

258. INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES.

1. In simple questions, **-ne** asks only for information; **nonne** expects the answer **yes**; **num** expects the answer **no**:

As, **sentisne, do you feel?** **nonne sentis, do you not feel?** **num sentis, do you feel? you do not feel, do you?**

2. **Ne** is appended to the **emphatic** word. It remains true that the particle itself does not imply either an affirmative or a negative answer, although this emphasis sometimes gives a rhetorical effect similar to that of **num** or

nonne: as, *potestne* virtus servīre, *is it possible* that virtue should be enslaved? (No.) **Mēne** istud potuisse facere putas, do you believe that *I* would have done that? (Certainly not.) **Videsne**, ut in prōverbio sit ōvōrum inter se similitūdo, *do you see*, where he might have said, *do you not see*?

3. In conversational language, the final **e** in **-ne** is often omitted: as, **nostin, tūn**; also a preceding **s** in some verbs: as, **āin, scin, viden, audin**, for **āisne**, etc.

4. Rarely in poetry, **ne** is appended to interrogative adjectives, and even to the relative pronoun.

5. Questions are sometimes found **without** any interrogative particle or pronoun. They generally denote surprise or some strong feeling, or are purposely abrupt.

6. In **alternative questions**, *utrum* or **-ne** are generally used in the first member of the sentence, and *an* in the second and subsequent clauses:

As, **utrum** nescis quam alte ēscenderis, **an** pro nihilo id putas? **vosne** L. Domitium, **an** vos Domitius dēseruit?

7. Sometimes there is no interrogative particle in the first clause, and the second has **an** or (chiefly in indirect questions) **-ne**: as, **ēloquar, an** sileam? nihil interesse nostrā putāmus, **valeāmus aegrīne sīmus**.

8. **Utrumne** is sometimes found for *utrum*, **anne** for **an**.

9. **Ne . . . ne, an . . . an**, are rare, and found chiefly in the poets; **utrum . . . ne**, very rare.

10. **Or not** is *annon*, rarely *necne*, in direct questions, *necne*, rarely *annon*, in indirect: as, **sortiētur, an non?** **sunt** haec tua v̄erba, *necne?* **dii utrum sint, necne**, quaeritur.

11. Those are **not** alternative (or disjunctive) questions in which **aut** is interposed, and not **an**: as, **quid ergo, sōlem dīcam aut lūnam aut caelum deum**, what then, *shall I apply the name of God to the sun or moon or sky?* Here there is no real opposition, but the three terms may all be equally affirmed or denied.

12. The old construction, **utrum, which of the two?** has after it **-ne . . . an**: as, **utrum, studiōne** id sibi habet, **an** laudi putat fore, si perdiderit gnātum? (Ter.) **Utrum erat ūtilius, suisne** servīre, **an** populo Rōmāno obtemperāre? (Cic.)

13. **An** stands not only in the second member of a disjunctive question, but also in **simple questions** used to complete and emphasize what precedes: asking, what must be the case *otherwise*, or what must be the case *then*; or *answering* a question under the form of a question; or adding in an interrogative form some *conjecture* respecting what is asked: as, **necesse est quidquid prōnunties, id aut esse aut non esse**. **An tu dialecticis ne imbūtus quidem es?** *what you put forward must needs either be or not be. Or are you not acquainted with even the first elements of logic?* sed ad

haec, nisi molestum est, habeo quae velim. **An** me, inquam, nisi te audire vellem, **censes** haec dictūrum fuisse? *do you, then, believe, etc.* **Quid** ais? **an** vēnit Pamphilus? *what do you say? Has Pamphilus come?* nos hic te exspectāmus ex quōdam rūmōre, **an** ex litteris tuis ad alios missis, *on the authority of some rumor, or (am I right?) of letters of yours sent to other persons.*

14. In dependent clauses **num** means *whether*, and only asks the question; **si** is sometimes found in the sense of *whether*; and so **an** in later writers and the poets.

15. After **haud scio**, **nēscio**, **dubito**, **dubium**, or **incertum est**, and some other expressions of uncertainty, **an** means *whether not*, and the whole expression signifies *perhaps; I am inclined to think that.* (See § 231, 4.)

16. An answer in the affirmative may be given by **etiam**, **ita** or **ita est**, **sic** or **sic est**, **vērūm**, **vēro**, **factum**, **sāne**, **maxime**, **quidni?** **admodum**, **oppido**, **plāne**, by a personal pronoun with **vēro**, or by the verb of the preceding sentence repeated.

17. An answer in the negative may be given by **nōn**, **minime**, **nihil minus**, **ne . . . quidem**.

18. **Immo**, *nay*, always corrects the preceding expression; but sometimes only to substitute a stronger affirmation.



ORDER OF WORDS.

259. As the connection and construction of words in Latin can be known from their **inflection**, their **position** is not determined by such strict and definite rules as in English, but admits of great variety. That order is to be preferred which is most **easily understood**, marks out the more **emphatic words**, and gives an agreeable **sound** and **rhythm**.

The following rules give some idea of the normal or most usual order. Many of them may be superseded, however, by the demands of rhythm or emphasis.

1. The subject is put **first**, its modifiers next, the **verb** last, and the **object** and other modifiers of the predicate are put between :

As, ego te ob egregiam virtutem semper amavi; cur ego tuas partes suscipio? cur M. Tullius P. Africani monumenta requirit, P. Scipio eum, qui illa sustulit, defendit?

Note.—When the subject is closely connected with a clause following the verb, it may be placed after the verb.

2. **Poets** use great freedom in the order of their words: as, *Ponitur ad patrios barbara praeda deos.* (Ov.)

3. The **Preposition** stands before the noun, either immediately, or with the interposition of such expressions only as qualify the noun: as, *consul de bello ad populum tulit; sine ullo metu et summa cum honestate; haec officia pertinent ad earum rerum, quibus utuntur homines, facultatem; ad bene beateque vivendum.*

4. The **preposition** is sometimes placed between an adjective which is emphatic, or a pronoun (or rarely a **genitive case**), and the noun: as, *magna ex parte; tribus de rebus; paucos post menses; summa cum cura; ea de causa; qua in urbe; quorum de virtutibus; deorum in mente.*

5. Some **prepositions**, chiefly dissyllabic, occasionally stand after a relative pronoun: as, *is, quem contra venerat.* (See § 131, 5.) *Cum* is always suffixed to personal and usually to relative pronouns. (See § 57, 7; § 62, 9.)

6. The following examples show the freedom often used by the poets in placing their prepositions: *avem caelo dejecit ab alto; foedera regum vel Gabiis vel cum rigidis aequata Sabinis.*

7. **Adverbs**, and **Oblique Cases** of nouns and adjectives, stand before the verb or adjective to which they belong: as, *bellum civile opinione plerumque et fama gubernatur; multi autem, Gnathonum similes, sunt loco, fortuna, fama superiores.*

Note 1.—Adverbs may be placed for emphasis at the beginning or end of the sentence; and they may be inserted without emphasis between the more prominent words.

Note 2.—Adverbs which qualify an adjective or another adverb almost always stand before it. But *admodum* can be placed after an adjective which is emphatic. An adverb of degree (as *multo*) may stand for emphasis at the beginning of the clause or sentence, and the adjective be put farther along: as, *multo ejus oratio esset pressior.*

8. **Negatives** stand before the word they qualify; hence before the verb (but not always immediately before it) when they apply to the whole proposition: as, *non te reprehendo, sed fortunam; intellegere sane non possum.* Instead of *non dico*, *nego* is generally used: as, *negavit eum adesse, he said he was not there; (not, he denied, etc.)*

Note.—*Ne quidem* takes the emphatic word between the two particles: as, *ne joco quidem.*

9. **Attributes**, whether adjectives, nouns in apposition, or oblique cases, usually follow their noun; but the reverse order is frequent, and is the rule with demonstrative pronouns and adjectives of number and quantity: as, *vir bonus; praemeditatio rerum futurarum; Balbus quaestor, magno pondere auri, majore argenti coacto de publico exactionibus, Kal. Juniis trajecit se in regnum Bogudis; ejus disputationis sententias memoriae mandavi, quas hoc libro exposui; tribus modis.*

But a demonstrative may be placed **after**, if it is desirable to bring it into close connection with the relative: as, *mediocritatem illam tenebit, quae est inter nimium et parum.*

10. In many expressions the order of the words is fixed by custom: as, *populus Romanus, civis Romanus, res familiaris, res gestae, aes alienum, jus civile, senatus consultum, magister equitum, tribunus plebi, pontifex maximus, Bona Dea, Jupiter optimus maximus, Carthago Nova, Via Appia, terra marique, etc.* In a few cases this order is found reversed, for emphasis.

11. A monosyllabic noun almost invariably precedes a longer adjective: as, *res innumerabiles; di immortales; rex potentissimus.*

12. When a noun is qualified by both an adjective and a genitive, or by both a genitive and a prepositional expression, the adjective in the first case, the genitive in the second place, is usually put first, and the other attribute placed between that and the noun: as, *amicitia nullam aetatis degendae rationem patitur esse expertem sui; ejus rationis vim ex illo caelesti Epicuri de regula et judicio volumine accepimus.*

13. Relative pronouns regularly stand at the beginning of their clause; never after their verb: as, *hic est quem quaerimus; quae cum ita sint, hoc loquor.*

14. But sometimes an emphatic word, or words, is placed **before** the relative, especially when the demonstrative sentence is put after the relative sentence: as, *Tarentum vero qua vigilantia, quo consilio, (Fabius) recepit? Romam quae apportata sunt, ad aedem Honoris et Virtutis videmus (to Rome, in contrast with what remained at Syracuse).*

15. The relatives may be used for the demonstratives with **et**: e. g., *qui* for *et is*, *qualis* for *et talis*, *quo* for *et eo*. They may therefore be placed **before** those conjunctions which can be connected with *et* or *autem*: as, *quod cum audivissem, quod si fecissem, quod quamvis non ignorassem, for et cum hoc, et si hoc, et quamvis or cum autem hoc.*

16. Connective adverbs and interrogative pronouns usually stand at the head of their clause, or only after words, such as relative or demonstrative pronouns, which refer to the preceding sentence. They never come after their verb.

Note.—But in poetry we have freer position.

17. Words belonging to two or more co-ordinate words or expressions should strictly be put either **before them all** or **after them all**. But, partly for rhythm's sake, the common word is often put after the first of the co-ordinated words: as, *jam viris vires, jam ferro sua vis, jam consilia ducibus deerant; an tu existimas fuisse tum alios medicos, qui morbis, alios qui vulneribus, alios qui oculis mederentur?*

Note 1.—In poetry irregularities occur: as, *pacis eras mediusque belli* (for *bellique medius*).

Note 2.—When the same verb belongs to several clauses, it is more com-

mon in Latin to place it in the **last** clause, and understand it in those preceding. The reverse is the rule in English.

18. **Hiatus**, or the **concurrence of long vowels** at the end of one word and the beginning of another, should be avoided as much as possible. A **concurrence of short vowels**, or of a **long vowel followed by a short**, is not objectionable.

19. The more **easy** and **familiar** the style of composition, the less formal is the arrangement of the words.

20. The position of the following particles may be specially noticed :

Nam, always, **namque**, almost always, stands at the **beginning**;

Enim, always **after one word**, seldom after two;

Ergo, *therefore*, either **first**, or after an **important word** of the sentence: as, **hunc ergo, quid ergo**; when it denotes not a conclusion, but only a transition, it almost always stands after a word;

Igitur, usually **after one or two words**, or even after more words, if they are closely connected; it is also put **first**, especially in Sallust;

Itaque, *therefore, consequently*, almost always at the beginning, in good prose;

Tamen, at the beginning, except where a single word is to be made emphatic by antithesis;

Etiam, *also, even*, before the word it qualifies; but also after it, especially if the word is put at the beginning of the sentence for the sake of emphasis;

Quoque, quidem, and demum, immediately after the word they qualify;

Autem, and vero, after a word, or two closely connected words: as, **de republica vero**; **autem**, even after several words, which cannot well be separated;

Ne, *assuredly*, is prefixed to a personal or demonstrative pronoun, except in a peculiar class of answers in Plautus.

Note.—If **enim, autem, or igitur**, and **est or sunt**, come near together, the verb usually stands without emphasis in the **second** place, if the proposition begins with the emphatic word: as, **nemo est autem**; **sapientia est enim una**, quae maestitiam pellat ex animis. But the verb is put in the **third** place, if the emphasis falls more on the words which come after it: as, **cupiditates enim sunt insatiabiles**.

21. The pronoun **quisque** almost always stands in the relative proposition, when a relative and demonstrative proposition are combined, and immediately after the relative.

260. Emphasis suggests the following rules :

1. Any word which is to be made **prominent** is placed at or near the **beginning** of the sentence, or sometimes, if not the primary predicate, at

the **end** (as an unusual position): as, **a malis mors abducit, non a bonis; dedi veniam homini impudenter petenti; sequemur igitur hoc tempore et in hac quaestione potissimum Stoicos.**

2. The ordinary place of the **verb** being at the **end**, it is **emphatic** when at the **beginning** of the sentence; in other positions than these, it makes the preceding word or words **emphatic**: as, Saguntum **vestri** circumsident exercitus; mox **Karthaginem** circumsidebunt Romanae legiones.

3. As the first place is allotted to **emphatic** words, in the **second** place in the sentence **unimportant** words are often thrown in; such words as are rather slurred over in reading.

4. An **unemphatic** word is sometimes put between words connected with one another, partly to throw the words before it into greater relief, partly to prevent itself occupying a more important position in the sentence. So especially **est, sunt, etc.**: as, qui in fortunae periculis **sunt** ac varietate versati; primum Marcelli ad Nolam praelio populus **se** Romanus erexit.

5. **Contrasted** and **kindred** words are put next to one another: as, ego Q. Fabium, **senem** adulescens, ita dilexi ut aequalem; quaedam **falsa veri** speciem habent; quid quod **tu te** ipse in custodiam dedisti?

6. **Contrasted** pairs of words are often put with the words in one pair in a reverse order to that of the other pair; two of the **contrasted** words still often being together as by last rule. This figure is called **chiasmus**, i. e. *crossing*, from the Greek letter, X: as, ratio enim nostra **consentit, repugnat oratio**; cum **spe vincendi** simul abjecisti **certandi etiam cupiditatem**; clariorem inter **Romanos** deditio **Postumium**, quam **Pontum** incruenta **victoria** inter **Samnites** fecit; **cedere alius, alius obtruncari**.

7. Where **cumulative effect**, or a sense of similarity rather than contrast, is desired, the **same order** of words is preserved in the component clauses. This figure is called **anaphōra**, i. e. *repetition*: as, his similes sunt omnes qui virtūti student: **levantur vitiis, levantur erroribus**; ut non neququam tantae virtutis homines judicari deberet ausos esse **transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas rupes, subire iniquissimum locum**.

261. Rhythm admits of no definite rules being given, but suggests:

1. That **short words** or expressions occupying a **distinct position** as subject, predicate, etc., be put first: as, **erant ei veteres inimicitiae** cum duobus Rosciis Amerinis; **terrebat et proximus annus lugubris** duorum consulum funeribus; **movet ferocem animum juvenis** seu ira seu detrectandi certaminis pudor seu inexistimabilis vis fati.

2. That there be **variety** in the arrangements of neighboring sentences as regards prosody and syntax. (Thus *chiasmus* and *anaphōra* are often found together.) **Examples**: Vide quid intersit inter tuam libidinem majorumque auctoritatem, inter amorem furemque tuum et illorum consilium atque prudentiam. Adde huc fontium gelidas perennitates, liquores perlucidos amnium, riparum vestitus viridissimos, speluncarum concavas amplitu-

dines, saxorum asperitates, impendentium montium altitudines immensitatesque camporum: adde etiam reconditas auri argentique venas infinitamque vim marmoris.

3. As the **rhythm of prose** is essentially distinct from that of verse, all **verse endings** should be avoided at the close of a sentence, particularly the hexameter termination of dactyl and spondee: as, *essē vidētur*.

The occasional use of such endings, and even of a full verse, in the historians, may be justified by the context, but should not be imitated in ordinary prose.

4. The following is a table of **cadences** approved by Cicero and Quintilian: *glōriām cōmpārāvīt; mēmbra firmārūnt; essē vidēātūr; cōgītāns sēntiō; tūi Scipīō; vāriētātēs; plūrībūs dē causīs; vīrūm cōndēmnārūnt; vidēri; nōvissē.*

262. Position of subordinate sentences.

1. **Subordinate sentences**, except those which express a result, follow the rule of qualificatory words or phrases: i. e., they are put **before** the principal sentence to which they belong; either before the whole of it or before all but a few words: as, *cum hostium copiae non longe absunt, etiamsi inruptio nulla facta est, tamen pecunia relinquitur, agricultura deseritur. Qui autem ita faciet, ut oportet, primum vigilet in deligendo (quem imitetur), deinde, quem probavit, in eo, quae maxime excellent, ea diligentissime persequatur. Quid autem agatur cum aperuero, facile erit statuere quam sententiam dicatis.*

2. A short principal sentence or clause is often prefixed to the whole or part of the subordinate sentence, especially if this be a dependent interrogative: as, *Stoicorum autem non ignoras quam sit subtile vel spinosum potius deserendi genus.*

263. A Period consists of at least two, and generally several sentences, so connected that the grammatical construction is not complete till the last clause is added.

1. A Period (*περίοδος*) is so called because the main proposition surrounds the interpolated clauses.

2. By being grouped together in due order, the clauses of a period produce the effect of logical completeness, and of that sonorous and dignified expression which accorded well with the majesty and dignity of the Roman character. (Kennedy.)

3. The usual arrangement of clauses in a period is analogous to that of words in a simple sentence, viz.:

First: The word or clause containing the **subject**, with the words or clauses immediately connected with it;

Second: The words or clauses denoting the **time, place, motive**;

Third: The word or clause expressing the **remoter object**;

Fourth: The word or clause expressing the **immediate object**;

Fifth: The **principal verb**.

To this order there are frequent exceptions, particularly in the position of the **principal verb**.

264. Both as regards **arrangement**, and in many other respects, it will be useful while writing a Latin composition to break off occasionally and read aloud extracts from some Roman author of the best period. This helps one to get into the right atmosphere for his work.



PROSODY.





265. QUANTITY IN VERSE.

1. In Latin, as in Greek, Verse depended upon the **Quantity** of syllables, every syllable being either **long** (—) or **short** (∪); and the various Metres resulted from the various relations of the long and short syllables to each other; their alternation producing the **rhythm** of the verse.

In English, on the contrary, and other modern languages, the rhythm of verse depends upon the **accentuation** or non-accentuation of the syllables.

2. A short syllable was said to contain *one mora* or *time*; a long syllable *two morae* or *times*.

Note.—The short syllable is the unit of measure, and has the value of  or an $\frac{1}{8}$ note in music. The long syllable has the value of  or a $\frac{1}{4}$ note.

3. Syllables which might, at the same period of the language, be either long or short, are called **common** (∩ or ∪).

4. Some syllables which at one period of the language were long, at another were short.

5. A long syllable resolved into two short is marked ∪∪; two short syllables contracted into a long, ∪∪.

6. A long syllable in the arsis (§ 283, 1, 3) may be prolonged so as to have the measure of three or even four short syllables, and may thus represent a whole foot. A syllable which includes **three times** is marked — (∪.); one which includes **four times**, — (∪∪).

7. A long syllable may be **shortened**, so as to take the place of a short syllable. Such a syllable is called **irrational**, and is marked > .

8. In most kinds of metre, the **last syllable** of every verse is **common**; that is, it may be regarded as either long or short, as the metre requires.

Note.—If the last syllable is **short**, where the metre requires a **long** syllable, the **pause** naturally made at the end of the verse gives it the additional time required; if on the other hand a **long** syllable stands here

for a **short**, the excess of time is not felt in consequence of this very anticipation of the effect of the pause. The voice, too, would give some indication of the irrational time.

266. QUANTITY BY POSITION.

1. A syllable is long by nature when it has a long vowel or diphthong : as, *fātō*, *maestīs*.

2. When a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, a double consonant, or the letter J, the syllable is long by position :

As, *fāctūs sūbsūnt*.

Exc.—In the compounds of *jugum* the syllable before *j* is short.

Note 1.—The consonants may be in the first word, or in two consecutive words. Where both are in the second word, the vowel usually remains short; the more careful poets avoid this position.

Note 2.—*H* does not give position; and *qv* has only the power of a single letter.

Note 3.—In the older language, final *s* preceded by a short vowel was slightly sounded, if at all; it was often, therefore, not written, and often with the older poets did not give position : as, *infantibūs parvis*; *torvūs draco*.

Note 4.—Before *cm* and *cn* in Greek words a vowel may remain short.

Note 5.—The comic poets sometimes keep a vowel short before two consonants.

3. A syllable ending in a short vowel coming before a mute followed by *l* or *r* is common :

As, *tenēbrae* or *tenēbrae*; *trīplex* or *trīplex*; *rētro* or *rētro*. In the same verse Vergil has *pātris*, *pātre*.

Exc.—The comic poets seem never to have lengthened a short vowel before a mute and a liquid.

1. This rule does not apply where the mute ends a syllable and the liquid begins another. In such cases the vowel is long by position, as in *āluo*, *ōbruo*.

4. One vowel (or diphthong) before another vowel, or before *h*, is short :

As, *mēae*, *trāho*, *īo*, *bōant*, *tūns*, *praestus*.

1. a of the old Genitive of the First Declension in *āi* is long : as, *terrāi*, *purpureāi*.

2. a or e is long before i in proper names ending in *ius* or *ia* : as, *Gāius*, *Pompēius*, *Aquilēia*; a is long in *āio*.

3. *e* is long in *diēi*; Lucretius has *rēi*; and once *fidēi* (as in Plautus and Ennius). So *ēi* in Lucretius, *ēi* in Catullus, the dative of *is*; it is sometimes contracted into one syllable, as is also *rei*.

Note 1.—In *ai* and *ei* followed by a vowel, the *j* both made a diphthong with the preceding *a* or *e*, and also was pronounced like English *y*: as, *Pompeius*, pronounced *Pompei-yus*. Cicero wrote the *i* double: as, *Pompei-ius*.

Note 2.—In the compounds of *jacio* it was usual to write *i* only once: as, *ēicit*, though the *i* was equivalent to *ji*. This accounts for the quantity of *rēicio*, where the *i* formed a diphthong with the *e* of *re*, and also a separate syllable. But *ei-cit*, *rei-cit*, are sometimes dissyllabic, and *ābīcit*, *ādīcit* are found with their first syllable short.

4. In genitives in *ius*, *i* is common, but generally long in prose: as, *ipsius*, *unius*. In *alius* (contracted for *aliius*), *i* is always long.

5. *I* is long before a vowel in *fīo*, except before *er*: as, *fīebam*, *fīam*; but *fīerem*. (Plautus and Terence sometimes have *fīeri*, etc.)

6. The following quantities should be noticed: *ēheu*, *Rhēa* (*Silvia*), *dīus*, *divine*; *Dīana*, *ōhe*.

7. Many Greek words keep a vowel long before another: as, *āer*, *musēum*, *Thalīa*; *Academīa*, in the best Latin; *daedalēus*, *chorēa*.

267. DIPHTHONGS AND CONTRACTED SYLLABLES.

1. Diphthongs, and vowels derived from diphthongs, are long: as, *āeger*, *audio*, *inīquus* (*in* + *aequus*).

1. *Prae* in composition is generally short before a vowel.

2. Sometimes a diphthong at the end of a word is shortened when the next word begins with a vowel: as, *insulāe Ionio*.

2. Contracted syllables are long: as, *fructūs* (*fructūis*), *nīl* (*nīhīl*), *prūdens* (*prōvidens*).

268. DERIVATIVES AND COMPOUNDS.

1. Derivative and compound words generally retain the quantity of their primitives:

As, *āmo*, *āmor*, *āmicus*, *āmicitia*, *māter*, *māternus*, *dēfēro*, *rēgīfugium*.

Exc.—Perfects and supines of two syllables have the first long, even when that of the present is short: as, *vēni*, *vīdi*, *mōtum*.

Note.—In such perfects as *rūi*, the penult is of course short.

2. Eight perfects and ten supines have the first syllable short: *bībi*, *dēdi*, *fīdi*, *līqui* (from *liqueo*), *scīdi*, *stēti*, *stīti*, *tūli*; *cītum*, *dātum*, *ītum*, *lītum*, *quītum*, *rātum*, *rūtum*, *sātum*, *sītum*, *stātum* (from *sisto*).

These perfects seem either to be reduplicated or to have once been so.

3. Reduplicated perfects have the first two syllables short: as, *cēcīdi* (from *cādo*), *pēpūli*, *cēcīni*, *dīdīci*.

Note.—The second syllable is sometimes long by position: as, *fēfēlli*, *mōmōrdi*. *Cēcīdi* (from *caedo*) has the second syllable long, because the *i* represents the diphthong *ae*; *pēpēdi*, from *pēdo*, also has a long penult.

4. Some apparent derivatives are illusory: *rēx*, *rēgis*, *rēgīna* do not come from *rēgo*. Variations of quantity do occur, however, in words supposed to come from the same root.

5. The change of a vowel or diphthong in forming a compound does not alter its quantity.

6. The quantity of the simple word is changed in some compounds: as, *agnītus* and *cognītus*, from *nōtus*; *pejēro* and *dejēro*, from *jūro*.

7. *Ne-* is generally long: but short in *nēque*, *nēqueo*, *nēfas*, *nēfandus*, *nēfarius*, and some other words.

8. *Pro* is generally long in composition; but there are many exceptions: as, *prōcella*, *prōfanus*, *prōficiscor*, *prōfecto*, *prōfugus*, *prōfundus*, *prōfari*, *prōfiteor*, *prōtervus* (also *prōtervus* in Plautus), *prōnepos*, *prōneptis*, *prōfundo* (*prōfundo*, Catullus); *prōpello* twice in Lucretius, elsewhere long; *prōcuro*, *prōpino*, *prōpago*; *Prōserpina* regularly, but Horace and Seneca each once *Prōserpina*. In Greek words *pro* remains short; but *prōlogus* in Plautus and Terence.

9. The inseparable prepositions *dī*, *sē*, *vē* are long; *rē* or *rēd*, short.

10. *Re* is sometimes lengthened by position. In the oldest Latin the quantity was *rē* or *rēd* generally. Hexameter poets have *rēligio*, *rēlicuus*, *rēliquiae*; but the later poets always *rēliquus*.

11. In *rēfert*, the first syllable is not the preposition, but from *res*; *rēfero* has *rēfert*.

269. MONOSYLLABLES.

1. Monosyllables ending in a vowel are long: except the enclitics (§11, 2) and the nominative and accusative *quā*.

2. Monosyllables ending in a consonant are long.

1. Such as end in *b*, *d*, *l*, *t* are short; but *sāl* and *sōl*, and diphthongs, as *aut* and *hūd*, are long.

2. *Fāc*, *nēc*, *ān*, *īn*, *fēr*, *pēr*, *tēr*, *vīr*, *cōr*, *bīs*, *cīs*, *īs*, *quīs*, are short; as is *ēs* from *sum*, although Plautus has *ēs*. The pronoun *hīc* is common; *hōc* (nominative and accusative) is long in the later poets, common in the old dramatic poets. The quantity of *ac* is uncertain, as it never comes before a vowel in good writers.

270. FINAL SYLLABLES IN POLYSYLLABLES.

1. In words of more than one syllable, final *i*, *o*, and *u* are long ; *a*, *e*, and *y* are short.

Exceptions.—*a* final is long :

1. In the **Ablative Singular** of the **First Declension** : *as*, *mensā*.
2. In the **Imperative** of the **First Conjugation** (but *putā* is used parenthetically).
3. Sometimes in the **Nominative** of **Greek nouns**, and in the **Vocative** of nouns in *as*.
4. In **Numerals** : *as*, *trigintā*.
5. In **Prepositions** and **Adverbs** : *as*, *contrā*, *frustrā*, *postea* (but we have *itā*, *quā* ; *eiā* or *heiā* is perhaps common).

e final is long :

1. In the **Ablative** of the **Fifth Declension** : *as*, *diē*, *hodiē*.
2. In the second person singular of the **Imperative** of the **Second Conjugation** : *as*, *gaudē*. (But sometimes *cavē*, *vidē*.)
3. In **Adverbs** from **Adjectives** of the **Second Declension** : *as*, *valdē*, *aegrē* ; also in *fermē*, *ferē*, *ohē*. (But *benē*, *malē*, *infernē* (Lucr.), *supernē* (Lucr., Hor.), *temerē*.)
4. When it represents the **Greek long e** (*η*) : *as*, *Hebē*.

i final is short :

1. In **Greek Nominatives**, and some **Greek Datives** and **Vocatives**.
2. In *nisī*, *quasī*, *necubī*, *sicubī*, *cuī* (when a dissyllable).

i final is common :

1. In *mihī*, *tibī*, *sibī*, *ibī*, *ubī*.

Note.—In hexameter poets, *ibīdem* ; in scenic poets, *ibīdem* ; *utīque*, *utīnam*, although always *utī* ; *ubīnam*, *ubīvis*, but *ubīque*.

o final is short :

In *cedō*, *citō*, *duō*, *egō*, *modō* (but sometimes *modō* in Lucretius and *egō* in Plautus).

o final is common :

1. In some **Nouns**, especially **Proper Names**.
2. In **Verb endings** (but generally long in the best period) ; and in later writers, even in the ending *-do* of the **Gerund**.
3. In the **Silver Age** in *quandō*, *porrō*, *serō*, *ambō*, *octō*, and a number of other words. (In all ages *quandōquidem*.)

2. *o* final lengthens the vowel : except *donēc*.

3. *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, and *t* final shorten the vowel.

Exceptions :

1. *nihil*.
2. **Greek nouns in n** which have the preceding vowel long in Greek.
3. *Celtibēr*, *Hibēr* (*Ibēr*), *dispār*, *impār*; **Greek nouns in er** which have *ē* (η) in Greek.
4. The final syllable of **contracted perfects** is long: as, *disturbāt*, *petīt*, *obīt*; so often the final syllable of *petiit* and of *iit* and its compounds.
4. *as*, *es*, and *os* final are long :

Exceptions :

1. *ās* in the **Nominative Singular and Accusative Plural** of **Greek nouns** which have the *a* short in Greek.
2. *penēs*; **Nouns of the Third Declension** which increase short: as, *milēs*, *millītis* (but *pēs* and its compounds, *Cerēs*, *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *pariēs*, remain long); compounds of *ēs*: as, *potēs*, *adēs*; *ēs* in words representing a short ending in Greek: as, *cacoethēs*, *Arcadēs*.
3. *exōs*, *compōs*, *impōs*; *ōs* in words which have a short ending in Greek: as, *Chīōs*, *Phasidōs*.
5. *is*, *us*, and *ys* final are short :

Exceptions :

1. *īs* in the **Dative and Ablative Plural**; *īs* in the **Accusative Plural** of the **Third Declension**; *īs* in the second person singular of the **Present Subjunctive**; *īs* in compounds of *vīs*: as, *mavīs*, *quamvīs*; *īs* in **Nominatives** which increase long (as, *Samnīs*, *Samnītis*); *īs* representing a long syllable in Greek: as, *Salamīs*, *Salamīnis*; *īs* in the **Future Perfect**, and *īs* in the **Perfect Subjunctive**; *sanguīs*; Vergil has once *pulvīs*.
2. *ūs* in **Nominatives** which have *ū* in the Genitive: as, *virtūs*, *virtūtis*, but Horace has once *palūs*; *ūs* in the **Genitive Singular and Nominative and Accusative Plural** of the **Fourth Declension**; *ūs* representing Greek *ovς*: as, *Panthūs*.
3. *ys* in *Tethys* and *chrysophrys*.

271. QUANTITY OF INCREMENTS.

A noun is said to **increase** when any case of it is longer than the nominative singular, by one or more syllables; and a verb, when any part of it is longer than the second singular present indicative active, by one or more syllables. The penult syllable of such increased form is called the **increment**. Thus, *-sa* is the increment in *mensarum*, and *-no* in *honoris*. In longer forms, when more than one syllable is added, there may be a second or third increment: as, *vecti¹-ga²-lis*, *vecti¹-ga¹-li²-a*, *mo¹-nu¹-i²*, *mo¹-nu¹-is²-sem*, *mo¹-nu¹-is²-se³-mus*; or also a fourth: as, *au¹-di²-e³-ba⁴-mi²-ni*.

1. In the increment of nouns and adjectives, *a* and *o* are long; *e*, *i*, *u*, and *y* are short :

As, *mensārum*, *audācis*; *puerōrum*, *doctiōris*; *puēri*, *pēdis*; *vīri*, *divītis*; *portūbus*, *vultūris*; *Erȳcis*.

Exceptions:

a is short:

in Greek nouns in **a** and **as** of the third declension: *as*, *poēmā*, *poēmātis*, *lampas*, *lampādis*.

in masculine nouns in **-al** and **-ar**: *as*, *Caesar*, *Caesāris*.

in those Latin nouns in **-as** whose genitive does not end in **-atis**: *as*, *mas*, *māris*; but *vas*, *vāsis*; and *anas*, *anātis*.

in *par*, *pāris*, and its compounds, and in *baccar*, *hepar*, *jubar*, *nectar*, and *sal*.

in nouns ending in **s** preceded by a consonant: *as*, *trabs*, *trābis*.

e is long:

in the fifth declension: *as*, *diēbus*, *diērum*.

in Greek words in **-ter**, **-tēris** and **-es**, **-ētis**: *as*, *cratēris*, *lobētis*.

in words whose genitive ends in **-ēnis**: *as*, *ren*, *rēnis*.

in many words which cannot be classified: *as*, *vēris*, *Ibēris*, *lēgis*, *rēgis*, *mercēdis*, *herēdis*, *plēbis*, *quiētis*, *locuplētis*, *vervēcis*.

i is long:

in nouns in **-in** and **-is** of the third declension: *as*, *delphin*, *delphīnis*; *Salamīs*, *Salamīnis*.

in nouns and adjectives in **-ix**, **-īcis**: *as*, *radix*, *radīcis*, *felix*, *felīcis*.

Note.—But *calix*, *filix*, *fornix*, *nix*, *pix*, *salix*, *strix*, and some others, increase **short**: *i. e.*, in **-īcis**, except *nix*, *nīvis*, *strix*, *strīgis*.

in nouns in **-is**, **-ītis**: *as*, *Quiris*, *Quirītis*; *lis*, *lītis*; in *glis*, *glīris*; *vis*, *vīres* (plur.), and a few more.

o of the third declension is short:

in nouns ending in **us**: *as*, *tempōris*, from *tempus*; *lepōris*, from *lepus*.

in neuter nouns in **-or** and **-ur**: *as*, *marmōris*, from *marmor*; *jecōris*, from *jēcūr*.

in many Greek nouns, having **o** short in Greek: *as*, *Hectōr*, *Hectōris*; *aedōn*, *aedōnis*; *tripūs*, *tripōdis*; *rhetor*, *rhetōris*.

in nouns and adjectives ending in **s** preceded by a consonant: *as*, *inōpis*, from *inops*.

arbor, *memor*, *boſ*, *compos*, *impos*, *lepus*, *praecox*, and some others, have **o** short: *as*, *arbōris*, *memōris*, *bōvis*, *compōtis*, etc.

national names generally have **o** short: *as*, *Macedōnis*. But there is great variety.

u is long:

in many nouns of the third declension ending in **ūs**: *as*, *virtūtis*, *palūdis*, *rūris*, *tellūris*.

Note.—*Frūgis*, *fūris*, *lūcis*, *plūris*, *Pollūcis* (from [*frux*], *fur*, *lux*, *plus*, *Pollux*), and some others, have **u** long.

y is long :

in some words, mostly foreign : as, *Ceŷcis*, *Trachŷnis*.

in some other words it is common.

2. In the increment of verbs **a**, **e**, **o**, and **u** are long : **i** is short :

As, *amātis*, *monebātis*, *audiātis*, *ferātis*; *legēmus*, *legēbamus*; *amātōte*; *amatūrus*, *solūtum*; *legīmus*, *monuīmus*.

Exceptions :

do and its compounds have the stem vowel (or first increment) short : as, *dāre*, *dābamus*, *dābo*, *dāturus*.

Note.—But the vowel **a** is long in *da* and *das*.

e before **r** is short in the first increment of the present and imperfect tenses of the third conjugation; and in the second increment of futures ending in *-bēris* and *-bēre*: as, *regēre* (inf. and imperat.), *regēris* or *regēre* (pres. ind. pass.), *regēremus*, *regēremur*; *amabēris*, *docebēris*.

e is short before *-ram*, *-rim*, *-ro*, and the persons formed from them: as, *amavēram*, *monuērim*, *legēro*.

e before **r** in the third plur. perf. ind. act. is sometimes shortened by the poets: as, *stetērunt* (§ 279).

i is long :

in perfects in *-īvi*: as, *petīvi*;

in supines of verbs with such perfects: as, *petītum*.

in the first increment of the fourth conjugation: as, *audīrem*.

Note 1.—But *-īmus* in the perf. is short.

Note 2.—If the **i** comes before a vowel, it is short.

in subjunctives in *-im*: as, *sīmus*, *sītis*, *velīmus*.

in the imperative of *nolo*: as, *nolīto*.

i is common,

but oftener long, in *rīmus* and *rītis* of the perfect subjunctive;

but oftener short, in *rīmus* and *rītis* of the future perfect.

u is short :

in the first person plural: as, *sūmus*, *volūmus*.

272. PENULTS AND ANTEPENULTS.

Rules are sometimes given for the quantity of penults and antepenults; but they have many exceptions, and such quantities are best learned by practice in reading poetry, etc., with the aid of a Dictionary or Gradus.

273. NATURAL QUANTITY.—AUTHORITY.

1. We are often ignorant of the natural quantity of Latin syllables which we call long by position. The ancients carefully distinguished in pronunciation such words as *lēcto*, *I read*, and *lēcto*, from *lēctus*, *a couch*. General

laws of language give us here some help. Some special laws, too, are well established; thus, every vowel followed by *ns* or *nf* was long by nature: as in *mēns*, *sapiēns*, *īnfelix*, *cōnfecit*; while *e* was short in *mēntis*, *sapiēntis*; *o* in *pōntis*, *fōntis*, *mōntis*. In many cases we know the length of the vowel by finding the Latin word written in Greek: as, *Sēstius*, Σήστιος, *Rōscius*, Ῥώσκιος.

2. When we have no other reason, it is customary to say that a syllable is long or short *by authority*,—that is, the authority of the poets, whose *usage* is our guide.

274. ELISION.

1. When one word ends in a vowel or diphthong, or the letter *m*, and the following word begins with a vowel or *h*, such final vowel or diphthong, or *m* with its vowel, is elided; that is, does not count in the verse:

As, *Quidve moror, si omnes uno ordine habetis Achivos*; scanned thus:

Quidve moror, si omnes un^o ordin^e habetis Achivos.

2. The first vowel of *est*, and sometimes of *es*, is often elided, instead of the preceding vowel: as, *labori 'st*; *timendumst*; *simili's* (*similis es*).

3. The earlier poets use elision more freely than the later. In the best ages, usage varies in different authors and in different styles of verse.

4. In reading, the elided vowels should be pronounced slightly and rapidly, rather than suppressed altogether.

5. The elision of a final vowel or diphthong is called *synaloepha*; that of *m* with the preceding vowel *ecthipsis*.

6. On the elision of final *s*, see § 266, 2, n. 3.

275. HIATUS.

Sometimes a vowel is left unelided before another. This open concurrence of vowels is called *hiātus*:

As, *Nereidum matri et Neptuno Aegæo.*

1. The monosyllabic interjections, *ā*, *ō*, *heu*, are not elided by the dactylic poets.

Note 1.—Such elision would too much obscure and weaken the word. *Io* is found unelided in a few sentences, and once in Ovid the Greek interjection *ai ai*.

Note 2.—*O*, though not elided, is sometimes made short.

2. Sometimes a long vowel is left unelided and long in the arsis of a foot (282, 1, 3): as,

Stant et juniperī et castaneāe hirsutae.
Ter sunt conatī imponere Peliō Ossam.

Once only Vergil leaves a syllable thus long in the thesis of the foot :

Glaucō et Panopēāe ēt Inōō Melicertae.

3. Vergil allows himself an **hiatus**, first, in the **arsis** of the second, third, fourth, or fifth foot, especially in proper names followed by a mark of punctuation, or where the same vowel is the initial of the following word; secondly, in the **thesis**, when in accordance with Greek precedents a long vowel or diphthong is **shortened**, especially in the case of **proper names** and **interjections**; with **short** vowels in the thesis, hiatus occurs only before a strong mark of punctuation (as in Aen. i. 405).

4. Hiatus in Vergil is often found in those lines which are formed on a Greek model, i. e., those which terminate in a quadrisyllable (and this, moreover, is frequently of Greek origin), or which have a spondaic ending.

276. SYNAERĒSIS.

1. Two vowels usually pronounced separately are sometimes contracted into one syllable :

As, *aureā*, pronounced something like *aurȳā*; *ferreī*; *ēosdem*, pronounced somewhat like *yōsdem*. So sometimes *Phaethon* for *Phaëthon*; *Orpheā*, *alveō*, *deōrsum*, *deīn*, *deesse*, *anteīt*.

2. Such contraction is frequent in *ii*, *iidem*, *iisdem*, *dii*, *diis*, *dein*, *deinceps*, *deinde*, *deest*, *deerat*, *deero*, *deerit*, *deesse*, etc.

3. The vowels *i* and *u* are often made consonantal before another vowel: as, *vindemjator* (pronounced *vindemyator*), for *vindemiator*; so *arjetat*, *abjete*, *parjetibus*, *omnja*, *precantja*, *consiljum*, for *arietat*, etc.; for *genua*, *genva* (pronounced *genwa*); so *pitvita*, *patrvi*, *sinvatis*, etc. In the genitive plural of the Fourth Declension, *nu* is sometimes contracted.

4. When *i* and *u* are thus consonantal, they have, with another consonant, the power of lengthening a preceding short vowel.

5. If only one of the vowels is written, the contraction is called **crasis**: as, *di*, *derit*.

277. DIALŶSIS OR DIAERĒSIS.

One syllable is sometimes divided into two :

As, *Tro-i-a* for *Tro-ja*; *sil-ŭ-a* for *sil-va*; *su-es-co* for *sue-sco*; *Or-phe-us* for *Or-phens*.

278. SYNCOPE.

A short vowel, or a syllable, is sometimes omitted: as, *repostor* for *repositor*; *surpuit* for *surripuit*.

279. SYSTŎLE.

A syllable long by nature or position is sometimes **shortened**: as, *vidēn* for *vidēsne*; *hōdie* for *hōc die*, constantly; *stetērunt* for *stetērunt*, occasionally.

280. *DIASTÖLE*.

A syllable naturally short is sometimes lengthened: as, *Prīamides* for *Prīamides*. Vergil sixteen times lengthens -que.

281. *TMESIS*.

Tmesis is the separation of the component parts of a compound word by an intervening word or words: as, *inque salutatam* for *insalutatamque*.

282. *SYNAPHĒA OR CONTINUITY*.

1. The first syllable of a following verse sometimes has an influence on the last syllable of the preceding, either by **position** or **elision**.

This is not uncommon in the Anapaestic system, and the Glyconic of Catullus.

2. The parts of a compound word are sometimes divided between two verses: as,

si non offenderet unum-

Quemque poetarum limae labor et mora.

3. For **hypermetrical** verses, see § 287.

VERSIFICATION.

283. A verse is composed of a certain number of feet.

1. Each foot has two parts,—the **arsis**, on which falls a special stress of voice called the **ictus**, or **stroke**, and the **thesis**.* The regular alternation of arsis and thesis in successive feet produces the **rhythm** or harmonious movement of the verse.

2. The most common feet in Latin are the following :

Feet of Three Times. *

Trochee	— ◡	ărmă	
Iamb	◡ —	cănô	
Tribrach	◡ ◡ ◡	tēmērē	

Feet of Four Times.

Dactyl	— ◡ ◡	lîtōră	
Anapaest	◡ ◡ —	pătŭlăe	
Spondee	— —	fătō	

* Originally, "the more strongly intoned part of the measure was called **thesis** (*thesis*), because in beating time the foot was here set down, while the lighter part of the measure, during which the foot was raised, was called **arsis** (*arsis*)."
The Roman writers inverted this use. The **accent** in the examples marks the regular place of the **ictus**.

3. The **ictus** falls on the **long syllable**, as marked in the examples.

4. The **spondee** and the **tribrach** are merely representative feet, and take their character and ictus from the kind of verse in which they are found.

5. The following is a full list of Feet or so-called Feet.

Pyrrhic	∪ ∪	pătēr	Paeon Secundus	∪ - ∪ ∪	āmābīmūs
Iamb	∪ -	āmānt	Paeon Tertius	∪ ∪ ∪	nēmōrālīs
Trochee	- ∪	vidīt	Paeon Quartus	∪ ∪ ∪ -	rēgīmīnī
Spondee	- -	lātōs	Ionic <i>a minori</i>	∪ ∪ -	mētūentēs
Tribrach	∪ ∪ ∪	rēgērē	Ionic <i>a majori</i>	- - ∪ ∪	tērrēbīmūs
Anapaest	∪ ∪ -	ānīmōs	Diiambus	∪ - ∪ -	prōtērvītās
Dactyl	- ∪ ∪	cōrpōrā	Ditrochee	- ∪ - ∪	cōndīdīssē
Cretic	- ∪ -	dīxērānt	Choriamb	- ∪ ∪ -	ōppōsītīs
Amphibrach	∪ - ∪	lātīnūs	Antispast	∪ - - ∪	rēgēbāmūr
Bacchius	∪ - -	rēgēbānt	Epitritus Primus	∪ - - -	āmāvīstī
Palimbacchius	- - ∪	rēxīssē	Epitritus Secundus	- ∪ - -	aūdīēbās
Molossus	- - -	dīcēbās	Epitritus Tertius	- - ∪ -	aūdīvērānt
Proceleusmatic	∪ ∪ ∪ ∪	hōmīnībūs	Epitritus Quartus	- - - ∪	rēxīssēmūs
Paeon Primus	- ∪ ∪ ∪	cōndīdīmūs	Dispondeo	- - - -	sūspxērunt

6. In **Falling Rhythms**, the verse moves from **long syllables** to **short**, as in verses composed of **dactyls** and **trochees**; in **Rising Rhythms**, from **short to long**, as in verses composed of **iamb**s and **anapaests**. Rising rhythms may be treated as **Falling**, by considering the first short syllable or syllables as an **Anacrūsīs**, or **Base** (284, C).

284. Explanation of technical terms.

A. **Hemimēris** (ἡμίμερος) means $\frac{1}{2}$. Hence one foot and a half ($\frac{3}{2}$) is called **Trihemimeris**; two feet and a half ($\frac{5}{2}$), **Penthemimeris**; three feet and a half ($\frac{7}{2}$), **Hepthemimeris**; four feet and a half ($\frac{9}{2}$), **Ennehemimeris**.

1. Hence: a. **Caesura** (§ 285) after $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet is called **Trihemimeral**; b. after $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet, **Penthemimeral**; c. after $3\frac{1}{2}$ feet, **Hepthemimeral**; d. after $4\frac{1}{2}$ feet, **Ennehemimeral**.

Examples:

	a	b	c	d
1. Fúdit equúm		magnó		tellús
				percússa
				tridénti.—Verg.
2. Aut ámite		lévi		rára
				téndit
				rétia.—Hor.
	a	b	c	d

In the first verse, a **Dactylic Hexameter**, the fourth caesura is **weak**, the others **strong** (§ 285, 7).

In the second verse, an **Iambic Trimeter**, all the caesuras are after thesis, and therefore **weak**.

2. In distinction from *Caesura* (which is the coincidence of the close of a word with the middle of a foot), the coincidence of the close of a word with the close of a foot is called *Diæresis*: as,

Lumina | labentem caelo quae | ducitis | annum.

3. *Diæresis* in some metres coincides with a natural pause in the verse, caused by the ending of a rhythmic series. It is marked ||.

B. Metre (*μέτρον, measure*) is used in two senses.

I. **Metre**, in the first place, means the verse or system of verses used by a poet in any composition: as, *Heroic, Elegiac, Alcæic, Sapphic Metre*.

1. A Metre which contains only one kind of verse is called *Monocolium*; a metre which contains only two kinds, *Dicolum*; one which contains only three kinds, *Tricolum* (from *μόνος, single*; *κῶλον, member*).

2. When two kinds of verse alternate, they form *Distichum* (from *δῖς, twice*; *στίχος, row*), a *Distich* or couple.

When recurrence takes place after four verses, these form a *Tetrastich* (*stanza*).

3. Thus the *Dactylic Hexameter* (*Heroic*), *Iambic Trimeter*, *Trochaic Tetrameter*, and others, are found as *Metra Monocola*. The *Elegiac Metre* and many others are *Dicola Disticha*. The *Sapphic* and some others are *Dicola Tetrasticha*. The *Alcæic* is *Tricolum Tetrastichum*.

II. **Metre**, in the second place, is used to express a given portion of a Verse in some Rhythms: as the *Dactylic*, the *Trochaic*, the *Iambic*, and the *Anapaestic*.

1. In a *Dactylic Verse*, one foot constitutes a *Metre*.

In *Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapaestic Rhythms* two feet, or a *Dipody* (*διποδία*), constitute a *Metre*.

2. A Verse comprised in a single Metre is called *Monometer*; in two, *Dimeter*; in three, *Trimeter*; in four, *Tetrameter*; in five, *Pentameter*; in six, *Hexameter*.

3. Wanting one syllable to complete its metres a Verse is called *Catalectic* (*καταληκτικός*); in *syllābam*, if the incomplete foot retains one syllable; in *disyllābum*, if it retains two; wanting two syllables, *Brachycatalectic* (*βραχυκατάληκτος*); having a syllable above its metres, *Hypercatalectic* (*ὑπερκατάληκτος*); having its metres complete, *Acatalectic* (*ἀκατάληκτος*).

4. The time of the omitted syllable or syllables in a catalectic verse is filled by a pause. A pause of one time, equivalent to a short syllable, is marked \wedge ; a pause of two times, $\overline{\wedge}$.

5. A Verse may also be called according to the number of feet: *Binarius* (2), as the *Adonian*; *Ternarius* (3), as the *Pherecratæan*; *Quaternarius* (4), as the *Trochaic* or *Iambic Dimeter*; *Senarius* (6), as the *Dactylic Hexameter* or the *Iambic Trimeter*; *Septenarius* (7), as the *Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic*; *Octonarius* (8), as the *Trochaic Tetrameter Acatalectic* of the scenic poets.

6. Or a Verse may be called according to the number of its syllables, as *Phalæcius Hendecasyllabus* (11). So the *Alcæic Strophe* consists of two *Alcæic Hendecasyllabi* (11), one *Alcæic Enneasyllabus* (9), and one *Alcæic Decasyllabus* (10).

C. 1. A syllable at the beginning of a Verse before the just Rhythm, is called *Anacrūsīs* (*ἀνάκρουσις, back-stroke*): as (according to one mode of scansion),

O | magna Carthago probrosis.

2. Two syllables so preceding the just Rhythm are called a **Base**, which may be trochaic :

Lūte | umve papaver ;

or spondaic :

Dūrām | difficilis mane ;

or even iambic.

3. A double **Base**, according to some metrists, is trochee + spondee, e. g., in the Sapphic Verse, as they explain it :

Illē mī pār | esse deo videtur.

This may even have an Anacrusis before it: as,

Mōrs | ēt fūgācēm | persequitur virum.

D. A Verse is called **Asynartēte** (ἀσυνάρτητος) which is really composed of two different verses welded together :

Tu vina Torquato move || consule pressa meo (§ 299, 1).

E. Some kinds of verse are named after their inventor or first user, usually a Greek lyric poet: e. g., Archilōchus, Alcaeus, Alcman, Sappho, Hippōnax, Anacreon, Pherecrātes, Asclepiādes, and Glycon.

285. THE DACTYLIC HEXAMETER.

1. The dactylic hexameter, first adapted from the Greek by Ennius, became the heroic measure in Latin. It consists of six feet, of which the last is always a spondee, the fifth is generally a dactyl, and any of the first four may be either a dactyl or a spondee.

2. From its sustained and continuous flow, this is the verse best adapted for narrative (or epic) poems, and it is used also in didactic poems, satires, and poetic epistles.

3. The spondee has the same time as the dactyl, and in dactylic verse takes an ictus on its first syllable.

4. In Homer, the last foot is a trochee or curtailed dactyl; while the best Latin verse lets us see that in the writer's mind it was rather a genuine spondee. (Munro.)

5. Sometimes the fifth foot is a spondee. The line is then called spondaic.

6. The last word in the verse is seldom a monosyllable, and only so to produce a special effect: as, *procumbit humi bos; praeruptus aquae mons.*

7. A light and rapid movement is given to the verse by frequency of dactyls; a slow and weighty movement by spondees: as,

Quādrupēdāntē pūtrēm sōnītū quātīt ūngulā cāmpūm.

Īlli īntēr sēsē māgnā vī brācēhīā tōllūnt.

286. CAESURA.

1. **Caesūra** occurs where a word, which began in a preceding foot, ends in the middle of a foot :

As, Ūnā sā | lūs† vīc | tīs†, nūl | lām† spē | rārē† sā | lūtēm.

2. In every verse, melody requires a **pause**. This ordinarily corresponds with a caesura, and is called the **caesural pause**.

In the example above, it is marked †, the other caesuras being marked |.

3. The caesural pause frequently concurs with a pause of sense; and where there are several possible places for it, considerations of the sense and of the proper connection of words have weight in determining it. Thus :

Hīnc mātēr† cūltrīx† Cŷbēlī,† Cōrŷbāntīāque āera.
Nēque īntēr† sānctōs† īgnēs† īn hōnōrē dēōrum.

4. The most natural and common place of the caesural pause in a hexameter verse is after the arsis in the third foot : as,

Cōntīcūere ōmnēs,† īntēntīque ōrā tēnēbānt.

A pause in the fourth foot, however, is very agreeable, when at the same time there is a less considerable pause in the second foot : as,

Ītālīām,† fatō† prōfūgūs† Lāvīnīāque vēnit.

5. The so-called **Bucolic Caesura** is a diaeresis (§ 284, A, 2) at the end of the fourth foot : as,

Ītē dōmūm sātŭrae, vēnīt Hēsperūs, || ĩtē cāpēllae.

6. The more frequent occurrence of the pause in the third foot gives the flow of the verse a certain unity, while occasional changes of its place prevent monotony. The expression of the verse is greatly affected by the place of the pause or pauses. The earlier caesuras in general give to the verse more vivacity; the later, more gravity.

7. When only one syllable in the foot precedes it, the caesura is called **strong**, or *masculine*; when two syllables, it is called **weak**, *trochaic*, or *feminine*. Thus, the caesura after spērārē is **weak** in the verse

Ūnā sālūs vīctīs, nūllām spērārē sālūtem;

and the other caesuras in the same verse are **strong** (unless, with some grammarians, we regard the ending of a word before the end of the first foot as making a caesura, in which case there is a weak caesura after una).

287. HYPERMETRICAL VERSES.

Ennius and Vergil sometimes introduce a verse containing a syllable beyond the number requisite for the metre; this syllable, however, ends in a vowel, or in *m* preceded by a vowel, and is elided before the initial vowel of the following line.

Such verses are sometimes effective as denoting that the speaker is *carried on* beyond bounds by his excitement, or breaks off leaving something still unsaid; or simply as giving an emphatic ending to the sentence.

Examples :

Īmprecōr, ārma ārmīs; pūgnēnt īpsīquē nēpōtēsque.
Sē sātīs āmbōbūs Teūcrīsquē vēnīrē Lātīnīsque.

288. THE ELEGIAC DISTICH.

The Elegiac distich consists of a **Dactylic Hexameter** verse followed by a so-called **Pentameter**. The latter consists of two Dactylic penthemimers: each penthemimer consisting of two feet,—either of which, in the first, may be a dactyl or a spondee, but both of which must be dactyls in the second,—followed by a long syllable. The long syllable is dwelt upon, and followed by a pause, so that it is really equivalent to a foot; and the verse should be called **hexameter**, though differing from the ordinary dactylic hexameter.

Examples :

Jā sēgēs ēst ūbī Trōjā fūit, rēsēcāndāquē fālce
Lūxūriāt Phrŷgiō || sānguīnē pīnguīs hūmūs, ¯
Sēmīsepūltā vīrūm cūrvis fērīuntūr ārātrīs
Ōssā, rūnōsas || ōcūlīt hērbā dōmōs. ¯

289. OTHER DACTYLIC METRES.

1. The **Dactylic Tetrameter acatalectic** occurs rarely. It consists of four **Dactyls**, for either of the first three of which a **Spondee** may be substituted:

⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏

2. The **Dactylic Tetrameter catalectic** is similar to the last four feet of the **Hexameter**. It is used chiefly with other verses:

⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏ | ⏏ ⏏

3. The **Dactylic Dimeter catalectic** (called **Adonic** from a poem of Sappho addressing Adonis), like the last two feet of the Hexameter, consists of a **Dactyl** and a **Trochee** or **Spondee**. In the **Sapphic strophe**, the dactyl is **cyclic**, and the second foot a **trochee**:

— ∪ | ∪ ∪


4. The **Dactylic Trimeter catalectic** in **syllābam**, or **minor Archilochian**, consists of two **Dactyls** and a **long syllable**. It is used only with other verses. By adding a **pause**, it may be regarded as **Dactylic Trimeter**:

— ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∪ | —

290. TROCHAIC METRES.

1. **Trochaic Tetrameter catalectic** consists of **eight trochees** (two trochees making a metre), for any of which an irrational trochee may be used, and for any but the last a cyclic dactyl, an apparent anapaest (here a resolved irrational trochee), or a tribrach. There is a **diaerēsis** after the first dimeter. Found only in the comic poets.

Note 1.—As a **long syllable shortened**, so as to take the place of a short syllable in verse, is called **irrational**, and marked >, the same name is given to the foot in which it occurs; thus, a **spondee used for a trochee** is called an **irrational trochee**, ∪ >, and a **spondee used for an iamb**, an **irrational iamb**, > ∪.

Note 2.—A dactyl taking the place of a trochee is called a **cyclic dactyl**, and is marked ∪ ∪; it may be represented approximately by ; an anapaest taking the place of an iamb is called a **cyclic anapaest**, marked ∪ ∪ ∪. The name **cyclic**, given by the ancients, is supposed to be derived from the use of these rapid feet in the dancing measures in the choruses.

Note 3.—A tribrach taking the place of a trochee has the ictus on its first syllable, its first two syllables representing the long syllable of the trochee, which of course has the ictus. A **spondee used for a trochee** has also its ictus on the first syllable.

2. **Trochaic Tetrameter catalectic** consists of seven trochees and an additional syllable; the **diaerēsis** after the first dimeter. It is frequent in comic poets with the same choice of feet as in the acatalectic. Seneca observes stricter rules, allowing tribrachs in the odd places, except the last, spondees (i. e., irrational trochees) and irrational anapaests in the even places, and cyclic dactyls in the first, second, and sixth places.

Note.—By observing a **pause** after the syllable in the eighth place, the verse may be treated as **acatalectic**. The same principle applies in other catalectic measures.

3. **Trochaic Dimeter catalectic** consists of three trochees and a long syllable. It is used only in combination with other verses.

4. **Trochaic Dimeter brachycatalectic**, or **Ithyphallic**, consists of **three trochees**, and hence may be called **Trochaic Tripody**. It is used only with other verses.

291. DACTYLO-TROCHAIC OR LOGAOEDIC VERSES.

1. The **Greater Archilochian metre** consists of **four cyclic dactyls** followed by **three trochees**. In any of the first three feet, **irrational trochees** may be used. It is found only with other verses.

$\overset{>}{\text{L}}\text{V} \mid \overset{>}{\text{L}}\text{V} \mid \overset{>}{\text{L}}\text{V} \mid \text{L}\text{V} \mid \text{L}\text{V} \mid \text{L}\text{V} \mid \text{L}\text{V}$

2. The **Alcæic Decasyllable** consists of **two cyclic dactyls** (not each contained in a single word), followed by **two trochees**. It is a combination of the endings of the two metres used in the first three lines (§ 292, 4, 5) of the **Alcæic stanza**, in which it forms, as a **refrain**, the **fourth** or closing line.

$\text{L}\text{V} \mid \text{L}\text{V} \mid \text{L}\text{V} \mid \text{L}\text{V}$

3. The **Aristophanic** consists of a **dactyl** followed by **two trochees**; or, otherwise, of a **cyclic dactyl**, a **trochee**, a **lengthened long syllable**, and a **long syllable with pause**:

$\text{L}\text{V} \mid \text{L}\text{V} \mid \overset{\text{˘}}{\text{—}} \mid - \wedge$

292. TROCHAEO-DACTYLIC METRES.

1. The **Sapphic minor** is a **Trochaic tetrapody**, with a **dactyl** always in the **third foot**. It consists of a **trochee**, **irrational trochee**, **cyclic dactyl**, and **two trochees**. Catullus has, but rarely, a **true trochee** in the **second foot**. There is a **caesura**, usually **strong**, sometimes **weak**, in the **dactyl**. Usually combined with the **Adonic**.

$\text{L}\text{V} \mid \text{L}\text{V} \mid \overset{\text{˘}}{\text{—}} \mid \text{L}\text{V} \mid \text{L}\text{V}$

2. The **greater Sapphic** consists of the **minor Sapphic** with a **choriamb** inserted before the **dactyl**. This **choriamb** is best treated as a **cyclic dactyl** and a **long syllable followed by a pause**, equivalent to a **trochee**.

$\text{L}\text{V} \mid \text{L}\text{V} \mid \overset{\text{˘}}{\text{—}} \parallel \text{L}\text{V} \mid \text{L}\text{V} \mid \overset{\text{˘}}{\text{—}} \mid - \wedge \parallel$

3. The **Phalæcian**, or simply **Hendecasyllabus**, is also a **Trochaic pentapody**. The first foot is usually an **irrational trochee**, but in Catullus occasionally a **true trochee** or **iamb**; the second a **cyclic dactyl** (except in Catul. 55, where it is frequently a **spondee**, i. e., an **irrational trochee**); the other three feet are **trochees**. There is no special **caesura**.

4. The **Alcæic hendecasyllabus** consists of a **long or short syllable** as an **anacrūsis**, a **trochee**, an **irrational trochee**, and **two cyclic dactyls**.

There is generally a diaeresis after the spondee (i. e., the irrational trochee). It is used in the first two lines in the **Alcaic stanza**.

$$v \mid \mu \mid \nu, \mid \mu \mid \nu, \mid \mu \mid \nu$$

5. The **Alcæic enneasyllabus** consists of a long or short syllable as an anacrūsis, a trochee, an irrational trochee, and two trochees. It forms the **third line** of the **Alcæic stanza**.

$$v \mid \frac{1}{v} \mid \frac{1}{v} \mid \frac{1}{v} \mid \frac{1}{v}$$

6. The **Pherecratian** consists in Catullus of a trochee or irrational trochee, a cyclic dactyl, and a trochee; in Horace, of an irrational trochee, a dactyl, and a spondee (or, better, a lengthened long syllable, followed by a long syllable and a pause). Used in stanzas with other metres.

$$\frac{1}{2} > \frac{1}{2} \vee \frac{1}{2} \vee \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}$$

7. The **Glyconic** consists of a trochee or irrational trochee, followed by a cyclic dactyl, a trochee, and a long syllable with a pause. Catullus has usually a trochee in the first place; Horace almost always a spondee.

$$\frac{1}{2} > \frac{1}{2} \cup \frac{1}{2} \cup \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2}$$

8. The **Priapēan** consists of a trochee or irrational trochee, a cyclic dactyl, a trochee, a long syllable followed by a pause, equivalent to a trochee, a trochee, a cyclic dactyl, and a trochee. (Catul. 17.)

 $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left| \begin{matrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{matrix} \right\rangle + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left| \begin{matrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{matrix} \right\rangle$

293. *CHORIAMBIC METRES, SO CALLED.*

1. The minor **Asclepiadēan** is sometimes considered as consisting of a spondee, a choriamb, and two dactyls ; but, better, of an irrational trochee, a cyclic dactyl, a long syllable followed by a pause, making it equivalent to a foot, a cyclic dactyl, a trochee, and a long syllable followed by a pause.

$$1 \geq |L_v| - \frac{1}{2}, \|L_v\| - 1 \geq 0$$

2. The greater Asclepiadēan is sometimes considered as consisting of a spondee, two choriamb, and two dactyls. But each of the choriamb should be treated as a dactyl and a long syllable followed by a pause, as in the minor Asclepiadean metre. The spondee is an irrational trochee, and the dactyls are cyclic. There is usually a diaeresis after each choriamb.

$$1 \geq |u| |u'|, \|u| |u'|, \|u| |u'| - \wedge \|$$

3. For the greater Sapphic, see § 292, 2.

294. *CRETIC AND GREATER IONIC METRES.*

1. The **Cretic Tetrameter acatalectic** consists of **four cretics**. It occasionally admits a **dactyl** or **paeon**, or even a **molossus** as an **irrational cretic**. It is found only in the comic poets.

2. The **Cretic Tetrameter catalectic** has **three cretics** followed by a **spondee**.

3. The **Sotadēan** consists of **three ionics** a **majori** and one **trochee**. A double trochee is often substituted for the third ionic, and sometimes for the first; and some of the long syllables are occasionally resolved into two shorts.

295. *ANAPAESTIC METRES.*

1. The **Anapaestic dimeter acatalectic** consists of **four anapaests**, for any of which a **spondee** (with the ictus on the last syllable), and for the first and third of which a **dactyl** (with the ictus on the second syllable), may be substituted. There is a diaeresis after the second foot.

2. The **Anapaestic dimeter catalectic**, or **Paroemiæ** verse, consists of **three anapaests** (or their substitutes) and a **short syllable**.

3. The **Anapaestic monometer acatalectic** consists of two feet, either **anapaests** or **spondees**. The first may be a **dactyl**. It is only used interspersed among dimeters.

Note.—Many metrists regard the first two short syllables in an **anapaestic** line as an **anacrusis**, and thus treat all anapaestic verses as **dactylic**.

296. *IAMBIC METRES.*

1. The **Iambic Tetrameter catalectic** consists of **seven iambs** and a **half**. In the **first** and **fifth** places are found apparent **spondees** occasionally. The comic poets use apparent spondees and dactyls, and cyclic anapaests, in every place but the seventh.

Note.—In iambic verse, spondees and anapaests take the ictus on the last syllable; tribrachs and dactyls on the second.

2. The **Iambic Trimeter acatalectic** consists of **six iambs**. It is sometimes found pure throughout a poem, but generally in **Horace** admits an **irrational iamb** frequently, a **cyclic dactyl** rarely, in the **first**, **third**, and **fifth** places, and a **cyclic anapaest** in the **first** and **fifth**. The **tribrach** occurs in all places except the last. There is a **caesura** usually in the middle of the third foot, sometimes not until the middle of the fourth.

3. The **Iambic Scæzon** or **Hippônactēan**, also a **Trimeter Acatalectic**, differs from the preceding by having always a **spondee** in the **sixth foot** and **iamb** in the **fifth**. Either a **spondee**, **anapaest**, or **dactyl** may be used in the **first** or **third** feet; a **tribrach** in the **second**, **third**, and **fourth**. The **caesura** is in the **third** or **fourth** foot.

4. The **Iambic Trimeter catalectic** consists of **four iambs** and a **bac-**

chīus, or rather of five iambs and a long syllable following by a pause, making it equivalent to a foot. *Spondees* (irrational iambs) are sometimes used in the first and third places, and a *tribrach* once occurs. There is a *diaeresis* in the middle of the third foot. It is used only with other verses.

5. The *Iambic Dimeter acatalectic* consists of four iambs, for the first and third of which a *spondee* (irrational iamb) is often substituted. A *tribrach* and (cyclic) *dactyl* also occur, though rarely. It is used with other verses.

6. The *Iambic Dimeter catalectic* consists of two iambs and a *bacchīus*; or, better, of three iambs and a long syllable followed by a pause. A special form of this verse, called the *Anacreontic*, has an *anapaest* in the first foot.

7. The *Iambic Dimeter brachycatalectic* consists of three iambs. It is found only at the close of a system of dimeter catalectics.

Note.—Many metrists regard the first syllable in an iambic line as an *anacrusis*, and thus treat all iambic verses as *trochaic*.

297. ANAPAESTO-IAMBIC METRE.

The *Galliambic* consists in theory of two *Iambic* or *Anacreontic Dimeters*, of which the first is *catalectic*, and the second *brachycatalectic*. There are thus six feet, which are usually *anapaest*, *iamb*, *bacchīus*, *anapaest*, *tribrach*, *iamb*; but with some variations.

The metre is found only in Catullus 65. The name is from the Gallic priests of *Cybēle*, who form the subject of the poem.

298. BACCHIAC AND LESSER IONIC METRES.

1. The *Bacchīac Tetrameter acatalectic* consists of four *bacchīi*; a long syllable may sometimes be resolved into two short, and in some instances a *molossus* occurs as an irrational *bacchius*. It is found only in comic poets.

Occasionally a *Bacchīac Hexameter* occurs.

2. The *Ionic a minori*, occurring in Latin only in Horace iii. 12, is composed of forty feet, all *ionics a minori*. As the *synaphia* is perfect, it may be divided into four *decameters*; but it is best printed in four stanzas, in each of which the first, second, and fourth lines are *dimeters*, the third a *tetrameter*. It may also be divided into stanzas of three lines, two *tetrameters* and a *dimeter*.

299. IAMBS AND DACTYLS.

1. The *Iambilegic* verse consists of an *iambic dimeter*, followed by a *minor Archilochian* (§ 289, 4), which is a *dactylic penthemimer*. There is a *diaeresis* after the *penthemimer*.

$\begin{array}{ccccccc} > & - & | & \cup & - & | & > \\ \cup & - & | & \cup & - & | & \cup & - & || & \cup & \cup & | & \cup & \cup & | & - & \overline{\cup} \end{array}$
 S

2. The **Elegiambic verse** consists of a dactylic penthemimer followed by an iambic dimeter. There is a diaeresis after the penthemimer.

- - - | - - - | - - || - - - | - - | - - - | - -

300. IAMBICO-TROCHAIC METRE.

The **Saturnian** is the oldest form of Latin verse, resembling the English ballad metre:

The *queên* is in her *párlor*, || éating bréad and hóney.

Many irregularities occur.

Examples:

Dăbŭnt mǎlŭm Mětělĭ, || Năevĭŏ pŏētae.
 Immortales mortales || si foret fas flere,
 Flerent divae camenae || Naevium poetam;
 Itaque postquam est orcino || traditus thesauro
 Obliti sunt Romāi || loquier lingua latina.

301. HORATIAN METRES.

In the Odes and Epodes of Horace, the following Metres are found

1. The **minor Asclepiadēan system**, consisting of four minor Asclepiadēan verses (293, 1). Od. i. 1; iii. 30; iv. 8.

2. The **first Asclepiadēan strophe**, in which the **Glyconic verse** (292, 7) alternates with the minor Asclepiadēan (293, 1). Od. i. 3, 13, 19, 36; iii. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28; iv. 1, 3.

3. The **second Asclepiadēan strophe**, consisting of three minor Asclepiadēan verses followed by a Glyconic. Od. i. 6, 15, 24, 33; ii. 12; iii. 10, 16; iv. 5, 12.

4. The **third Asclepiadēan strophe**, consisting of two minor Asclepiadēan verses, a **Pherecratēan** (292, 6), and a Glyconic. Od. i. 5, 14, 21, 23; iii. 7, 13; iv. 13.

5. The **greater Asclepiadēan system**, consisting of four greater Asclepiadēan verses (293, 2). Od. i. 11, 18; iv. 10.

6. The **Sapphic strophe**, consisting of three minor Sapphic verses (292, 1) and one Adonic verse (289, 3). Horace has a caesura generally in the dactyl.

Od. i. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38; ii. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; iii. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; iv. 2, 6, 11; *Carmen Saeculare*.

7. The **greater Sapphic strophe**; an **Aristophanic verse** (291, 3) followed by a greater Sapphic (292, 2). Od. i. 8.

8. The **Alcaic strophe** consists of the **Alcaic hendecasyllabic verse** (292, 4) twice repeated, an **Alcaic enneasyllabic** (292, 5), and an **Alcaic decasyllabic verse** (291, 2). Horace has a diaeresis after the second trochee in the first three lines.

Note.—No one who feels the beauty of the refrain in the fourth verse of the Alcaic strophe, can fail to recognize the dactylic ending of the hendecasyllable and the trochaic ending of the enneasyllable. Observe, too, that the third verse is the doubling of the first half (after the anacrusis) of the first and second verses.

This is often called the **Horatian stanza**, Horace using it more frequently than any other. *Od.* i. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; ii. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; iii. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; iv. 4, 9, 14, 15.

9. The first **Archilochian strophe**, in which the dactylic hexameter alternates with the minor Archilochian verse (289, 4). (*Od.* iv. 7.)

10. The second Archilochian strophe, in which the dactylic hexameter alternates with an iambilegic verse (299, 1); so that in this strophe an iambic dimeter is interposed between the two members of the first Archilochian strophe. *Ep.* 13.

11. The third Archilochian strophe; iambic trimeters alternating with elegiac verses (299, 2). *Ep.* 11.

12. The fourth Archilochian strophe, in which the greater Archilochian verse (291, 1) alternates with the iambic trimeter catalectic, or, as it may be better considered, a trochaic pentapody with anacrusis. *Od.* i. 4.

13. The **Alcmanian strophe**: dactylic hexameters alternating with dactylic tetrameters catalectic (289, 2). *Od.* i. 7, 28.

14. The **Iambic trimeter**. *Ep.* 17.

15. The **Iambic strophe**: iambic trimeters alternating with iambic dimeters. The first ten *Epodes*.

16. The first **Pythiambic strophe**: dactylic hexameters alternating with iambic dimeters. *Ep.* 14, 15.

17. The second **Pythiambic strophe**: dactylic hexameters alternating with iambic trimeters. *Ep.* 16.

18. The **Trochaic strophe** or the **Hipponactean**: trochaic dimeters catalectic alternating with iambic dimeters catalectic. *Od.* ii. 18.

19. The **Ionic a minori** (298, 2). *Od.* iii. 12.

302. EARLY DRAMATIC VERSE.

In early dramatic verse the quantity of syllables was not so definitely fixed or observed as in the later dactylic and other verse. The principal cases of deviation may be classified as follows:

1. Final syllables, afterwards short, were sometimes used with their original long quantity: as, *famā* (nom. sing.), *sorōr*, *patēr*; *amēt*, *sciāt*, *ponebāt*, *percipīt*, *vendidīt*; *amēr*, *loquār*; *milēs*.

2. Final syllables with long vowels were sometimes used as short: as, *domō* (abl. sing.), *probě* (adv.), *tacě*, *manŭ*, *virĭ*; *conrigĭ*, *bonās*, *forās*, *dolōs*, *ovēs*, *manūs* (acc. plur.), *bonīs*, *habēnt*. This is almost confined to iambic words.

3. Syllables containing a vowel followed by two consonants were sometimes used as short. Such are :

Syllables in the later language written with doubled consonants: as, *immo, ille, simillimae, Philippus, esse, occulto*;

Some syllables with two different consonants: as, *inter, interim, intus, inde, iste, unde, nempe, omnis, ecquis*. So also (according to some) *voluptas, magistratus, ministrabit, venustas, senectus* (or perhaps *volptas, magistratus*); *expediant, exigere, uxorem*.

4. Final syllables ending in a consonant were sometimes not lengthened, though the next word began with a consonant: as, (in Terence) *enim vero, auctus sit, soror dictast, dabit nemo, simul conficiam, tamen suspicor*; *apud* is frequently so used: even *student facere*. This license is most frequent when the final consonant is *m, s, r, or t*; and is due to the tendency of the early language to drop the final consonant, and to shorten the final vowel.

5. Synizēsis is freely used: as, *tuos* for *tuos*, *svos* for *suus*, *scjo* for *scio*, *pver* for *puer*, *fvit* for *fuit*, *djes* for *dies*, *filjo* for *filio*, *otjum* for *otium*.

6. Long initial syllables were slurred into short quantity when they followed monosyllables or elided pyrrichs; sometimes also at the beginning of a verse.

7. Spondees, dactyls, anapaests, and even proceleusmatics, were freely used for iambs or trochees, except in the last foot of the verse. (Roby, in part.)

303. METRICAL READING.

1. Verse should be read with a certain metrical **expression**, which a delicate taste will suggest, but for which no formal rules can be given. Some ictuses will be observed more strongly than others. The meaning of the words, and their rhetorical character as spirited or quiet, glad or plaintive, etc., will have its influence.

2. While students will need some exercises at first in simply marking off the feet, and indicating the place of ictus, caesura, or diaeresis, before they become initiated in the mysteries of metre, good **metrical reading**, as in English verse, preserves the words intact, and gives to the ear at once the sense and the melody.

3. Some kinds of verse admit of more than one way of scanning, and metrists differ in their preferences. But as the rhythm depends upon the alternations of long and short syllables—undisputed facts in any verse, unless sometimes in the final syllable—there is not room for so much difference in the actual reading as there is in regard to the theory of the structure of the verse.



APPENDIX.

GRAMMATICAL AND RHETORICAL TERMS.

304. GRAMMATICAL TERMS AND FIGURES.

Amphībōlia, *ambiguity*; e. g., **aio te Romanos vincere posse**, "Pyrrhus the Romans shall, I say, subdue;" where **te** may be subject and **Romanos** object, and *vice versa*.

Anācōlūthōn, *non-sequence*, where a sentence is begun in one way and finished in another way, with a changed construction; e. g., **Deos verisimile est ut alios indulgentius tractent for deos . . . alios tractare or Di . . . ut . . . tractent**.

Anastrōphē, *inversion*; e. g., **male quod vult for quod male vult; tecum for cum te; transtra per et remos for per transtra**, etc.

Aphaerēsīs, *omission* of a letter or syllable at the beginning of a word; e. g., **lis for stlis, natus for gnatus**.

Apōcōpē, *cutting off*, i. e., omission of a letter or syllable at the end of a word; e. g., **ille for illus, me for med, vigil for vigilis**.

Apōdōsīs, *reply*, applied especially to the consequent clause of a conditional sentence.

Archaism, use of an *old* or obsolete form, word, or expression; e. g., **olli** in Vergil for **illi**; **duellum** in Horace for **bellum**; **animai**; in **cassum magnum** (Lucr.).

Assimilation, when of two consonants the former is either made the same as the latter, or changed into another consonant of like kind: as, **cessi for cedsi; scriptus for scribtus; defensum for defendtum** (where the **t** of the suffix is changed to **s**, and the final **d** of the stem assimilated to it; **s** being often written for double **s**).

Asyndeton, *omission of conjunctions*; e. g., **usus fructus; sarta tecta; inde ventis remis in patriam properavi** (Cic.); **abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit**.

Attraction, when a word, by the influence of another, is diverted from the

usual construction to a less usual one; e. g., *hic est quem quaero hominem*; *urbem quam statuo vestra est*.

Barbarism, using a faulty *non-Latin* word, especially a word faultily formed; e. g., *gladia* for *gladii*, *scala* for *scalae*. Distinguished by relating to a single word from **solecism** which relates to false syntax of several words or a phrase.

Brachylōgy, *shortening of expression*.

Crāsīs, *union of two or more vowel sounds*; e. g., *cors* for *cōhors*, *prorsus* for *prōversus*.

Diaerēsīs, *separation of one vowel sound into two*; e. g., *Orphēŭs* for *Orpheus*: also the treatment of a usually consonantal *v* as a vowel; e. g., *sīlŭae* for *silvae*. In verse, it means also the coincidence of the end of a word with the end of a foot.

Ecthlīpsīs, *crushing out*, in verse of a syllable ending in *m* before an ensuing vowel.

Ellīpsīs, *omission of one or more words which would be used if completeness of expression were necessary*.

Enallāgē, *change*; i. e. putting of one part of speech, number, case, tense, etc., for another; e. g., *vivere nostrum* for *vita nostra*; *nos* for *ego*; *mox navigo* for *navigabo*.

Epenthēsīs, *insertion*; e. g., of *u* in *Alcŭmēna* for *Alcmena*; *p* in *sumpsi*, *sumptum*.

Graecism or **Hellenism**; use of a Greek form or construction, not properly Latin also; e. g., *amplexi habent* for *amplexi sunt*.

Hendiādys, *one by two*; use of two nouns with a conjunction, instead of a single noun with a modifier; e. g., *paterae et aurum* for *aureae paterae*.

Hypallāgē, *exchange*; applied to such deviations from ordinary expression or construction as *Tyrrhenus tubae clangor* for *Tyrrhenae tubae clangor*; *arma dei Volcania* for *arma a deo Volcano facta*.

Hypērbāton, *transgression*; i. e. when a considerable clause or expression is interpolated between two parts of a sentence mutually connected in meaning; e. g., *hyperboreo septem subjecta trioni*; *animadverti omnem accusatoris orationem in duas divisam esse partes*.

Hyp̄phen, *union of two words, as if by composition*; e. g., *non-sūtor*, *one who is not a tailor*, *ignari ante-malorum*, *ignorant of the ills before*.

Mētāthēsīs, *change of position*; transposition of two or more letters in a word; e. g., *crētus* for *certus*.

Pārāgōgē, *addition*; applied e. g., (according to a probably false theory) to the formation of *dicier* from *dici* by the addition of *er*.

Pārethēsīs, *insertion of a clause into the midst of another*; e. g., *si nos, id quod maxime debet, nostra patria delectat* (Cic.). The term is generally applied to an ordinary insertion; if unusual either from its character or length, it is sometimes called **hyperbaton**.

Pleōnasm, *saying too much*, an unnecessary fulness of expression; e. g.,

erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent (Caes.); suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo, *I slay him with his own sword to him*; praesensi prius; nemo unus.

Prōlēpsis, *anticipation*, applied to such use of an adjective as *laceras aries ballistave concutit arces*, where the towers are *lacerae* from the effects of *concutit*.

Prōtāsīs, *proposal*, applied to the relative or especially to the conditional clause.

Syllepsīs, *taking together*, applied to the relation of an adjective to two or more nouns of different genders; e. g., *pater et mater et filia capti sunt*.

Synaerēsīs, *contraction* of two vowels into one sound: e. g., treating *deinde*, *quoad* as monosyllables; *aureo*, *eidem* as dissyllables; *ariete*, *tenuia* as trisyllables. Other terms are *synecphōnēsis* and *synīzēsis*. All three are variously distinguished and applied, but most frequently used of those contractions which are regarded as exceptional and not expressed in writing; while *crasis* applies to such contractions as *auceps* for *aviceps*, *cōgo* for *co-ago*.

Sŷnāloepha, *coalescing* of two vowels, applied to the elision in verse of the vowel at the end of one word before a vowel beginning the next.

Syncōpē, *striking together*, applied to the omission of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; e. g., *saeculum* for *saeculum*, *puertia* for *pueritia*, *lūna* for *lucna*, *pergo* for *perrego*.

Synecphōnēsis, *pronouncing together*, see *Synaerēsīs*.

Sŷnēsīs, where the construction is adapted to the *sense* of the word rather than to the *form*; e. g., *turba ruunt*; *turba circumfusi fremabant* (Liv.); *concursum populi mirantium* (Liv.).

Synīzēsis, *settlement together*, see *Synaerēsis*.

Tmēsīs, *cutting* of a compound word into two, separated by other words; e. g., *septem subjecta trioni* for *septemtrioni*; *per mihi gratum feceris* for *pergratum*; *quae me cunque vocant* for *quaecunque me*; and *saxo cere comminuit brum* which Ennius wrote, probably mistaking *cerebrum* for a compound.

Zeugma, *joining*, where a verb grammatically belonging to two or more nouns is in sense appropriate to one only (or to less than all); e. g., *te greges centum Siculaeque circum mugiant vaccae* (Hor.); where *lowing* does not properly suit *greges* sc. *ovium*. *Magonem alii naufragio* (sc. *perisse*), *alii a servis ipsius interfectum, scriptum reliquerunt* (Nep.).

305. RHETORICAL TERMS, OR FIGURES OF SPEECH.

Allegory, a continued description of one thing in terms and in images properly belonging to another; e. g., *at jam tempus equum fumantia solvere colla* (Verg.), of concluding a book. A more detailed allegory is seen in Horace's description (Od. i. 14) of the *State* in political diffi-

culties under the name of a ship tossed by waves. Essentially, allegory is a chain of metaphors.

Alliteration, the use in the same sentence of several words beginning with the same letter; e. g., *O Tite, tute Tati, tibi tanta, tyranne, tulisti* (Enn.).

Anāphōra, repetition of the same word or grammatical form at the beginning of several clauses; e. g., in his templis atque tectis dux Lentulus erat constitutus meis consiliis, meis laboribus, mei capitis periculis, sine tumultu, sine delectu, sine armis (Cic.).

Antithēsis, contrast; e. g., *ego projector, quod tu peccas; tu delinquis, ego arguor; pro malefactis Helena redeat, virgo pereat innocens* (Enn.).

Antōnōmāsia, substituting a description for a name; e. g., *Tydides* for *Diomedes*; *eversor Karthaginis* for *Scipio*; *Saturnia* for *Juno*.

Apōsiōpēsīs, breaking into silence; an abrupt pause after a sentence or subject has been begun; e. g., *Quos ego—sed motos praestat componere fluctus*.

Apostrōphē, turning away to address some person, or thing, who is absent or at least not the proper object of address at the time; e. g., *o leges Porciae legesque Semproniae* (Cic.); *citae Mettum in diversa quadrigae distulerant: at tu dictis, Albane, maneres* (Verg.); *Quid non mortalia pectora cogis, auri sacra fames?*

Cātāchrēsīs, a wrong use of a term, either to supply the place of a non-existing word, e. g., *parricida* for the murderer of a brother; or to put a different aspect on a case; e. g., *virtus* for *temeritas*, *liberalitas* for *luxuria*.

Chiasm, making a *X* (Chi), i. e., crossing, where a second and corresponding set of words are stated in inverse order to that of the first set; e. g., *multa quae nostra causa non facimus, facimus causa amicorum* (Cic.). See § 260, 6.

Climax (or *gradatio*), ladder, a series of words or expressions each stronger than the preceding; e. g., *nihil agis, nihil moliris, nihil cogitas, quod ego non modo audiam, sed etiam videam planeque sentiam* (Cic.).

Enallāgē, change, i. e., the use of a more general word for a specific word; e. g., *Poenus* for *Hannibal*, *urbs* for *Roma*; *vos, o Calliope*.

Epexēgēsīs, additional explanation, applied to such usages as *habere in lorica* *donat habere viro* (Verg.), or to the subordinate clause in *pacem amicitiamque hortatus est, ut cum rege in gratiam rediret* (Nep.).

Euphemism, the use of softened language to express what is disagreeable or distressing.

Hōmœotēleutōn, like ending of several clauses; e. g., in muros statim curritur, exercitus a sociis accersitur, dilectus juventuti denuntiatur; neminem alteri posse dare in matrimonium nisi penes quem sit patrimonium.

Hōmōnŷmia, applicability of the same word to different things; such words are called *hōmōnŷmā*; e. g., *taurus* may be an animal, a mountain, a constellation, name of a man, or root of a tree.

Hýperbōlē, *exaggeration*; e. g., *gemi minantur in caelum scopuli* (Verg.); or the description of Camilla's swiftness (Aen. vii. 808-811).

Hystērōn prōtērōn, *putting the former later*, when that which naturally comes first is mentioned last; e. g., *moriamur et in media arma ruamus* (Verg.).

Irony, *dissimulation*, says one thing and means another, but so as to let the real meaning be understood; e. g., *in balneis delituerunt: testis egregios! dein temere prosiluerunt; homines temperantis!* (Cic. Caec. 26); *meque timoris argue tu, Drance, quando tot stragis acervos Teucrorum tua dextra dedit!* (Verg.).

Lītōtēs, *plainness*, states less than is actually meant; e. g., *non nego* instead of *aio*; *non indoctus* for *doctus*; *non laudo* for *culpo*.

Mētāphōr (or *translātiō*), *transference* of a term from its proper subject to another, on account of some resemblance or analogy between their meanings; frequently the application of a physical or concrete term to a mental or abstract subject; e. g., *sitiunt segetes*; *asper homo* (rough, i. e., ill-tempered); *incensus ira*, *on fire with rage*; *eloquentiae fulmina*. It differs from allegory only by being less sustained, and by being worked into the discourse instead of being an independent fable. Almost all language is metaphor, more or less vivid and conscious.

Mētōnymy, *change of name*, applied to such expressions as *Neptunus* for *sea*; *Vulcanus* for *fire*; *Ceres* for *corn*; *bene moratae urbes* for *bene morati urbis cives*; *Graecia* for *Graeci*; *Vergilius* for *carmina Vergili*; *proximus ardet Ucalēgon*, where *Ucalegon* is for *Ucalēgon's house*. Among the substitutions of names made by Metonymy are that of the cause for the effect; the container for what is contained; the property for the substance; the sign for the thing signified: and *vice versa*: also, the parts of the body for certain affections; the possessor for the thing possessed; the place and time for the persons and things which they comprise.

Onōmātopœia, *name making*, in modern writers applied only to making names from the sounds which they are to denote; e. g., *ūlūla*, *howler*; *murmur*; *clangor*; *hirsire* (of a dog snarling).

Oxýmōrōn, *keen*, though apparently *foolish*, applied to such expressions, uniting seeming contraries, as *insaniens sapientia*; *strenua inertia*; *splendidē mendax*: *et absentes adsunt et egentes abundant et imbecilli valent et, quod difficilius dictu est, mortui vivunt* (Cic. Lael. 7).

Pārōnōmāsia (*adnōminātiō*), *playing upon the sound of words*; *punning*; e. g., *consul ipse parvo animo et pravo, facie magis quam facetiis ridiculus* (Cic.). *Inceptio est amentium haud amantium* (Ter.). *Praetor iste vel potius praedo sociorum. Cui quod libet, hoc licet. Hunc āvium dulcedo ducit ad āvium.*

Pērīphrāsīs, *roundabout expression, circumlocution*; e. g., *fao discas* for

disce; vos oratos volo for vos oro; Scipionis providentia Karthaginis opes fregit for Scipio Karthaginem fregit.

Prōsōpōpœia, *personification*, representing inanimate things as living and acting; e. g., crudelitatis mater avaritia'st, pater furor. Si patria mea loquatur, "M. Tulli, quid agis?" (Cic.) Extemplo Libyae magnas it Fama per urbes (Verg.).

Sīmīle or **Pārābōlē**, an apt *comparison* illustrating a statement; e. g., per urbes Hannibal Italos ceu flamma per taedas vel Eurus per Siculas equitavit undas (Hor.).

Solecism, a grammatical *blunder* in matters of syntax; "Quintilian instances non feceris for ne feceris; hic aut ille for hic an ille; eo intus and intro sum for eo intro and intus sum."

Sŷnēcdōchē, when the whole is *understood along with* (i. e., under the name of) a part; e. g., puppis for navis; tectum for domus; mucro or ferrum for gladius; caput for homo.

Sŷnōnŷmia, *using different words or expressions for the same meaning*; e. g., non feram, non patiar, non sinam (Cic.). Words of the same or like meaning are called **sŷnōnŷmā**; e. g., gladius with ensis; scutum with clipeus; mare with pontus.

Tautōlōgy, *repetition of the same thing*; sometimes used as identical with **synonymia**; sometimes applied to repetitions of the same word; e. g., non solum igitur illud iudicium iudicii simile, iudices, non fuit (Cic.). Nam cujus rationis ratio non exstat, ei rationi non est fidem habere (Cornif.).

Whether the use of any of these figures is legitimate or proper depends on the **context** and the **occasion**, and on general considerations of intelligibility, good sense, vigorous expression, propriety, habit of speakers and writers, and the like. A **name** confers no **license**, and a grammatical or rhetorical figure is a name of a **fact**, not of a **law**. (Roby, in part.)

MONEY, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES.

306. VALUE OF COINS.

1. From 451 to 269 B. C.:

The **as libralis**, of copper about 10 cents.

2. From 269 to 217 B. C.:

The **as sextantarius**, of copper " 2 cents.

The **sestertius**, of silver " 5 cents.

The **denarius**, of silver " 19 cents.

3. From 217 to 30 B. C.:

The **sestertius**, of silver " 4 cents.

The **denarius**, of silver " 16½ cents.

The **aureus**, of gold (25 denarii, or 100 sestertii) " \$4.17.

Hence **mille sestertium** " \$41.67.

decies sestertium (a million sestertii) " \$41,667.00.

307. THE NAMING OF SUMS OF MONEY.

1. The ordinary unit of reckoning was the *sestertius* or *nummus*; in full, *sestertius nummus*. Up to two thousand, the nouns *sestertii* or *nummi* are used: as, *decem sestertii*, *ten sesterces*; *ducenti nummi*, *two hundred sesterces*; *quini sestertii*, *five sesterces each*. For higher numbers, in thousands up to a million, a neuter noun in the plural number, *sestertia*, was used: as, *septem sestertia*, *seven thousand sesterces*, instead of *septem millia sestertiū*; or both *millia* and *sestertia* are found: as, *dena millia sestertia*, *ten thousand sesterces*; or, again, in poetry *millia* is used with an ellipsis of *sestertiū*: as, *mullum sex millibus emit*, *he bought a mullet for six thousand sesterces*. Horace has *bis dena sestertia nummū*, *twenty thousand sesterces*.

2. In sums of a million and upwards, *numeral adverbs* are employed: as, *decies centum* (or *centena*) *millia sestertiū*. Usually the *numeral adverb* and *sestertium* are put alone: as, *decies sestertium*, *a million sesterces*; or, when the context is clear, the *adverb* is used alone, as simply *decies*; we find also, for the same sum of a million sesterces, *decies centena millia* or *decies centena*. In such expressions, *sestertium* was taken to be a neuter noun, in the singular number: as, (nominative) *sestertium quadragies relinquitur*, *four million sesterces are left*; (accusative) *sestertium quadragies accepi*, *I have received four million sesterces*; (ablative) *sestertio decies fundum emi*, *I have bought an estate for a million sesterces*; in *sestertio vicies egere*, *to be poor in the possession of two million sesterces*.

Abbreviations are used: as, HS. DC. = 600 sesterces; HS. $\overline{\text{DC}}$. = 600,000 sesterces (or 600 sestertia); HS. $|\overline{\text{DC}}|$ = 60,000,000 sesterces. See § 55, 13; § 317, 8.

308. INTEREST.

The *as* and its fractional parts were used in designating rates of interest. Thus, the interest being paid monthly at the rate of so much per 100 asses,

unciae usurae	= $\frac{1}{12}$	per cent.	per month	= 1	per cent.	per annum;
sextantes usurae	= $\frac{1}{6}$	"	"	= 2	"	"
quadrantes usurae	= $\frac{1}{4}$	"	"	= 3	"	"
and so on;						
asses usurae	= 1	"	"	= 12	"	"

Asses usurae were also called *centesimae*; *binæ centesimae* = 2 per cent. per month = 24 per cent.; *quaternæ centesimae* = 48 per cent. per annum. Horace says, *quinas hio capiti mercedes exsecat* (i. e., *quinas centesimas*), *this man slices off 60 per cent. from the capital*, because in lending money he deducts interest at the rate of five per cent. per month.

Unciarum faenus, the yearly interest legalized by the Twelve Tables, was probably one uncia per as, or $8\frac{1}{3}$ per cent., for the old year of ten months.

309. WEIGHTS.

1. The unit or as of weight was the *libra*, or Roman pound, the supposed weight which a man could support on his hand horizontally extended. It was duodecimally divided, the *uncia*, or ounce, being its 12th part, the *scriptulum* or *scrupulum*, *scruple*, its 288th part. Its weight was about 5050 grains English, or about $\frac{7}{8}$ pound Troy.

2. The Greek system also was used in the imperial times, the unit being a *denarius*, called from the Greek *drachma*, of which the *libra* contained until Nero's time 84; afterwards 96. This latter *drachma* contained three *scriptula*, the *scriptulum* two *oboli*, the *obolus* three *siliquae*.

310. MEASURES OF LENGTH.

1. The unit or as of length was *pes*, the foot; *digitus* was a finger-breadth; *palmus*, a hand-breadth, was four digits; *pes*, a foot, was four palms or sixteen digits.

2. In the duodecimal division of the foot, *uncia*, the twelfth part, was an inch. Three *unciae* made a *palmus*. Two feet are sometimes called *dupondius*; two and a half feet, *sestertius*, also *gradus*, or *step*; one and a half feet, *sesquipies*, called also *cubitus*, the fore-arm.

Ulna, an ell, is sometimes a synonym of *cubitus*; but it sometimes means the full span of a man's arms, or six feet.

3. Land was measured out by the *pertica* or *decempeda*, a rod of ten feet. The *actus* (i. e., the furrow made at one drawing (*driving*) of the plough-oxen) measured twelve rods.

4. The unit of distance was the *passus*, *pace*, consisting of two *gradus* or *steps*, hence of five feet. It represents the distance from the point where, in walking, the same foot is taken up to the point where it is put down. *Mille passus* (or *millia passuum* or *millia*) was the Roman mile, 4850 English feet, or .919 English mile. The *pes* was 11.6 English inches.

The *stadium*, or *furlong*, was $\frac{1}{8}$ of a Roman mile.

311. MEASURES OF SURFACE.

1. The as of superficial measure was the *jugerum*: It contained 2 square *actus*, or 28,800 square feet; each *actus* 144 square rods or *perticae*. The square rod was called a *scrupulum*, or *decempeda quadrata*. Two *jugera* made an *heredium*; 100 *heredia* formed a *centuria*; 4 *centuriae* a *saltus*.

2. The *pes quadratus* was .94 English square foot; the *jugerum* almost $\frac{5}{8}$ of an English acre; an *heredium* nearly an acre and a quarter.

312. MEASURES OF CAPACITY.

1. The unit of liquid measure was the *quadrantal*, a vessel of a *cubit* foot in content, after Cicero's time called the *amphora*. The *amphora* =

two *urnae*; the *urna* = four *congi*; the *congius* = six *sextarii*; the *sextarius* = two *heminae*; the *hemina* = two *quartarii*; the *quartarius* = two *acetabula*. Twenty *amphorae* made a *culeus*. The *amphora* was about $5\frac{1}{2}$ gallons English.

2. The duodecimal system was applied to the *sextarius*, which was a little less than an English pint (.96). Its twelfth, or *uncia*, was a *cyathus*, not quite half an ordinary wine-glass. The *triens* was 4 *cyathi*; the *quadrans*, 3 *cyathi*; the *sextans*, 2 *cyathi*; and so on.

3. The unit of dry measure was the *modius*, nearly one *peck*, or $\frac{1}{4}$ bushel, English. It held two *semodii* or 16 *sextarii*. The divisions of the *sextarius* (sometimes called *librarius*) were the same as in liquid measure.

COMPUTATION OF TIME.

313. 1. The Romans' *civil day*, as recognized in law, was from midnight to midnight; a *natural day*, from sunrise to sunset. The natural day was divided into *twelfths*, called *horae*, which were therefore of different absolute lengths according to the time of year. From December 23d, when the day at Rome was, according to modern reckoning, 8 hours 54 minutes long, and the Roman hour was $44\frac{1}{2}$ minutes, the length increased up to the 25th of June, when the day was 15 hours 6 minutes, and the Roman hour $75\frac{1}{2}$ minutes. At the equinoxes, 23d. March, 25th. September, the Roman hour was of the same length as our own. The civil day is sometimes spoken of as divided into twenty-four hours.

2. The night was for military purposes divided into four *watches* (*vigilia prima*, etc.) of equal length. And a similar division of the day into four parts is also implied by Varro's account of the praetor's marshal crying the third hour, noon, and the ninth hour.

3. The division of time into *weeks* of seven days with distinct names was not used by the Romans before the introduction of Christianity. The *months* were distinguished by the names adopted by us from the Romans, excepting that, before the time of the Emperor Augustus, *Julius* and *Augustus* had the names of *Quintilis* and *Sextilis* (i. e., *fifth* and *sixth* month, March being the first). The days of the month were computed from three leading days in each, which were called respectively *Calendae* (*Kal.*), *Nonae* (*Non.*), and *Idus* (*Id.*); to these the name of the month was appended as an adjective. The *Calendae* was the first day of every month; the *Nonae* and *Idus* the fifth and thirteenth, except in the months of **March, May, July, and October**, in which they were the seventh and fifteenth respectively.* From these days they counted backwards, the days between the 1st and the Nones being reckoned as so many days before

* In **March, July, October, May**,
The **Ides** were on the fifteenth day,
The **Nones** upon the seventh, we say.
(For other months, take two away.)

the Nones: the days between the Nones and Ides as so many days before the Ides; and the remaining days of the month as so many days before the Kalends of the *next* month. The day immediately preceding any of these reckoning points was called *pridie Nonas*, etc.; the day next but one before was the *third day before* (in consequence of the Nones, etc., being themselves included in the reckoning), and so on.

4. There are two abbreviated modes of denoting the date; e. g., the 27th of March might be marked as *vi Kal. Apr.*, or *a. d. vi Kal. Apr.* The first is for *sexto (die ante) Kalendas Apriles*; the second for *ante diem sextum Kalendas Apriles*. The latter expression appears to have originally signified *before (on the sixth day) the Kalends of April*; the exact day being thrown in parenthetically, and attracted from the ablative into the accusative case in consequence of following *ante*. Similarly we find the date sometimes denoted by the number of days preceding a festival: as, *a. d. v. Terminalia*, i. e., 19th Feb. (the festival of the god of boundaries being on the 23d Feb.). This expression was considered as one word, before which *in* or *ex* may stand: as, *Ex ante diem iii Nonas Junias usque ad pridie Kalendas Septembres*, from the 3d June to the 31st August; *differre aliquid in ante diem xv Kalendas Novembres*, to put off something to the 18th October.

5. The readiest way of reckoning the day is,

1. If the date lie between the Kalends and Nones, or between the Nones and Ides, to subtract the number of the day mentioned from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall, and add *one* (for the inclusive reckoning).

2. If the date lie between the Ides and the Kalends, to subtract the number of the day mentioned from the number of the days in the month, and add *two* (i. e., one for the inclusive reckoning, and one because the Kalends are not the last of the month in which the date lies, but the first of the following month).

6. In leap year the intercalated day was counted between *a. d. vi Kal. Mart.* and *a. d. vii Kal. Mart.*, and called *a. d. bissextum Kal. Mart.* (Hence the name of leap year, *annus bissextilis*.)

7. Before the reformation of the Calendar by Julius Caesar, B. C. 45, the number of days in the months was in March, May, July, and October, 31; in February 28; in all the rest 29. As these four months were two days longer, the Nones and Ides were two days later. This should be remembered in reading Cicero's letters, many of which were written before 45 B. C. After that year the number of days in each month was the same as now.

8. The year was designated by the names of the consuls for that year. Thus, Vergil was born *M. Licinio Crasso et Cn. Pompeio Magno consulibus* (abl. absol.), in the consulship of Crassus and Pompey. Sometimes events are dated in their year after the founding of the city (A. U. C., U. C., or A.).

PRINCIPAL EXTANT LATIN AUTHORS.

314. *PRAE-CICERONIAN AGE.*

Cn. Naevius, a Latin of Campania, d. 199 B. C. Dramatic and epic poems; only fragments extant.

T. Maccius Plautus, b. 254 B. C., at Sassina in Umbria, d. 184 B. C. Comedies, 20 of which are extant, many being written 201-189 B. C.

Q. Ennius, b. 239 B. C., at Rudiae in Calabria, d. 169 B. C. Poems epic and dramatic; only fragments extant.

M. Porcius Cato (Censorinus), b. 234 B. C., at Tusculum, d. 149 B. C. History, speeches, and treatise on farming; this treatise and fragments extant.

P. Terentius, b. 185 B. C., at Carthage, d. 159 B. C. Six comedies; all preserved.

L. Attius (or Accius), b. 170 B. C., d. circa 104 B. C. Tragedies and other poems; fragments only extant.

C. Lucilius, b. 148 B. C., at Suessa Aurunca in Campania, d. 103 B. C. Satires; only fragments extant.

315. *GOLDEN AGE.*1. *Ciceronian:*

Cornificius, probable name of the author of a treatise on rhetoric addressed to C. Herennius and printed with Cicero's works. Possibly Q. Cornificius trib. pl. 69 B. C.

M. Terentius Varro, b. 116 B. C., at Reate, d. 27 B. C. Antiquarian and grammatical writings; satires, partly in verse; a treatise on farming. Extant: part of a work on the Latin language (written cir. 43 B. C.), and the treatise *de re rustica* (written 37 B. C.): fragments only of others.

M. Tullius Cicero, b. 106 B. C., at Tusculum, d. 43 B. C. Speeches, treatises on rhetoric and philosophy, and private letters. 58 speeches (some mutilated), most of the treatises, and many letters, are extant. Speeches from 81 B. C.; treatises from 55 B. C., except a work on rhetoric written in his youth; letters from 68 B. C.: all reaching nearly to his death. Fragments only of his poems extant.

Q. Tullius Cicero, b. 102 B. C., d. 43 B. C. A short political essay *de petitione consulatus*: extant (with his brother's writings).

C. Julius Caesar, b. 100 B. C., d. 44 B. C. Speeches, history, treatises on astronomy and grammar; only histories (or rather notes for history) of his own campaigns extant.

A. Hirtius, d. 43 B. C., wrote 8th book of Caesar *de Bello Gallico*, and *Bellum Alexandrinum*: both extant, printed with Caesar.

Cornelius Nepos, b. 104 to 94 B. C., near the Po, d. after 32 B. C. History in the form of biographies: some extant.

T. Lūcrētius Cārus, b. 90 B. C., d. 55 B. C. Philosophical poem: extant.

C. Vālerius Cātullus, b. 87 B. C. at Verona, d. 54 B. C. Poems, of varied character; epic, lyric, occasional: extant.

Publilius Syrus of Antioch, cir. 45 B. C. Mimes. Extant a collection of proverbial lines extracted from them.

C. Sallustius Crispus, b. 87 B. C., at Amiternum, d. 34 B. C. History. Extant: histories of wars with Catiline and with Jugurtha, and some speeches from the other histories.

M. Caelius M. F. Rūfus, b. 85-82 B. C., d. cir. 48 B. C. Speeches. Some lively letters to Cicero are extant, forming Book viii. of Cic. *ad Familiares*.

Among other correspondents of Cicero, several of whose letters have come to us with Cicero's, are **L. Munatius Plancus** (Cic. *ad Fam.* Book x.); **C. Asinius Pollio** (same Book); **D. Brutus** (Book xi.); **C. Cassius** (Book xii.); **P. Lentulus** (*ibid.*); **M. Junius Brutus** (Cic. *Epist. ad M. Brutum*). One or two letters also occur from **C. Jul. Caesar**, **Cn. Pompeius**, **M. Porcius Cato**, **M. Antonius**, **M. Lepidus**, **Q. Metellus Nepos**, **Matius**, **Caecina**, **Cicero filius**.

2. Augustan:

P. Vergīlius Māro, b. 70 B. C., at Andes, near Mantua, d. 19 B. C. Rural and epic poems, viz., **Bucolīca** (B. C. 41-38); **Georgīca** (B. C. 37-30); **Aenēis** (begun cir. B. C. 26; left unfinished at his death): all extant. Some other smaller poems, partly satirical, which have been ascribed to him, are extant.

Q. Hōrātius Flaccus, b. 65 B. C., at Venusia, d. 8 B. C. Poems lyrical and satirical or didactic; partly in the form of epistles; all extant.

T. Līvius, b. 59 B. C., at Patavium, d. 16 A. D. History of Rome from the foundation of the city to the death of Drusus (9 B. C.), in 142 books, of which 35 books (viz., i.-x., xx.-xlv.) only are extant.

Albius Tībullus, b. cir. 54 B. C., d. 19 B. C. Poems chiefly amatory. Other poems are printed with Tibullus', especially those of

Lygdāmus, b. cir. 43 B. C. Amatory poems.

Sextus Prōpertius, b. cir. 49 B. C., in Umbria, d. after 16 B. C. Poems chiefly amatory; all extant.

L. Annaeus Sēnēca (the father), b. cir. 54 B. C., at Corduba, d. cir. 38 A. D. Wrote in old age reminiscences and specimens of the exercises of rhetorical schools, called **Suasoriae** and **Controversiae**; partly extant. (Often called Seneca Rhetor to distinguish him from his son.)

Vitruvius Pollio, cir. 14 B. C. Wrote a work on Architecture, still extant.

P. Ovīdius Nāso, b. 43 B. C., at Sulmo, d. 17 A. D. Poems amatory (B. C. 14-1 A. D.), mythological and antiquarian (A. D. 2-8), and elegiac (A. D. 9-16); all extant. A tragedy which he wrote is not extant.

Grātius. Poem on hunting; extant probably only in part.

Mānīlius. Poem on astronomy written about the end of Augustus's reign; extant.

316. SILVER AGE.

1. Early:

T. Claudius Caesar Germānīcus, b. 15 B. C., d. 18 A. D. Translation in hexameters of Aratus's poem on the constellations.

M. Vellēius Pātercūlus, a soldier before 1 A. D., died after 30 A. D. Roman history; a short work, mainly extant.

Vālērius Maxīmus, cir. 30 A. D. Wrote a collection of anecdotes, all or almost all extant.

A. Cornēlius Celsus, time of Tiberius. Practical treatises on various arts; work on medicine extant.

Phaedrus (freedman of Augustus). Fables in verse; mainly extant.

L. Annaeus Sēneca (the son), b. cir. 4 B. C., d. 65 A. D. Philosophy and tragedies; both largely extant.

Q. Curtius Rūfus, time of Claudius. History of Alexander the Great; not wholly extant.

L. Jūnius Mōdērātus Cōlūmella, of Gades, time between Celsus and Plinius major. Treatise on farming, in twelve books (one in verse); all extant.

Q. Ascōnius Pēdiānus, cir. 3-88 A. D. Notes on Cicero's speeches, partly preserved.

Pompōnius Mēla, of Tingentera, in Spain, time of Claudius. Geography; extant.

A. Persius Flaccus, b. at Volaterra 34 A. D., d. 62 A. D. Satirical poetry; extant.

M. Annaeus Lūcānus, b. 39 A. D., d. 65 A. D. Poem on the war between Pompey and Caesar, called *Pharsalia*; extant.

Petrōnius Arbīter, time of Nero. Romance; extant in large fragments, chiefly in prose, but partly in verse.

Calpurnius, time of Nero. Bucolic poetry; extant.

2. Age of Quintilian:

C. Plīnius Sēcundus (the elder), b. 23 A. D., d. 79 A. D. History, Grammar, Natural History; extant only the Natural History, in 37 books.

C. Vālērius Flaccus, d. before 90 A. D. Epic poems on the Argonautic expedition; extant.

C. Sīlius Itālīcus, b. 25 A. D., d. 101 A. D. Epic poem on the second Punic War. Extant.

P. Papīnius Stātius, b. at Naples, cir. 45 A. D., d. 96 A. D. Poems, epic and occasional. Extant: *Thēbais* cir. 80-92 A. D.; *Achillēis* (unfinished), and *Silvae*, written in the last years of his life.

M. Vālērius Martiālis, b. at Bilbilis, in Spain, cir. 42 A. D., d. cir. 102 A. D. Epigrams in verse; extant.

M. Făbius Quintĭliānus, b. at Calagurris, in Spain, cir. 35 A. D., d. cir. 95 A. D. Treatise on rhetoric; extant.

Sex Jūlius Frontĭnus, b. cir. 40 A. D., d. cir. 103 A. D. Military and engineering works. Extant: treatise on Roman aqueducts, and anecdotes of military tactics, and fragments.

3. Age of Tacitus:

Cornĕlius Tăcĭtus, b. cir. 54 A. D., d. cir. 119 A. D. Rhetoric and later Roman history. Extant: a considerable part of the history, a life of Julius Agricola, and a description of Germany. A dialogue *de oratoribus* is attributed to him, but its very different style from that of the other works of Tacitus makes this attribution doubtful.

C. Plĭnius Căecĭlius Sĕcundus (the younger), b. at Comum 62 A. D., d. 113 A. D. Letters (published by himself) and a panegyric speech. Extant.

D. Jūnius Jŭvenălis, b. at Aquĭnum, cir. 67 A. D., d. cir. 147 A. D. (So according to Friedländer. Usually put ten or twelve years earlier.) Satires; extant.

Velius Longus, time of Trajan. Grammatical treatises, one of which is extant.

Hygĭnus, time of Trajan. Land surveying; partly extant.

C. Suĕtōnius Tranquillus, b. cir. 75 A. D., d. cir. 160 A. D. Biographical, antiquarian, and grammatical writings. Partly extant, principally the Lives of the Caesars, written cir. 120 A. D.—ROBY.

317. ABBREVIATIONS.

1. First names (Praenomina)

A.	Aulus.	Mam.	Mamercus.
App.	Appius.	N. or Num.	Numerius.
C.	Gaius.	P.	Publius.
Cn.	Gnaeus.	Q.	Quintus.
D.	Decimus.	S. or Sex.	Sextus.
K.	Kaeso.	Ser.	Servius.
L.	Lucius.	S. or Sp.	Spurius.
M.	Marcus.	T.	Titus.
M. or M'.	Manius.	Ti.	Tiberius.

Women's names are expressed by inverted characters: as, ♀ for Gaia.

2. Titles of Persons, etc.

CES. or CENS.	Censor or Censores.	D.	Divus.
COS.*	Consul or Consules.	DES.	Designatus.
COSS.	Consules.		

* "Not until the 3d cent. after Christ was cons. used; in Diocletian's time began the custom of doubling the s (e. g., conss.) to denote the plural."

F.	Filius.	RESP.	Respublica.
III. V. R. C.	{ Triumvir Reipublicae constituendae.	R. P. P. R. Q.	Respublica Populi Romani Quiritium.
IMP.	Imperator.	S.	Servus.
LEG.	Legatus.	S. P. Q. R.	Senatus Populusque Romanus.
L. or LIB.	Libertus, Liberta.		
MAG.	Magister.	S. P. P. Q. R.	Senatus Populus Ple- besque Romana.
N.	Nepos.		
P. C.	Patres Conscripti.	TR. MIL.	Tribunus Militum.
P. M.	Pontifex Maximus.	TR. PL.	Tribunus Plebis.
PR.	Praetor, or Praetores.	TR. POT.	Tribuniâ Potestate.
PROC. or PRO.	{ Pro consule, i. e., Pro-	X. V.	Decemvir.
COS.	consul.	X. VIR. STL.	Decemvir stlitibus (i. e., litibus) judican- dis.
PRO. PR.	Propraetor.	JUDIK.	
PROQ.	Proquaestor.		
P. R.	Populus Romanus.	XV. V. S. F.	Quindecimviri sacris faciundis.
Q.	Quaestor.		
QUIR.	Quirites.		

The name of the tribe to which a person belonged is sometimes added to the name in an abbreviated form: thus, **Pup.** for **Pupiniâ**; **Qui.** or **Quir.** for **Quirinâ**; **Esq.** for **Esquilinâ**.

3. Sepulchral.

D. M. S.	Dis Manibus Sacrum.	H. S. E.	Hic situs est.
D. S. P.	De sua pecunia.	OB.	Obiit.
F. C.	Faciendum curavit.	P. C.	Ponendum curavit.
H. C. E.	Hic conditus est.	V.	Vixit.

4. In voting on trials.

A.	Absolvo.
C.	Condemno.
N. L.	Non liquet.

5. In voting on laws.

A. P.	Antiquam (legem) probō.
V. R.	Uti rogas.

6. Epistolary.

D.	Data (est epistola).
S. D.	Salutem dicit.
S. P. D.	Salutem plurimam dicit.
S.	Salutem (dicit).
S. V. B. E. E. V.	Si vales, bene est: ego valeo.
S. T. E. Q. V. B. E. E. Q. V.	Si tu exercitusque valetis bene est: ego quoque valeo.
S. V. G. V.	Si vales gaudeo. Valeo.

7. *In decrees of the Senate.*

D. E. R. I. C.	De ea re ita censu-	SCR. ARF.	Scribendo arfuerunt (i. e., erunt). adfuerunt).
I. N.	Intercessit nemo.	V. F.	Verba fecit.
S. C.	Senatus consultum.		

8. *Miscellaneous.*

A. U. C.	Anno urbis conditae.	ITER.	Iterum.
D. D.	Dono dedit.	L.	Libertas.
DD.	Dederunt.	M. P.	Mille passuum.
D. D. D.	Dat, dicat, dedicat.	Q. B. F. F. Q. S.	Quod bonum felix faustumque sit.
F. F. F.	Felix, faustum, fortuna- tum.		
HS	(for IIS, i. e., duo + semis) sester- tius.		

9. *Modern Latin.*

A. C.	Anno Christi.	i. q.	id quod.
A. D.	Anno Domini.	L. or Lib., Libb.	Liber, Libri.
A. M.	Anno mundi.	L. B.	Lectori Benevolo.
a. C. n.	ante Christum natum.	l. c.	loco citato.
p. C. n.	post Christum natum.	l. l.	loco laudato.
c.	caput, capitis, etc. (<i>chapter</i>).	leg.	lege or legatur.
cet.	cetera.	L. S.	Locus Sigilli.
cf.	confer or conferatur.	MS., MSS.	Manuscriptum (or Manu- scriptus, sc. liber), Manu- scripta, or manuscripti.
cir.	circa (<i>about</i>).	N. B.	Nota bene.
Cod., Codd.	Codex, Codices.	N. F.	Novum Foedus.
coll.	collato or collatis.	N. T.	Novum Testamentum.
C. P. P. C.	collatis pecuniis ponen- dum curaverunt.	obs.	observa or observetur.
comp. or cp.	compara or compare- tur.	P. S.	Postscriptum.
del.	dele or deleatur.	q. v.	quem (or quod) vide.
D. O. M.	Deo optimo maximo.	sc.	scilicet.
ed., edd.	editio, editiones.	sq., sqq.	sequenti, sequentibus.
e. g.	exempli gratiā.	s. v.	sub voce.
etc. or &c.	et cetera.	vid.	vide.
h. e.	hoc est.	viz.	videlicet.
I. C.	Jesus Christus.	v.	versus, versum, etc.
I. H. S.	Jesus Hominum Salvator.	v. c.	verbi-causā.
Ictus.	Juris consultus.	V. cel.	Vir celeberrimus.
ibid.	ibidem.	V. cl.	Vir clarissimus.
id.	idem.	V. F.	Vetus Foedus.
i. e.	id est.	V. T.	Vetus Testamentum.

10. *Academic.*

- A. B. **Artium Baccalaureus**, *Bachelor of Arts.*
A. M. **Artium Magister**, *Master of Arts.*
D. **Doctor.**
LL. B. **Legum Baccalaureus**, *Bachelor of Law.*
LL. D. **Legum Doctor**, *Doctor of Laws.*
LTT. D., or L. H. D., **Litterarum Humaniorum Doctor**, *Doctor of Literature.*
M. D. **Medicinae Doctor**, *Doctor of Medicine.*
Mus. D. **Musicae Doctor**, *Doctor of Music.*
Ph. D. **Philosophiae Doctor**, *Doctor of Philosophy.*
S. T. D. **Sanctae Theologiae Doctor**, *Doctor of Divinity.*
S. T. P. **Sanctae Theologiae Professor**, *Professor of Divinity.*
S. B. **Scientiae Baccalaureus**, *Bachelor of Science.*
S. D. **Scientiae Doctor**, *Doctor of Science.*

*** *Other Academical Degrees are represented by similar initials.*





Abbreviations: w., *with*; compd., *compound* or *compounded*. The figures denote the sections.

-a, denoting agent, 104, 4, Rem.; female names, 104, 31.

-ā in abl., 270, 1, 1.

a, ab, abs, form in compounds, 101, I.; before words of distance, *off*, 129, 5; w. abl. of agent, 173; w. verbs of abstaining, excluding, etc., 177, 1; w. verbs of driving out, 177, 3; w. abl. of remote origin, 178, 3; after adjs., 181, 1; w. abl. of place whence, 182, 2; w. abl., 186.

abbreviations, 317.

ab eo, w. abl., 177, 4.

abest ut, 208.

abhinc, 185, 6.

ablative in i in 3d decl., 29, V.; abl. plur. in *ubus*, 34, 4; abl. in *e* in adjectives of 3d decl., 43, 1; abl. sing. in comparatives, 44, 5; abl. sing. of adjs. of one termination, 45, 1; of participles, 45, 2.

ablative, definition of, 165; abl. of cause, 166; abl. of manner, 166, 166, 1-3; w. *cum*, 166, 3; abl. of accordance, 166, 4; of accompaniment, 166, 5; w. *junctus*, etc., 166, 6; w. certain verbs, 167-170; w. acc. after vbs., 169, 2; w. *opus* and *usus*, 171; of material, 172; of voluntary agent, 173; agent as mere instrument, 173, 4; after comparatives, 174; after *alius*, 174, 3; omitted after comparative, 174, 5; of quality, 175; of degree of difference, 176; of separation, 177; of source, 178; w. *ex* and *de*, 178, 2; w. *ab*, 178, 3; of price, 179; w. *dignus* and *indignus*, 179, 2; of penalty, 179, 4; of specification, 180; after

adjectives, 181; w. *macte*, 181, 2; of place whence, 182; of place in dates, 182, 3; of native place, 182, 4; of tribe, 182, 5; of place where, 183; w. preposition omitted, 183, 2; w. *totus*, 183, 2; of apparent place, 183, 4; of route, 184; of time, 185; of time within which, 185, 5; time how long, 185, 10; 129, 3; w. propositions, 186; ablative absolute, 187; abl. of gerunds and gerundives, 252, 13; of supine, 254.

absque, w. ablative, 186.

-abus for -is, 19, 6.

abutor, 167; *abutendus*, 167, 2.

ac, atque, after words of likeness and unlikeness, 257, 7.

ac si, 220.

acatalectic, 284, B. ii., 3.

accentuation, 9, 10, 11.

accidit, 208.

accingor, construction, 125.

accipi, w. dat. of the end, 161, 4.

accommodatus, 162, 1 and 5.

accompaniment, 166, 5.

accusative in -im, 29, iv.

accusative, 14; as subject of an infinitive, 109, 3; accusative of direct object, 121; w. impersonal verbs, 121, 1, n. 1; attracted, 121, 1, n. 3; w. intransitive verbs, 121, 2; w. verbal nouns, 121, 3; w. participial in -bundus, 121, 4; w. omitted verb, 121, 5; w. verbs compounded w. prepositions, 122; w. preposition repeated, 122, n. 3; two accusatives w. compounds, 122, n. 2; cognate acc., 123; defining acc., 124; acc. of neuter adjs. and pronouns w.

- intransitive verbs, 124, n. 1; of inner object, 124, n. 1; a neuter acc. of a pronoun w. acc. of the person after intransitives, 124, n. 2; acc. w. passives used reflexively, 125; two acc. w. verbs of naming, making, etc., 126; two acc. w. *doceo* and *celo*, 127; one acc. retained w. passive verb, while the other becomes subject, 127, 4; acc. of specification, 128, 1; of part affected, 128, 1, and note; adverbial, 128, 2, 3; 124, n. 1; acc. antecedent to relative in the acc., 128, 4; of extent of time or space, 129; terminal acc., 130; of *domus* and *rus*, 130, 3; after prepositions, 131; w. postpositions, 131, 5; in exclamations, 132; w. interjections, 132; after intransitives become transitive, 153, 4; acc. of the infinitive, 237; 241; of gerunds and gerundives, 252, 11, 12; of supine, 253.
- accusative w. infinitive**, 109, 3; 111, 4; 142, 3; 209, 2, 3; 228, 1; 228, 1, 2; 228, 4; 228, 6; 228, 7; 236-240; 242; personal construction of passives preferred to, 245.
- accusing and acquitting**, verbs of, 140.
- aceus**, 104, 40.
- ad**, in composition, 101, I.; meaning to one's abode, 115, 2; vbs. compounded w. governing acc., 122; two accs., 122, n. 2; w. acc., 131; *ad Vestae*, 133, 1, n. 1; after adjectives, 136, 3; 162, 5; w. acc. after *refert* and *interest*, 142, 4; vbs. compd. w. governing dat., 154; prep. repeated, 154, 2; meaning *at* or *near*, 183, 6, *a*; w. gerunds and gerundives, 252, 11; denoting purpose, 252, 12.
- ades**, 104, 34.
- adipiscor**, w. gen., 145, 3.
- adire aliquem**, 122, n. 4.
- adjectives**, declension of, 38-45; irregular, 46; comparison of, 47-51; 53; numeral, 54, 55; derivation, 104, 35-52; agreement of, 113; as adverbs, 113, 6; for nouns, 113, 7, 8; for genitives, 133, n. 3; governing gen., 136; governing dat., 162; governing abl., 168; 181.
- admonéo**, 139, 1.
- Adonic verse**, 289, 3; 301, 6.
- adspergo**, 152.
- adsuefacere**, **adsuetus**, 169, 1.
- adulor**, 160, 2.
- adverbs**, 99; comparison of, 52; numeral, 54, 3; 55, 5, 8, 9; pronominal, 63, 3; 4; as adj., 113, 9; adverbs w. gen., 133, 4, n. 1, *b*, *g*; 133, 7, 1; w. acc., 162, 6; w. dat., 163; syntax of, 255.
- adversum or adversus w. acc.**, 131.
- advising**, verbs of, 209.
- aeger**, w. locative genitive, 136, 6.
- aemulor**, 160, 2.
- aequalis**, 162, 1, 3.
- aequi bonique facio**, 146, 2.
- aestimo**, 146, 1, *c*.
- aeus**, 104, 51.
- affatim w. gen.**, 133, 4, n. 1, *b*.
- affinis**, 162, 1 and 3.
- agent**, abl. of w. *a*, 173; without prep., 173, 4; dat. of, 157; 252, 16.
- agreement of predicate and subject**, 110; 111; appositive, 112; of adjectives w. their nouns, 113; of pronouns w. their antecedents, 114; attraction, 114, 2, *b*; 114, 3.
- āi**, 19, 2.
- al**, 104, 17.
- Alcāic verse**, 284, *E*; 291, 2; 292, 4, 5; the *Alcaic strophe*, 301, 8, and *n*.
- Alcmanian strophe**, 284, *E*; 301, 13.
- alienus**, instead of a genitive, 133, n. 3; w. dat., 162, 1; w. gen., 162, 3; w. abl., 162, 5.
- alii—alii**, 119, 9, *d*, *e*.
- aliquis, aliqui**, 62, 13; 119, 3, 4.
- alis**, 104, 41.
- aliter atque**, 257, 7.
- alius**, decl., 41; use of, 119, 9, *d*, *e*; w. abl., 174, 3; **alius—alium**, w. plural verb, 110, 5.
- alius atque**, 257, 7.
- allegory**, 305.
- alliteration**, 305.
- alphabet**, 1; 2.
- alter**, decl., 41; meaning *second*, 119, 9, *c* (ordinals); use of, 119, 9, *a-c*; **alter—alter**, **alteri—alteri**, 119, 9, *b*.
- altus**, w. acc. of extent, 129, 1.
- amb-**, 101, ii., 1.
- ambiguity** where there are two accusatives w. an infinitive, 304 (*amphibolia*).
- ambo**, declension of, 55, 2.
- amicus**, 162, 1, 3.
- amphibolia**, 304.
- amplius** without *quam*, 174, 1.
- an**, 258, 7-10, 12-15.
- anacoluthon**, 304.
- Anacreontic verse**, 284, *E*; 296, 6; 297.
- anacrusis**, 284, *C*, 1.
- anapaest**, 283, 2; **cyclic**, 290, 1, n. 2.
- anapaestic metres**, 295.

- anaphora**, 305.
anastrophe, 304.
animi, 148, 3.
animus (or in *animus*) *induxi*, in *animus est* or *habeo*, w. inf., 241, 1.
annon, 258, 10.
answers, 258, 16, 17.
ante, w. acc., 131; postpositive, 131, 5;
 in compds. w. acc., 122; w. dat., 154;
 in expressions of time, 185, 6.
antecedent, 114, 1; repeated, 114, 2, a;
 incorporated in the relative clause,
 114, 2, b; omitted, 114, 2, c; relative
 attracted to its case, 114, 3.
anteo, w. acc., 122; w. dat., 154.
antequam, 214, 2.
antithesis, 305.
antonomasia, 305.
-anus, 104, 42, 45, 48.
aorist. See perfect, historical.
aphaeresis, 304.
apocope, 304.
apodosis, 215; 304; omitted, 220.
aposiopesis, 305.
apostrophe, 305.
apposition, 112; w. *nomen*, 112, 1,
 Exc.
appositive clauses, 212.
aptus, 162, 1 and 5.
aptus qui, 223, 2.
apud, w. acc., 131; meaning at the
 house of, 115, 2.
-ar, 104, 17.
arceo, 151.
archaism, 304.
Archilochian verse, 284, *E*; 289, 4; 291,
 1; 299; 301, 9-12.
-aris, 104, 41.
Aristophanic verse, 284, *E*; 291, 3;
 301, 7.
-arium, 104, 19.
-arius, 104, 18; 104, 42.
arrangement of words, 259-261; of
 clauses, 262, 263.
arsis, 283, 1.
article, 19, n.
-as in gen. First Declension, 19, 3; suf-
 fix, 104, 49.
as, 56, 3; 306; 308-311.
Asclepiadean verse, 284, *E*; 293, 1, 2;
 301, 1-5.
asking, verbs of, 127; 209; 242, 6.
assimilation, 304; 95, 3; 96; 101.
assis, genitive of value, 146, 1.
assuetus, 169.
asynartete, 284, *D*.
asyndeton, 304.
atque, after words of likeness or un-
 likeness, 257, 7.
attempted action, w. pres., 189, 5; w.
 imperf., 190, 3.
attraction, 304; of predicate noun or
 adjective after *licet* w. dat., 111, 6; of
 names of persons, 112, 1, Exc.; 156, 1;
 inverted, 114, 2, b; of relative, 114, 3;
 of subject of governed clause, as ob-
 ject, 121, n. 3; of mood, 226; 228, 1, 2;
 of vbs. meaning to say or think, 232, 3.
-atus, 104, 20, 44.
audior, 245, 1.
ausim, 84, 12, a.
aut, 110, 6; 257, 4.
aut—aut w. sing., 110, 7; 257, 6.
authors, Latin, 314-316.
-ax, 104, 36, 3; verbals in, 136, 1.
bacchiac verse, 298.
barbarism, 304.
base, 284, *C*, 2, 3.
becoming, verbs of, 111.
being, verbs of, 111; 156; 161.
belli, 148, 2.
bene emere, vendere, 179, 1.
-ber, 104, 4, Rem.
-bilis, 104, 36, 2; verbals in, 157, 3.
binarius, 284, *B*, 5.
bini, a pair, 55, 4, a.
birth, participles denoting, 178.
boni consulo, facio, 146, 2.
bos, declined, 31.
brachycatalectic, 284, *B*, ii. 3.
brachylogy, 304.
-brum, 104, 10.
bucolic diaeresis or caesura, 286, 5.
-bulum, 104, 10, 11.
-bundus, 104, 36, 4; participial in, w.
 acc., 121, 4.
buying, verbs of, 147; 179.
caesura, 286; 284, *A*, 1.
calendar, Roman, 313, 9.
called, verbs of being, 111.
calling, verbs of, 126.
capitis, capite, 140, 2; 179, 4.
cardinals, 54; declension, 55, 1-4.
cases, 14; cases alike, 17, 1-3; case
 endings, 18; in the first decl., 19; 19,
 2-7; second, 21; 23, n.; 23, 2-9; 25, 1;
 third, 29; 33; fourth, 34; fifth, 35; of
 adjs., 39-42; 43, 1; 44, 3, 5, 6; 45, 1-4; 46,
 1; of pronouns, 57, 3-6; 58, 1, 4; 61,
 1-3; 62, 8, 9, 11, 14.
catachresis, 305.
catalectic, 284, *B*, ii. 3.

- causā* and *gratiā* w. gen., 133, 7.
causal clauses, 214, 3; 224; 232.
cause, gen. of, 136, 4; 145, 1; abl. of, 166; denoted by a participle, 250.
cave w. subj., for negative imperative, 247, 6.
caveo, w. acc., 160, 1; w. dat., 160, 1; with or without *ne* or *ut*, 210, 1; w. inf., 210, 1.
-ce, 60, 2.
cedo, w. abl., 177, 4.
celer, decl., 42, 1.
celo, 127; 127, 1.
certo w. dat., 153, 7.
certum est, 241, 1.
certus, 136, 2, 3.
ceu, 220.
ch, sound of, 3, i., ii.
chiasm, 305.
choosing, verbs of, 111; 126.
choriambic metres, 293.
cingi, w. acc., 125.
-cinium, 104, 22.
circa, *circiter*, w. acc., 131; *circa* post-positive, 131, 5.
circum, compds. w. acc., 122, n. 2; w. acc., 131; postpositive, 131, 5.
circumdo, *circumfundo*, 152.
cis, *citra*, w. acc., 131.
citius quam, 214, 2, 1.
clam, w. acc., 186, 2; w. abl., 186.
clanculum, w. acc., 186, 2.
climax, 305.
-clum, 104, 10.
coeptus sum, 86, 5.
cognatus, 162, 1, 3.
cogo, 242, 4.
coins, Roman, 306.
collective nouns w. plural verb, 110, 4.
com-, *con-*, in compds. w. dat., 154.
comitor, 160, 2.
communis, w. dat., 162; 162, 1; w. gen., 162, 3; 136, 7.
commuto, 179, 3.
comparative degree, declension of, 44; formation, 44, 3; 47; abl. in *-i* in, 44, 5; wanting, 49, 2; 50; of adverbs, 52; meaning *too* or *rather*, 53, 1; two comparatives, 53, 2; w. abl., 174; w. gen. of the whole, 133, 4, f; standard of comparison omitted after, 174, 5; w. *quam*, *quam qui*, or *quam ut*, and the subj., 223, 5, and n.
comparison of adjs., 47-50; irregular, 49; w. *magis* (or *minus*), *maxime* (or *minime*), 50; of participles, 51; of adverbs, 52; notes on, 53.
compendi, 135, 2.
compleo, 141.
complures, decl., 44, 4.
compound sentences, 107, 2.
compound tenses, 74, n. 1-3; 83, 1, 2; 199.
compound words, 106.
concedo, 242, 4.
concessive subj., 204; 214, 3; 225; concessive particles, 204, 2; concessive clause as condition, 217, 2, 3; concessive participle, 250.
condemning, verbs of, 140.
conditional sentences, 215-221; logical, w. indicative, 215, 2; ideal, 215, 3; unreal, 215, 4; mixed, 216; denoted by an adj., an abl. abs., or only implied, 217; by a concessive clause, 217, 2, 3; by a question or an imperative, 217, 4; incomplete, 219; 220; in *oratio obliqua*, 228, 6, 7; conditional participle, 217; 250.
conduco, 147, 1, 3; 179.
confido, 168.
conjugations, 73; of *sum*, 70; first conj., 74; second, 75; third, 76; 77; fourth, 78; deponent verbs 79; (general view of the four conjugations, pages 102-105;) periphrastic, 82; irregular verbs, 85; defective verbs, 86; impersonal verbs, 87.
conjunctions, 100; co-ordinative, 100, 2; subordinative, 100, 3; syntax, 257; conjunction omitted, 257, 2, 3.
conor, 242, 5.
conscius, w. gen., 136, 2; w. dat., 136, 3.
consilium cepi, *consilium est*, etc., w. inf., 241, 1.
consimilis, 162, 4.
consors, 136, 2.
consto (*cost*), 147, 1, 3; 179; (*consist* of), 172.
consulo, 160, 1.
contendo w. dat., 153, 7.
contentus w. abl., 168.
contineo, w. abl., 183, 2.
contingit, 208, n.
contra, w. acc., 131; postpositive, 131, 5.
contractions in forms of verbs, 84, 2, 4, 7-10.
contrarius, 162, 1, 3.
convenio, 160.
coordinate clauses, 107, 3.
copula, 108, 3, 1; omitted, 108, 3, 3; agreeing in number w. predicate, 111, 3.
coram, w. abl., 186.
correlative pronominal adjectives, 63, 1; pronom. adverbs, 63, 2-4.

cotidie, locative, 35, 4.
 crasis, 276, 5; 304.
 credor, 245.
 cretic metres, 294.
 -crum, 104, 10.
 cuicuimodi, 62, 14, 8.
 cujus modi, 134, n. 2.
 -cula, 104, 25, 2.
 -culum, 104, 10; 104, 25, 2.
 -culus, 104, 25, 2.
 cum, appended, 57, 7; 62, 10; subjects united by, 110, 2, 2; w. abl., 186; w. abl. of manner, 166, 1, 3; of accompaniment, 166, 5.
 cum (quum), concessive or adversative, 204, 2, 1; 214, 3; in comparison or contrast, 214, 3, 2; causal, 214, 3; temporal, 214, 4, 5; 214, 5, 2-5; of coincident action, 214, 4, n. 2; marking lapse of time, 185, 9; 214, 4, n. 3; of subordination, 214, 5, 1; marking a period within which, 214, 5, 3; meaning as often as, 214, 5, 5; conditional, 217, 5.
 cum (quum) primum, 193, 1.
 cum—tum, 257, 6.
 -cumque disjoined, 62, 14, 7; compds. with, how declined, 62, 15.
 -cundus, 104, 36, 4.
 cupio, 241, 4.
 cura est, 241, 1.
 cura ut, 247, 6.
 curo, 242, 5.
 cyclic dactyl and anapaest, 290, 1, n. 2.
 dactyl, 283, 2; cyclic, 290, 1, n. 2.
 dactylic hexameter, 285-287; other dactylic verses, 288, 289.
 damno, 140, 2; damnari w. ad, in, or a gen., 140, 2, n.
 dative, 14; in first declension, 20, 2, 6, 7; in the second, 23, 6; in third decl., 29, iii.; in fourth decl., 34, 3, 4; in fifth decl., 35, 2, 3; dat. in i in adjs., 41.
 dative, defined, 149; of advantage, 149; 151, n.; w. transitive verbs and the acc., 150; 152; w. the passive, 150, 1; w. verbs of taking away and protecting from, 151; w. intransitive verbs, 153; w. impersonals, 153, 1, b; w. passives used impersonally, 153, 3; poetic dat. of place whither, 153, 5; in poets and later prose writers, 153, 6; w. verbs of contending, 153, 7; w. compound verbs, 154; 155; of possessor, w. esse, 156; w. est alicui nomen, 156, 1; w. participle agreeing with it, after

esse, 156, 2; of agent, 157; w. verbals in -bilis, 157, 3; limiting the whole predicate, 158; translated as genitive, 158, 1; specifying a relation, 158, 2; w. quid or idem and facio or fio, 158, 3; of participle, denoting time or circumstances, 158, 4; ethical, 159; dat. or acc. w. verbs, 160; two datives, w. esse, etc., 161; of the end, 161, 4; w. adjs., 162; w. propior, proximus, propius, proxime, 162, 6; w. idem, 162, 7; w. adverbs, 163; w. interjections, 163; w. verbal nouns, 164; w. gerundives, 157, 1; 252, 16; of gerunds and gerundives, 252, 9, 10.
 de, w. abl., 186; w. abl., instead of a gen., 133, 4, n. 5; after participles of origin, 178, 2; of time, 185, 4.
 dea, dat. and abl. plur., 19, 6.
 debeo, past tenses of w. present inf., 246, 3.
 decasyllabus, 284, B, 6.
 deceo, 153, 2, b.
 decerno, 242, 5.
 decerto, 153, 7.
 decet, 239, 3.
 declension, 12, 1; first, 19, 20; second, 21-25; third, 26-28; fourth, 34; fifth, 35; first and second of adjs., 39-41; third, 42-45; of cardinals, 55; of pronouns, 57-62.
 declensions, general view of all the, 36.
 defective nouns, 37; adjs., 46, 2, 3; verbs, 86.
 deficio, 153, 2, b.
 definite price, 179.
 delaying, verbs of w. quin, 211.
 detector, 168.
 deliberative questions, 205.
 demanding, verbs of, 242, 4, 6.
 demonstratives, 59; use of, 116; redundant, 116, 8; used in a suggestive sense, 116, 10.
 demonstrator, 245, 1.
 denominatives, 105, 2.
 deponent verbs, 64, 1; 79; 80; 84, 5; 97, v.
 depriving, verbs of, 177.
 desideratives, 88, 4.
 design. See purpose.
 desire, 241, 4; verbs of, 242.
 despero, w. acc. or dat., 160, 2.
 deus, decl., 23, 9.
 dexter, 40, 1.
 dextra, 183, 2.
 di-, dis-, 101, ii., 2.
 diaeresis, 2; 304; 277; 284, A, 2, 3.

- dialysis, 277.
 diastole, 280.
 dic, 84, 4.
 dicionis, in pred., 135, 2.
 dicolum, 284, *B*, 1, 1.
 dicor, 245.
 difference, abl. of the measure of the, 176.
 dignor, 168.
 dignus, w. abl., 179, 2; w. gen., 179, 2; dignus qui, 223, 2; dignus w. inf., 223, 2. n.; dignus w. supine, 254.
 dimeter, 284, *B*, 2, 2.
 diminutive nouns, 104, 25; adjs., 104, 29; verbs, 88, 5.
 diphthongs, 2, 1, 2.
 dipody, 284, *B*, ii., 1.
 direct discourse, 107, 1, n.; 228, n.
 dis-, compds. of w. dat., 177, 2.
 disadvantage, dat. of, 149; 151, n.
 dispar, 162, 1, 3.
 dissimilis, 162, 4.
 distance, acc. or abl. of, 129, 4, 5.
 distare, w. dat., 153, 6; 177, 2.
 distich, 284, *B*, i., 2.
 distributives, 54, 2; 55, 4; in multiplication, 55, 5.
 diversus, 162, 1, 3; 181; 181, 1.
 do, w. two datives, 161.
 doceo, 127; 127, 1, 3.
 doctus, 127, 3.
 doleo, 121, 2, *a*; 168; 232, 4.
 domus, decl., 34, 1.
 domi, 148, 2.
 domo, 182, 1; 183, 6, *a*.
 domum, domos, 130, 3.
 donec, 214, 1; 214, 1, n. 1, n. 2, n. 3.
 dono, 152; 161.
 doubt, verbs of, 211.
 dramatists, early, quantity in, 302.
 driving out, verbs of, 177, 3.
 dual number, 55 (duo and ambo).
 dubito, 211; 237.
 dubito an, 231, 4; 258, 15.
 duc, 84, 4.
 duco, w. two datives, 161; w. gen., 146; w. acc. and inf., 238, n. 1.
 dum, for dem, 84, 1.
 dum, w. pres., 214, 1, n. 2; w. indic., 214, n. 1, n. 2; w. subj., 214, 1; 217, 3.
 dum, dummodo, 217, 3.
 e in dat., 29, iii.
 e or ex, w. abl., 186; for gen., 133, 4, n. 5; in compds. w. dat., 151; of origin, 178, 2.
 ecce, 102, 1, 2; w. demonstratives, 51, 5; w. nom., 120, 3; w. acc., 132.
 ecthipsis, 274, 5; 304.
 edim for edam, 84, 1.
 efficio, 209, n.; 209, 1.
 egeo, 143.
 cheu, 102, 1, 1; w. acc., 132.
 ei (hei), 102, 1, 1; w. dat., 163.
 -eis, nom. and acc. pl., 29, viii., xi.
 -eis, 104, 34.
 ejus modi, 134, n. 2.
 -ela, 104, 16.
 elegiac distich, 288.
 elegiac verse, 299, 2.
 elision, 274.
 -ella, 104, 27.
 ellipsis, 304.
 -ellus, 104, 27, 29, 30.
 emo, 179.
 emotion, verbs of, 168 (cause); 232, 4.
 emphasis, in arrangement of words, 260.
 en, 102, 1, 2; w. demonstratives, 61, 5; w. nom., 120, 3; w. acc., 132.
 enallage, 304; 305.
 enclitics, 11.
 end, dat. of, 161.
 endeavor, verbs of, 242, 5.
 ending, verbs of, 241, 1.
 enneasyllabus, 284, *B*, 6.
 ennehemimeris, 284, *A*; ennehemimeral caesura, 284, *A*, 1.
 -ensis, 104, 48.
 -enus, 104, 51.
 eo, w. gen., 133, 4, n. 1, b.
 eo, measure of difference, 176.
 epenthesis, 304.
 epexegesis, 305.
 -ere for -erunt, 84, 10.
 erga, w. acc., 131, 1.
 ergo, w. gen., 133, 7.
 es, joined to preceding word, 70, 6; e in, 70, 5.
 escit for erit, 70, 4.
 essential part, subj. of, 226.
 est, dropping its initial, 70, 6; est ut, *it is the case that*, 208, n.
 est qui, 223, 4; 227, 1.
 ethical dative, 159.
 etiamsi, etsi, 215, 1, n. 2.
 -etum, 104, 24.
 euphemism, 305.
 euphony, in arrangement, 259. See rhythm.
 -eus, 104, 37, 46, 47.
 evenit, 208, n.
 excello, 168.

exchanging, verbs of, 179, 3.
 exclamations, acc. w. inf. in, 240; ut
 w. subj., 240, 2.
 existimor, 245.
 expers, 136, 2.
 expleo, 141.
 exsors, 136, 2.
 exsulto, 168.
 extent of space or time, 129.
 extra, w. acc., 131, 1.
 extremum est, 208, n.
 extremus, meaning, 113, 10.
 exuo, 152.
 exuor, 125.

fac, 84, 4; *suppose*, 209, 2; *fac, fac ut*,
fac ne w. subj., for *imperat.*, 247, 6.
 facio, accent of compds., 9, Exc.; pas-
 sive of compds., 85, 2, n. 4; w. gen.,
 135, 2; w. dat., 158, 3; w. abl., 158, 3;
 w. subj., 209, 209, 2, 5; w. inf., 238.
 fama fert, w. inf., 238, n. 3, a.
 fas, w. abl. supine, 254.
 faxo, faxim, 84, 12.
 fearing, verbs and phrases of, 213.
 feet, in verse, 283, 2, 5.
 feminine caesura, 286, 7.
 fer, 84, 4.
 feror, 245.
 fertilis, w. gen., 136, 2.
 fido, 168.
 filia, dat. and abl. pl., 19, 6.
 filling, verbs of, 141.
 final sentences. See *purpose*.
 fine, abl. of, 140, 2.
 fio, 135, 1, 2; 158, 3.
 fit, 208.
 fitness, adjs. of, 162, 5.
 flagito, 242, 4.
 flocci, 146, 1, a.
 floreo, 168.
 for = *in behalf of*, 149, 3.
 foras, terminal acc., 37, 5.
 fore, 70, 3; w. perf. part., 246, 6.
 fore ut, 246, 5.
 forem, 70, 2; as an auxiliary, 74, n. 2.
 forgetting, verbs of, 137.
 foris, locative abl., 37, 5.
 formation of words, 103.
 forsitan, 202, 1.
 fractions, 56.
 frequentatives, 88, 2.
 fretus, w. abl., 168.
 friendliness, adjs. of, 162, 2, 5.
 frugi, 46, 3, d; compared, 49, 1.
 fruor, 167; fruentus, 80, 5, Exc.; 167, 2.
 fuam for sim, 70, 1.

fui, perf. pass. part. w., 74, n. 1; 199.
 fulness, adjs. of w. gen., 136, 2.
 fungor, 167; fungendus, 80, 5, Exc.; 167, 2.
 future, 66, 2; 191; periphrastic fut.
 conjugation, 82, 1; in -ibo, -ibor, 84,
 2; in -iet in compds. of eo, 85, 7, 4;
 fut. indic. as imperative, 191, 2; 247,
 3, 5; of subj., 93; inf., 246; 246, 5-7;
 imper., 247, 2, 4.
 future participle, 249, 1; w. fuisse, in
 dep. apodosis of an unreal condi-
 tional sentence, 228, 6.
 future perfect, 66, 5; 195; of immedi-
 ate sequence, 195, 3; of future result,
 195, 4.
 futurum esse, fore, ut, 228, 6; 246, 5.
 futurum est ut, 208.
 futurum fuisse ut (w. pass. in a depen-
 dent apodosis of an unreal condi-
 tional sentence), 228, 6.
 fuvit = fuit, 70, 1

Galliambic, 297.
 gaudeo, w. abl., 168; w. acc. and inf.,
 or quod, 232, 4.
 gemo, w. acc., 121, 2, a.
 gender, 13; first decl., 19; 19, 8; second,
 21; 23, 7; 24; third, 30; fourth, 34;
 34, 5; fifth, 35; 35, 5; in heterogeneous
 nouns, 37, 6; in redundant nouns, 37, 8.
 genitive, endings of, 17, 18; first decl.,
 19, 2, 3, 4; second, 23, 4, 5; 25, 1; third,
 26, 1, 2; 29, ii.; 33; fourth, 34, 1, 2; fifth,
 35, 2, 3; of adjs., in *ius*, 41.
 genitive, 14; adnominal, 133; of posses-
 sion, 133, 1; w. the limiting noun omit-
 ted, 133, 1, n. 1; represented by posses-
 sive adj. pron., 133, 1, n. 2; agreeing
 w. gen. implied in possessive pron.,
 133, 1, n. 2, b; represented by adjs.,
 133, 1, n. 3; subjective, 133, 2; objec-
 tive, 133, 3; translated by various
 prepositions, 133, 3, n. 1; subj. and
 obj. genitives w. same noun, 133, 3,
 n. 2; after partitives, 133, 4; after
 words of measure or quantity, 133, 4,
 n. 2; gen. of the whole as predicate,
 133, 4, n. 3; not used after numerals
 not partitive, and with *omnes*, 133, 4,
 n. 4; prepositions used instead of, 133,
 4, n. 5; of neut. adj. of second decl.
 after neut. adjs. or pronouns or nihil,
 133, 4, n. 6; neut. pl. of adjs. or parti-
 ciples w. a defining gen., 133, 4, n. 7;
 of definition, corresponding to an ap-
 positive, 133, 5; of material, 133, 6;
 w. causa, gratia, etc., 133, 7; after ad-

- verbs and preps., 133, 7; of quality or description, w. an adj., 134; of general or permanent qualities, 134, n. 1; as predicate, w. sum, 135; w. fio, 135, 1, 2; w. facio, 135, 2; after adjs., 136, 2; w. verbals in -ax and participles used as adjs., 136, 1; other constructions w. adjs., 136, 3; of cause or source, 136, 4; 145, 1; of respect in which, 136, 5; animi, as seat of feeling, 136, 6; after adj. used as noun, 136, 7; w. verbs of remembering and forgetting, 137; w. venit in mentem, 137, 2, n.; w. verbs of pitying, 138; w. verbs of reminding, 139, 1; w. impersonals, 139, 2; w. judicial verbs, 140; w. verbs of filling, 141; w. refert and interest, 142; w. egeo and indigeo, 143; w. satago, 144; poetic uses of, 145; of cause, 145, 1; of separation, 145, 2; w. potior, adipiscor, etc., 145, 3; of value, 146; w. verbs of buying and selling, 147; locative of names of towns and small islands, 148, 1; of domi, belli, etc., 148, 2, 3; of gerunds and gerundives, 252, 4-8.
- gerund**, 65, 5; 68, 1; in -undi, 84, 11; 91, 9.
- gerundive**, 65, 4; 68, 1; of deponents, 80, 5; periphrastic gerundive conjugation, 82, 2; in -undus, 84, 11; 91, 9.
- gerunds and gerundives**, 252; gerundive, instead of gerund w. acc., 252, 1, 2; gen., w. nouns and adjs., 252, 4; gen. governing a gen., 252, 5; gen. in predicate after *esse*, of purpose or end, 252, 6; gen. of purpose, 252, 7; w. gen. sing. neut. of possessive adj. prons., 252, 8; dat., of purpose, etc., 252, 9; acc. more common, 252, 9, 1; adjs. and phrases followed by dat., 252, 9, 2; predicative use of dat. after *esse*, 252, 9, 3; purpose of an office, 252, 10; acc. w. preps., 152, 11; acc. of gerundive w. verbs to denote purpose, 252, 11, n., 12; abl., 252, 13; neut. gerundive used impersonally, 252, 14; nom. of the gerund, 252, 14, n. 1; w. obj. in acc., 252, 14, n. 2; personal gerundive construction, 252, 15; w. dat. of agent, 252, 16; meaning of gerundive used attributively, 252, 17.
- glorior**, w. abl., 168.
- Glyconic verse**, 284, *E*; 292, 7.
- gnomic perfect**, 192, 2, c.
- Graecism**, 304.
- gratia**, w. gen., 133, 7.
- gratis**, 19, 7.
- greater Ionic metres**, 294.
- Greek nouns**, first decl., 20; second, 25; third, 32, 23.
- guilt**, adjs. of, w. gen., 136, 2.
- habeo**, w. gen. of value, 146, *I*, *b*; w. two dat., 161, 2; w. inf., 241, 1; w. rel. and subj., 223, 4, *n*.
- habilis**, 162, 5.
- haerere**, 153, 6.
- haud scio an**, 231, 4; 258, 15.
- hei (ei)** w. dat., 163.
- hemimeris**, 284, *A*.
- hendecasyllabus**, 284, *B*, 6; 292, 3, 4.
- hendiadys**, 304.
- hepthemimeral caesura**, 284, *A*, 1.
- hepthemimeris**, 284, *A*.
- heteroclitics**, 37, 7.
- heterogeneous nouns**, 37, 6.
- heu**, w. acc., 132; rarely, w. nom. or voc. 120, 2, 3.
- hexameter**, 284, *B*, ii, 2; dactylic, 285.
- hiatus**, 275.
- hic**, 59; 61, 1; meaning of, 116; of time within which, 185, 5.
- hic**, adv., 61.
- Hipponactean verse**, 284, *E*; 296, 3.
- historical perfect**, 66, 4; 193; after temporal conjunctions, 193, 1; historical present, 189, 6.
- historical tenses**. See **secondary tenses**.
- hodiernus**, w. force of adv., 113, 6.
- homoeoteleuton**, 305.
- homonymia**, 305.
- Horace**, lyric metres of, 301.
- horreo**, w. acc., 121, 2, *a*.
- hortative subj.**, 203.
- hostility**, adjs. of, 162; 162, 5.
- hours**, Roman, 313, 1.
- humi**, 148, 2.
- hypallage**, 304.
- hyperbaton**, 304.
- hyperbole**, 305.
- hypercatalectic**, 284, *B*, ii, 3.
- hypermetrical verses**, 287.
- hyphen**, 304.
- hypothetical**. See **conditional**.
- hysteron proteron**, 305.
- i- nouns**, 26, 2; **-i** in abl., 29, v.
- ia**, 104, 35, 1.
- iades**, 104, 34, 1, *d*.
- iambic verses**, 296.
- iambilegic verse**, 299, 1.
- ianus**, 104, 45.
- ias**, 104, 34, 2, c.
- ibam** for **-iebam**, 84, 2.

- ibi, 61; w. its correlatives, 63, 3.
 -ibo, -ibor, for -iam, -iar, 84, 2.
 -icius, 104, 40.
 ictus, 283, 1, 3.
 -icus, 104, 41, 45, 46.
 idem, 60; meaning, 116, 7; w. dat., 162, 7.
 -ides, 104, 34, 1, a, b.
 -ido, 104, 16.
 idoneus, 162, 2, 5; w. inf., 223, 2, n.; idoneus qui, 223, 2.
 -idus, 104, 36, 1.
 -iensis, 104, 48.
 -ier in the infinitive, 84, 6.
 -ies, 104, 15.
 ignarus, 136, 2.
 -igo, 104, 6.
 -ile, 104, 24.
 -ilis, 104, 36, 2; 104, 41.
 -illa, 104, 27.
 ille, 59; 61, 2, 5; 116, 1-4, 8-10; of time within which, 185, 5.
 illic, 60, 2; adverb, 61.
 -illum, 104, 27.
 -illus, 104, 27.
 -im in acc., 29, 4.
 -im in pres. subj., 84, 1.
 imbuo, 169, 2.
 imitative verbs, 88, 7.
 immemor, 136, 2.
 immo, 258, 18.
 imparisyllables, 26, 1.
 impedio, 210.
 imperative, 65, 2; present, 247, 1, 4; future, 247, 2; w. ne, 247, 4; substitutes for the affirmative imperat., 247, 3; for the negative, 247, 5; for aff. or neg., 247, 5, n. 1; w. neve, neu, 247, 5, n. 2; w. non, neque, nec, 247, n. 2; periphrases for, 247, 6; softened, 247, 7; perf. pass., 247, 8; in oratio obliqua, 228, 2.
 imperfect, 66, 3; indic., 190; in letters, 200; w. cum, 214, 5, 2, 3; w. antequam, etc., 215, 2, 4; subj., 203, 2, 8; 214, 1, 2; 3; 5; 215, 4; 215, 4, 1, 2; 228, 2, 6, 9; 234.
 imperitus, 136, 2.
 impero, 242, 7.
 impersonal verbs, 87; active, 87, 2; persons expressed w., 87, 2; personal verbs, used impersonally, 87, 3; of weather or season, 87, 4; passive, 87, 5; persons w., 87, 5; neuter gerundive used impersonally, 87, 6; person w., 87, 6.
 impersonal verbs w. acc., 121, n. 1; w. clauses of result as subject, 208, n.
 impersonal, personal construction of passives for, 245.
 impertio, 162.
 impleo, 141.
 impotens, 136, 2.
 imprudens, 136, 2; w. force of adv., 113, 6.
 imus, 113, 10.
 in, in compds., 101, i.; w. acc. or abl., 131, 3; w. acc. after adjs., 136, 3; 162, 5; verbs compdd. w. governing acc., 122; 122, 4; governing dat., 154; prep. repeated after, 154, 2, 4; w. abl. of time within which, 185, 4; w. gerund., 252, 11, 18.
 in-, inseparable particle, 101, i.
 -ina, 104, 21.
 -inas, 104, 45.
 incedo, w. pred. nom., 111, 1; w. acc., 122; w. dat., 154.
 inceptives, 88, 1.
 inchoatives, 88, 1.
 incorporated clause, subj. in, 226, n. 2.
 increments, quantity of, 271.
 indeclinable adjs., 46, 3, d.
 indefinite pronouns, 62, 5-7, 13, 14; 119.
 indicative, 65; 188; in condit. sentences, 181, 1; 215, 2; in the apodosis, 215, 3, n. 3; 215, 4, 3; as an auxiliary, 196; in relative clauses, 227.
 indigeo, 143.
 indignus, 179, 2; w. sup., 254; indignus qui, 223, 2; w. infin., 223, 2, n.
 indirect discourse. See oratio obliqua.
 indirect or remoter object, 108, 6; 149, 1.
 indirect questions, 231.
 inducor, 125.
 induo, 152.
 induor, 125.
 -ine, 104, 34.
 in eo esse ut, 197, 2, n.
 infimus, 113, 10.
 infinitive, 65, 3; 235-246; w. subj. acc., 109, 3; 209, 2, 3; 238-240; w. nom., 109, 3, Exc.; 243; pred. of, 111, 4; pred. of in nom., after verbs of saying, thinking, feeling, 241, 5; w. subjunc. dependent on it, 226; in oratio obliqua, 228, 1 and 1, 2; 4, 6-8; tense in clauses after acc. w. inf., 234, 6; inf. as subj., pred., or appositive, 236; as obj., 237; acc. w. inf. as object, 238; as subj., 239, in exclamations, 240; inf. after vbs. of power, will, duty, etc., 241; inf., acc. w. inf., or ut w. subj., 242; historic, 243; to express purpose, 244, 1; after nouns, 244, 2; after adjs., 223, 2, n.; 244, 3; after preps., 244, 4; tenses, 246; periphrases for fut., see fore, futurum esse.

- inflection, 12, 1.
 infra, w. acc., 131.
 inner object, acc. of the, 124, 1.
 inquam, 86, 2; how used, 86, 2, n.
 insciens, w. force of adv., 113, 6.
 inseparable preps. or particles, 101, i.
 (in-), 101, ii.
 inspergo, 152.
 instar, 133, 7.
 instrument, abl. of, 166; 169.
 instrumental case, 14, 2.
 instruo, 169, 2.
 insuetus, 136, 2; 162, 1, 3, 5; 244, 3.
 insuper, 131, 4.
 integer, w. gen., 136, 5.
 intellegor, 245, 1.
 intensives, 88, 2.
 inter, 131; postpositive, 131, 5; vbs.
 compd. w. gov. acc., 122; gov. dat.,
 154.
 interest, w. gen., 142; w. abl. of poss.
 pron., 142, 2; followed by acc. w. inf.,
 or ut or interrog. w. subj., 142, 3; by
 acc. w. ad, 142, 4.
 interest, dat. of, 149; 157; 149-164.
 interest, Roman computation of, 308.
 interjections, 102; nouns and vbs. used
 as, 102, 2; advs., 102, 3; w. voc., 120, 2; w.
 nom., 120, 3; w. acc., 132; w. dat., 163.
 interrogative particles, 258; omitted,
 258, 5.
 interrogative pronouns, 62, 2-4, 7-12, 14.
 intimus, 113, 10.
 intra, w. acc., 131; of time, 185, 4.
 intransitive verbs, 64, 4; used as transi-
 tive, 121, 2; as impersonals in the pas-
 sive, 87, 5; 153, 3.
 inuro, 152.
 -inus, 102, 42, 45, 48.
 inverted attraction, 114, 2, b.
 invitus, w. force of adv., 113, 6.
 -io, 104, 5, 32.
 Ionic verse, 294, 3; 298, 2; 301, 19.
 ipse, 60; 61, 3, 4; 118.
 ipsissimus, 61, 4.
 irony, 305.
 ire, w. supine, 85, 7, 2; 253, 3.
 irrational time, 265, 7; 290, 1, n. 1, n. 2.
 irregular nouns, 37; adjs., 46; vbs., 85.
 is, 59; 61, 5; 116, 6.
 -is, 104, 34, 2, a.
 -is in acc. pl., 29, xi.; in nom. pl., 29, viii.
 -is for iis, 19, 7; 23, 6.
 -isso, verbs in, 88, 3.
 iste, 59; 61, 5; 116, 5.
 istic, 60, 2; 61.
 -itius, 104, 40.
 -itus, 104, 44.
 -ium, 104, 14, 23.
 -ius, 104, 42, 46, 51.
 jacio, in compds., 3, i.; 266, 4, n. 2.
 jubeo, 153, 2, b; 209, 3; 242, 7.
 jubeor, 245, 1.
 jungo, w. dat., 153, 6; junctus and con-
 junctus, w. abl., 166, 6.
 Jupiter, decl., 31.
 juratus, 81, 2.
 jusso, for jussero, 84, 12.
 juvo, w. acc., 153, 2, b.
 juxta, w. acc., 131: postpositive, 131, 5.
 knowing, verbs of w. acc. and inf., 238;
 w. inf., 241.
 knowledge, adjs. of, 136, 2.
 laboro, 168.
 laedo, 153, 2, b.
 laetor, 168.
 laetus, 168; w. force of adv., 113, 6.
 laeva, 183, 2.
 latus, w. acc. of extent of space, 129, 1.
 -lens, -lentus, 104, 43.
 letters, tenses in, 200.
 libens, 113, 6.
 liber, w. abl., 181; w. gen. or w. ab, 181, 1.
 libero, w. abl., 177; w. ab and abl. of a
 person, 177, 1.
 libro, 183, 2.
 liceo, 179.
 licet, 204, 2; 204, 2, 1; 239, 3; its tense de-
 termining the time of a following inf.,
 246, 3.
 likeness, adjs. of, 162, 2, 4; words of,
 with ac, atque, 257, 7.
 -lis, 104, 36, 2.
 litotes, 305.
 locare, 179.
 locative, 14, 1; 19, 5; 23, 8; 29, vi.; 34, 1;
 35, 4; 136, 6; 148; 185, 3.
 loco, 183, 2.
 locus, plural, 37, 6.
 logaoedic verse, 291.
 longius, without quam, 174, 1.
 longus, w. acc, 129, 1.
 lucrī, in pred., 135, 2.
 luctor, w. dat., 153, 7.
 macte, 46, 3, c; 181, 2.
 magis and maxime, in comparison, 50;
 magis—quam, 53, 2.
 magni, 146, 1; magno, 147, 3.
 making, vbs. of w. two acc., 126; passive
 w. two nom., 111.

male or (bene), *emere, vendere*, 179, 1.
 malo, 85, 5; 209, 5; 241, 4; 242.
 manifestus, 136, 2.
 manner, abl. of, 166, 1, 2; denoted by participle, 250.
 masculine caesura, 286; 7.
 mastery, adjs. of, 136, 2.
 material, gen. of, 133, 6: abl. of, 172.
 matutinus, w. force of adverb, 113, 6.
 means, abl. of, 166; denoted by participle, 250.
 measure, of difference, abl. of, 176.
 measures, Roman, of length, 310; of surface, 311; of capacity, 312.
 medeor, w. dat. 153, 2; *medendus*, 80, 5, Exc.
 medio, 183, 2.
 medius, 113, 10.
 melius, w. indic., 196.
 memini, 86, 6, w. gen., 137; w. pres. inf., 246, 4.
 memor, 136, 2.
 memoria teneo, 246, 4.
 -men, 104, 7, 8, 9.
 -mentum, 104, 7.
 -met, 57, 8; 58, 5.
 metaphor, 305.
 metaplasts, 37, 6.
 metathesis, 305.
 metonymy, 305.
 metre, 284, B.
 metrical reading, 303.
 metuo, w. dat. or acc., 160; w. ut or ne, 213.
 mi, voc. of *meus*, 58, 1; for *mihi*, 57, 4.
 middle voice, 64, 2; 125.
 militiae, 148, 2.
 minimi, 146, 1; *minimo*, 147, 3; 179, 1.
 -mino, minor, in imperat., 84, 5.
 minor, minus, without *quam*, 174, 1.
 minoris, 146, 1; 147.
 miror, w. acc., 121, 2; w. gen. of cause, 145, 1; w. acc. w. inf. or quod, 232, 4.
 mirum quam or quantum, 231, 4.
 misceo, 152; 153, 6.
 misereor, *miseresco*, w. gen., 138.
 miseret, 139, 2.
 mitto, w. two dats., 161, 1.
 moderator, w. dat. or acc., 160.
 modo, w. subj., 217, 3; *modo—modo*, *now—now*, 257, 6; *non modo—sed ne—quidem* (or *vix*), 256, 3.
 moneo, 124, n. 2, 209, n.
 money, Roman, 306-308.
 -monia, 104, 35, 2; -monia, -monium, 104, 14.
 monocolum, 284, B, i. 1.

monometer, 284, B, ii. 2.
 monosyllables, quantity of, 269.
 mood signs, origin and history, 90.
 morae, or times, 265, 2.
 moris est, 135.
 multiplication, how expressed, 55, 5.
 multiplicatives, 55, 14.
 multitude, noun of, 110, 4.
 muto, 179, 3.
 naming, verbs of w. two noms., 111; w. two accs., 126.
 natus, tr. *old*, w. acc., 129; w. abl., 178.
 -ne, 11, 2; 258, 1-4, 6-10, 12.
 ne, w. opt. subj., 203, 1, n. 2; w. concessive subj., 204, 2, w. sentences of purpose, 206; w. substantive clauses, 209; after vbs. of hindering, 210; omitted, 210, n; after verbs of fearing, 213; w. imperat., 247, 4, 5.
 nearness, adjs. of, 162, 2, 6.
 necessarius, 162, 2, 3.
 necesse est, 239, 3.
 necne, 258, 10.
 nec non, 256, 1.
 nedum, 206, 5.
 nefas, w. abl. supine, 254.
 negatives, two, 256.
 nequam, 46, 3, d; compared, 49.
 neque non, 256, 1.
 nescio an, 231, 4; 258, 15.
 nescio quis, quo, etc., 119, 2; w. indic., 231, 4.
 -neus, 104, 38.
 neuter, decl. of, 41.
 neuter adj., 113, 3, n. 1; referring to a phrase or clause, 113, 4; as noun, 113, 8; as defining acc., 124; w. gen. of the whole, 133, 4, n. 6, n. 7.
 neuter passives, 81, 1.
 neutral passives, 81.
 ni=si non, or nisi, q. v.
 nihili, 146, 1; *nihilo*, *nonnihilo*, 147, 3.
 nimium quantum, 231, 4.
 nisi and si non, 215, 1; 215, 1, n. 1.
 nitor, w. abl., 168.
 nix, decl., 31.
 "no," 258, 17.
 noli, nolite, w. inf., for imperat., 247, 6.
 nolo, 85, 4; 209, 5; 241, 4.
 nomen est, w. dat., 156, 1, a; w. nom. or gen., 156, 1, b.
 nominative, 14; 110; 120; w. interjections, 120, 3; as voc., 120, 4; poetic nom. after inf., 241, 5; for acc., 241, 6; w. infin., 109, 3, Exc.; 243.
 nomine, w. gen. of crime, 140, 1.

- non w. imperat., 247, 5, n. 2; non quod w. subj., 232, 1.
 non modo—sed ne—quidem (or vix), 256, 3.
 nonne, 258, 1.
 nos for ego, noster for meus, 115, 1.
 nostri, nostrum, 133, 1, n. 2, c.
 notus, w. dat., 162; w. gen. of cause, 136, 4.
 noxius, w. gen., 136, 2; w. dat., 252, 9, 2.
 nubo, w. dat., 153, 2, a.
 nullus, 41.
 num, 258, 1.
 number, 14; agreement in, 110; 113; 114.
 numerals, 54-56; numeral adverbs, 54.
 nunc—nunc, 257, 6.
 nuntior, 245.
 -nus, 104, 38, 39.
 nusquam, w. gen., 133, 4, n. 1, b.

 -o, 104, 4, Rem.; 104, 16.
 o, w. the nom., 120, 3; w. voc., 120, 2; w. acc., 132.
 o si, 203, 3.
 ob, w. acc., 131; compds. of w. acc., 122; w. dat., 154.
 obeying, dat. w. vbs. of, 153, 1.
 object, direct, 108, 6; acc. of, 121; becomes subj. w. passive voice, 121, 1, Rem.; inner object, 124, n. 1; remoter (or indirect) object, 108, 6; 149, n. 1; object clauses, 209; 238; 242; inf. as object, 237.
 objective genitive, 133, 3; 136.
 obliviscor, w. gen., 137; w. acc., 137, exc.
 octonarius, 284, B, ii, 5.
 offendo, w. acc., 153, 2, b.
 -ola, 104, 30.
 oleo, redoleo, w. acc., 121, 2, b.
 olli, ollis, ollas, olla, for illi, etc., 61, 2.
 -olum, 104, 26.
 -olus, 104, 26.
 omitting, quin after verbs of, 211.
 omnes not followed by gen., 133, 4, n. 4.
 omnium, w. possessives, 112, 3; w. nostrum and vestrum, 133, 1, n. 2, c.
 -on, -eön, gen. plur. in, 25, 1; 33, 2.
 -one, 104, 34, 2, c.
 onero, 169, 2.
 onomatopoeia, 305.
 operam do w. subj., 209.
 opinione, after comparat., 174, 4.
 oportet, 239, 3; 242, 1.
 opto, 242, 4.
 opus, 171; w. abl. sup., 254; opus est w. inf. or acc. w. inf., 239, 3; w. subj., 242, 1.
 -or, 104, 1.
 oratio obliqua, 107, 1, n.; 228, n.; moods in, 228, 1-7; tenses in, 228, 2, 6-9; conditional sentences in, 228, 6, 7; pronouns in, 229; virtual, 230.
 oratio recta, 107, 1, n.; 228, n.; 228, 1.
 order of words, 259-263.
 ordinal numbers, 54.
 ordine, abl. of manner, 166.
 origin, abl. of, 178.
 oro, 242, 6.
 ortus, 178; ortus ab, 178, 3.
 -os, -om, in second decl., 23, 2.
 -osus, 104, 43.
 oxymoron, 305.

 paenitet, 139, 2; w. inf., 236, 1; w. quod, 233; w. interrog. pron., 231.
 palam, w. abl., 186.
 par, dispar, 162, 1, 3.
 parabole, 305.
 paragoge, 304.
 pardoning, verbs of w. dat., 153, 1.
 parenthesis, 304.
 parasyllables, 26, 2.
 paroemiæ (of proverbs) verse, 295, 2.
 paronomasia, 305.
 pars, w. plural verb, 110, 4, a.
 part affected, acc. of, 128, n.
 particeps, w. gen., 136, 2.
 participation, adjs. of, 136, 2.
 participles, 65, 4; of deponents, 79; 80, 4, 5; of semi-deponents, 81, 2, 3; government, 248; time of, 249; fut. of purpose, 249, 1; want of pres. pass. supplied, 249, 2; of perf. act., 249, 3; of fut. pass., 249, 4; circumstantial participle (of time, cause, etc.), 250; w. nisi, quamquam, etc., 250, 2; instead of rel. clause, 251, 1; Eng. *without* how translated, 251, 2; perf. pass., w. habeo, teneo, possideo, 251, 3; equiv. to verbal noun, 251, 4, 5; part. and vb. tr. by two vbs., 251, 6; involved w. indirect question or relative, 251, 7; *man, men, things* understood w., 251, 8; as adjs., 251, 9; as nouns, 251, 10; gerundive, 252.
 particles, 98.
 partim, w. plur. verb, 110, 5, a; w. gen., 133, 4, n. 1, b.
 partitive apposition, 110, 5.
 partitives, 133, 4, n. 1.
 parts of speech, 12.
 parum, w. gen., 133, 4, n. 1, b.
 parvi, 146; parvo, 147, 3.
 passive voice, 64; intransitives in, im-

- personally, 64, 5; 87, 5; personally, 121, 2, *d*; obj. of active the subj. of pass., 121, Rem.; as middle, 64, 2; 125; compound tenses, 199; personal construction preferred, 245.
- patior**, 242, 4.
- patrials**, 58, 4; 104, 48-50.
- patronymics**, 104, 34.
- pauci**, 46, 2.
- pause**, in verse, 284, *B*, 2, 4. See also **caesura**.
- pavidus sum**, 213, 1.
- peculiaris**, 162, 1, 3.
- penalty**, 140, 2.
- penes**, w. acc., 131; postpositive, 131, 5.
- pentameter**, 284, *B*, ii. 2.
- penthemimeral caesura**, 284, *A*, 1; **penthemimeris**, 284, *A*.
- per**, in compds., 53, 5; 101, i.; w. acc., 131; postpositive, 131, 5; compds. w. acc., 122; of duration of time or extent in space, w. acc., 129.
- perceiving**, verbs of, w. acc. and inf., 238.
- perfect stem**, 68, 2; 92; 95.
- perfect tense**, 66, 4, 7; 192; historical, or aorist, 193; after temporal conjunctions, 193, 1; in letters, 200; in potential subj., 202; w. *utinam*, 203, 2; subj. second pers. in prohibitions, 203, 7; w. *licet*, 204, 2, 1; perf. ind. w. *eum*, 214, 4, n. 1; subj. in prot. and apod., 215, 3; periphrastic perf. subj. for pluperf., 215, 4; perf. subj. for imperat. in oratio obliqua, 228, 2, 1; perf. inf. representing plup. subj., 228, 7; perf. inf., 228, 8; in sequence of tenses, 234; 234, 4; in sentences of result, 234, 5; perf. subj. for fut. perf., 234, 7; periph. subj., 234, 8; perf. inf., 246, 1, 2, 4; Eng. perf. inf. represented by Latin pres., 246, 3; imperat. pass., 247, 8; want of perf. act. part. how supplied, 249, 3; origin of modern perf., 251, 3; perf. part., 251, 4.
- perhibeor**, 245.
- periculum est**, w. subj., 213, 1.
- period**, 263.
- periphrasis**, 305.
- periphrastic conjugations**, 82; 197, 198; subj., 215, 4, 4, 5; to mark future time in seq. of tenses, 234, 7; perf. subj. for subordinated plup. subj. in apodosis, 234, 8; inf. in orat. obliq., 228, 6.
- peritus**, w. gen., 136, 2; of ger., 252, 4.
- permagno**, 147, 3.
- permisceo**, 153, 6.
- permitto**, 242, 4.
- permuto**, 179, 3.
- person interested**, 149; 150-164.
- personal construction** in pass. for impersonal, 245.
- personal endings of verbs**, origin of, 89.
- personal pronouns**, 57; omitted, 109, 2; order, 110, 3; first pl. for sing., 115, 1; w. *ad*, *apud*, *ab*, *ex*, 115, 2; w. appositive, though expressed only in verb termination, 115, 3; gen. pl. originally neut. sing., 252, 8.
- personification**. See **prosopopoeia**.
- persons**, preference of in concord, 110, 3.
- persuadeo**, 153, 2; 209, n.; 209, 2.
- pertaesum est**, 139, 2.
- pervolo**, 85, 6.
- petitio obliqua**, 230, n.
- peto**, 127, 2.
- Phalaecian verse**, 284, *E*; 292, 3.
- Pherecratian verse**, 284, *E*; 292, 6.
- piget**, 139, 2.
- pili**, 146, 1.
- place**, *whither*, 130; 153, 5; *where*, 148; 183; *whence*, 182; *as means, cause*, etc., 183, 4.
- pleasing**, verbs of, 153.
- plenus**, 136, 2; 181.
- pleonasm**, 304.
- plerique** in the sing., 46, 2.
- pluperfect**, 66, 6, 7; 194; aor. or pres. for English plpf., 193, 1; perf. for Eng. plpf. potential, 196; periphrastic for, 197, 2; for Eng. perf. in letters, 200; in wishes which cannot be fulfilled, 203, 2; in imperat. subj., 203, 8; subj. w. *antequam*, etc., 214, 3; subj. w. *eum*, 214, 5; 214, 5, 5; in conditional sentences, 215, 4; perf. ind. for, 215, 4, 3; periphr. perf. subj. for, 215, 4, 4; periphr. plpf. subj., 215, 4, 5; how expressed when in a dependent apodosis, 228, 6; represented by perf. inf., 228, 7; in commands or questions in orat. obliq., 228, 9; in sequence of tenses, 234; representing fut. perf., 234, 7; represented by periphr. perf. subj., 234, 8.
- plural**, of proper names, 37, n. 1; of different instances, or poetical, 37, n. 2, n. 3; w. collectives, 110, 4; for sing. of pron., 115, 1.
- plurimi**, 146, 1; 147; **plurimo**, 147, 3.
- pluris**, 146, 1; 147.
- plus**, decl., 44, 2; meaning, 52, 2; *without quam*, 174, 1.
- pone**, w. acc., 131, 1.

- port, por**, old prep., 101, ii.
- posco**, w. two acc., 127; w. a and abl. of the person, 127, 2; w. ut or acc. w. inf., 242, 4; w. inf., 241.
- position**, quantity by, 266.
- possessive adj. pronouns**, 58; 115; w. gen. in apposition to person implied, 112, 3; 133, 1, n. 2, *b*; omitted, 115, 4; meaning fitness, 115, 5: of possessor, 133, 1, n. 2; objectively, 133, 3, n. 3.
- possessor**, dat. of, 156.
- possum**, 72.
- post**, w. acc., 131; compds. of w. dat., 154; denoting interval of time, 185, 6.
- postpositive prepositions**, 131, 5.
- postquam** and **posteaquam**, w. hist. perf., 193, 1.
- postremus**, 113, 10.
- postridie**, 35, 4; 133, 7, 1.
- postulo**, 127, 2; 242, 4.
- potential subj.**, 202.
- potior**, 145, 3; 167; 167, 2; **potiundus**, 80, 5, Exc.; 167, 2.
- prae**, w. abl., 186; in compds., 53, 5; compds. of w. dat., 154.
- praecipio**, 209, n.; 209, 3, 4; 237.
- praeditus**, 168.
- praesto**, 168.
- praestolor**, 160, 2.
- praeter**, w. acc., 131; compds. of w. acc., 122.
- praeteritives**, 86, 6.
- predicate**, 108, 1, 3, 5; pred. nom., noun, and adj., 111; 111, 2; verb agreeing in number w. pred., 111, 3; of inf. w. subj. acc., 111, 4; of abl. abs., 111, 5; in dat. after *esse*, 111, 6; pred. acc., 126; gen., 135; abl., 167, 3; dat. limiting, 158; pred. of an inf. agreeing w. unexpressed subj. acc., 239, 2; nom. after *volo esse*, etc., 241, 4.
- prepositions**, 101; in composition, 101, i.; inseparable, 101, ii. (For syntax, see the prepositions severally: *a*, *ad*, etc.)
- present**, 66, 1; 68, 1; pres. stem, 94; ind., 189; for fut., 189, 4; 214, 2, 6; conative, 189, 5, historic, 189, 6; w. *dum*, 189, 6, 2; 214, 1, n. 2; w. *jam*, etc., 189, 7; w. temporal conjunctions, 193, 1; in letters, 200; w. *cum*, 214, 4; pres. subj., 202, 2, n.; optative, 203, 2, 3; w. *licet*, 204, 2, 1; w. *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, 214, 1; in conditions, 215, 3; of future contingency, 215, 3, n. 1; condition contrary to fact, 215, 3, n. 2; in orat. obliq., 228, 9; for imperat., 228, 2, 1; in sequence of tenses, 224; of inf., 228, 8; after verbs of power, duty, permission, 246, 3; after *memini*, 246, 4; imperat., 247, 1; 247, 1, 4; subj. for, 247, 5, n. 1; participle, 249; substitute for part. pass., 249, 2.
- preventing**, verbs of, 210; 210, 1, 2; 211.
- Priapeian verse**, 292, 8.
- price**, gen. of, 147; abl., 179.
- pridie**, 35, 4; 133, 7, 1.
- primus**, **primum**, **primo**, 113, 6, n. 2; "he was the first to," 113, 6, n. 1.
- primus qui**, 223, 2.
- principal parts** of verbs, 69; table of, 97.
- prior**, **primus**, w. force of adv., 113, 6; w. gen., 133, 4, *d*; **primus**, *first part*, 113, 10.
- priusquam**, 214, 2.
- pro**, **prod**, in compds., 101, i.
- pro**, w. abl., 186; meaning in defence of, 149, 3.
- pro**, interj., w. voc., 120, 2; w. acc., 132.
- procul**, **procul ab**, w. abl., 186, 3.
- prohibeo**, 209; 210; 211, 1; 237.
- prohibitions**, subj. in, 203, 5; 203, 7; 247, 5 and n. 1; imper., 247, 4; substitutes for imperat. in, 247, 5, 6.
- prolepsis**, 304.
- promising**, verbs of, 238.
- pronouns**, 57-62; agreement, 114; meaning of demonstratives, etc., 116 sqq.; in oratio obliqua, 229.
- pronunciation**, old Roman, 3, i.; English method, 3, ii.; "continental," 3, iii.
- prope**, w. acc., 131; **prope est**, **proxime est**, ut, 208, n.
- proper adjectives**, 104, 48-51.
- propior**, **proximus**, w. force of adv., 113, 6; w. cases, 162, 6.
- propius**, **proxime**, 131, 2; 162, 6.
- proportionals**, 55, 15.
- proprius**, 162, 2 and 3.
- propter**, w. acc., 131; postpositive, 131, 5.
- prosody**, 265-303.
- prosopopoeia**, 305.
- prospicio**, 160.
- protasis**, 304; 215; omitted, 219.
- provideo**, 160.
- providus**, w. gen., 136, 2.
- prudens**, w. gen., 136, 2; w. force of adv., 113, 6.
- pudet**, 121, n. 1; 139, 2.
- pugno**, w. dat., 153, 7.
- punishment**, 140, 2.
- purpose**, 201, 1; clauses of, w. ut, quo, ne, and the subj., 206; w. relative

- adv., and the subj., 206, 2; 222, n. 2; purpose, not of the action but of the statement, 206, 4; w. **qui** and subj., 206, 1; 222; w. inf., 244, 1; w. fut. part., 249, 1; part., 250; gerund and gerundive, 252, 6, 7, 9, and 9, 1; 252, 12; (of an office), 252, 10; w. acc. supine, 253 and note.
- puto**, to reckon, w. gen., 146, 1, *b*.
- putor**, 245.
- Pythiambic strophe**, 301, 16, 17.
- qu** changed to **c**, 23, 2.
- quā**, w. its correlatives, 63, 3.
- quæro**, 127, 2.
- qualis**, w. its correlatives, 63, 1; for **et talis**, 259, 15.
- qualities**, two compared, 53, 2.
- quality**, gen. of, 134; abl. of, 175; permanent and transient qualities, 134, n. 1.
- quam**, w. comparative, 174; omission of, 174, 1; w. superlat., 53, 4; **quam**, **quam ut**, **quam qui**, after a compar., w. subj., 223, 5 and n.; **quam si**, 220.
- quamlibet**, 204, 2, 1.
- quamquam**, 204, 2, 1.
- quamvis**, 204, 2; 204, 2, 1.
- quando**, 232.
- quanti**, 146, 1; 147.
- quantity**, 6-8; in verse, 265; rules, 266-273; natural quantity, 273; by authority, 273.
- quantumvis**, 204, 2, 1.
- quantus**, w. its correlatives, 63, 1.
- quasi**, 220.
- quaternarius**, 284, *B*, 5.
- que**, 100, 5, *i*, 1; 257, 3.
- queror**, 232, 4.
- questions**, of doubt, deliberation, or appeal, 205; potential, 205, 3; in orat. obliq., 228, 3, 4; particles introducing, 258.
- qui**, indef., 62, 6; 119; interrog., 62, 2, 4; relative, 62, 1; 114; for **et is**, 259, 15; **qui** used in suggestive sense, 116, 10.
- quī**, abl., 62, 9; adv., 62, 9.
- quī** (relative), in protasis, 221; = **ut is**, w. subj., 222; defining, w. subj., 223; after **dignus**, etc., 223, 2; after indef. or interrog. prons. and general negatives, 223, 3; **qui non** or **quin**, in clause depending on negative or interrogative, 223, 3, 1; **qui**, w. subj. defining indefinite general expressions, 223, 4; after comp. w. **quam**, 223, 5; restricting, 223, 6; giving the reason, 224; reason w. indic., 224, n. 2; **quia**, **qui quoniam**, 224, n. 3; adversative, 225; rel. cl. dependent on another subj. or an inf., 226; **qui** w. the indic., 227; rel. clauses attracted into inf. in orat. obl., 228, 1, 2; participles used for, 251, 1.
- quia**, 232; **sed quia**, 232, 1; w. subj. in orat. obl., 228, 1, 1; w. inf., 228, 1, 2.
- quid quod?** 233.
- quidam**, 119, 6.
- quidem**, w. pers. and demous. prons., 116, 9; w. **qui**, 223, 6, 1.
- quilibet**, 119, 6.
- quin**, denoting result w. subj., 207; after vbs. of omitting, etc., 211; 211, 1; for **qui non**, 223, 3, 1 and 2.
- quippe qui**, 224, n. 1.
- quis**, interrog., 62; indef., 62; 119, 1, 2.
- quis = quibus**, 62, 11.
- quispiam**, 119, 5.
- quisquam**, 119, 5.
- quisque**, w. superlat., 53, 5; 119, 7; w. **se**, **suus**, 117, 1, n.
- quisquis**, 119, 7.
- quivis**, 119, 6.
- quo**, measure of difference, 176; meaning "that thereby," 206; **non quo**, 232, 1.
- quo**, adv., w. gen., 133, 4, n. 1, *b*.
- quoad**, w. gen., 134, 4, n. 1, *b*; w. subj., 214, 1; w. indic., 214, 1, n. 1.
- quod**, 232; 233; **non quod**, 232, 1; w. subj. of vbs. meaning to say, to think, 232, 3; w. vbs. of emotion, 232, 4; explaining a demonstrative, 232, 5.
- quoi**, **quouis**, 62, 8.
- quominus**, 208; 210, 2; 211, 1.
- quoniam**, 232.
- quot**, w. its correl., 63, 1; w. gen., 133, 4, n. 1, *c*.
- quotes**, w. its correl., 63, 3.
- quum** (originally **quom**). See **cum**.
- rating**, verbs of, 146.
- re-**, **red-**, insep. prep., 101, *ii*.
- re** for **-ris**, 84, 3.
- reading**, metrical, 303.
- reason**, clauses denoting the, 214, 3; 224; 232.
- recordor**, 137, 2.
- recuso**, 210; 210, 2; 211; 237.
- redundant nouns**, 37, 8.
- reduplicated perfects**, 95, 1.
- refert**, 142.
- refertus**, 181.
- reflexive pronoun**. See **sui**, **suus**.

- refraining, verbs of, 211.
 refusing, verbs of, 210.
 regno, w. gen., 145.
 relative, relative clauses. See *qui*.
 reliquum est, w. subject clause, 208, n.
 reliquus, 113, 10.
 relinquo, w. two dats., 161.
 remaining, verbs of, 111.
 remembering, verbs of, 137.
 reminding, verbs of, 139.
 reminiscor, 137.
 repeated action, by imperf., 190, 2;
 perf., 192, 2, *c*; plup. ind. or subj.,
 214, 5, 5.
 repleo, 141.
 resisting, verbs of, 153, 1.
 resolve, verbs of, 241, 1, 2.
 restat, w. subject clause, 208, n.
 restrictive clauses w. *qui*, *quod*, 223, 6.
 result, subj. of, 207.
 rhetorical questions in oratio obl., 228, 4.
 rhythm, 261; rhythms, falling, 283, 6;
 rising, 283, 6.
 rideo, w. acc. 121, 2, *a*; *rideor*, 121, 2, *d*.
 rogo, 127; w. ut w. subj., 209.
 roots, 16.
 rudis, w. gen. 136, 2.
 rus, 130, 3; w. preps., 183, 6, *a*; *rure*, 182;
 183, 2; *ruri*, locative, 148, n.
s changed to *r*, 89, 3, 4; 91, 3-6; 92, 2; 94,
 1, 7; final *s* sounded slightly or not at
 all, 266, 2, n. 3; 274, 2.
 sacer, 162, 1 and 3.
 Sapphic verse, 284, *E*; greater, 292, 2;
 lesser, 292, 1.
 satago, 144.
 satis, w. gen., 133, 4, n. 1, *b*; vbs. compd.
 w. governing dat., 155.
 Saturnian verse, 300.
 saying, verbs of, 238.
 scazon, 296, 3.
 sciens, w. force of adv., 113, 6.
 scito, 84, 4.
 scribor, 245, 1.
se-, *sed-*, inseparable prep., 101, ii., 4.
se. See *sui*.
 second pers. sing., used of an indefi-
 nite subject, 203, 6; 215, 3, n. 4; 219, 3.
 secundum, w. acc., 131, 1.
 seeming, verbs of, 111.
 semi-deponents, 81, 1.
 senarius, 284, *B*, 5.
 sending, vbs. of, w. two dats., 161, 3.
 senex, declined, 31.
 sentences, simple, 107; direct and indi-
 rect, 107, 1, n.; compound, 107, 2.
 separation, abl. of, 177; gen., 145, 2; dat.
 w. vbs. of, 151.
 septenarius, 284, *B*, 5.
 sequence of tenses, 234.
 sequitur ut, 208, n.
 serving, dat. w. vbs. of, 153, 1.
seu. See *sive*.
 showing, vbs. of, w. acc. and inf., 238,
 n. 1.
 showing oneself, being shown, vbs. of,
 w. two noms., 111; w. two accs., 126.
si, w. the indic., 188, 1; 215, 2; w. opta-
 tive subj., 203, 3; w. protasis, 215; ind.,
 215, 2; subj., 215, 3, 4; *si* omitted, 215,
 2, n. 2; *si* in indirect questions, 231, n.
 2; 258, 14; compds. of, denoting con-
 cession, 204, 2, 2; in condit. clauses,
 215, 1, n. 2; w. vb. of apodosis omitted,
 220; 220, 3.
sicuti, 220.
siem for *sim*, 70, 1.
 simile, 305.
 similis, 162, 4.
 simul, simul ac, atque, ut, 193, 1.
si non, 215, 1, n. 1.
 sine, w. abl., 186.
 singular after disjunctives, 110, 6.
 sinistra, 183, 2.
 sino, 209, 5; 242, 4.
 sitio, w. acc., 121, 2, *b*.
sive—*sive*, 257, 6.
-so (*-sso*), *-sim* (*-ssim*), 84, 12.
 solecism, 305.
 solus, 41; *solus qui*, 223, 2.
 solvo, 177; *solutus*, w. gen., 177, 2.
 sonare, w. acc., 121, 2, *b*.
-sor, 104, 3.
 Sotadean verse, 284, *E*; 294, 3.
 source, abl. of, 178.
 space, extent of, 129.
 sparing, dat. w. vbs. of, 153.
spe, comparative w., 174, 4.
 specification, acc. of, 128; gen. of, 136, 5;
 143, n.; 145; abl. of, 180.
 speech, parts of, 12.
 spolio, 177.
 spondaic line, 285, 5.
 statuo, 209; 241.
 stem, 15; stem characteristics, 15, 1, 2;
 21, 1; 26, 1-4; 31, n.; 94-96.
sto, of cost, 179.
 striving, vbs. of, 209, 241.
 studeo, w. dat., 153, 1; w. subj., 209; w.
 inf., 241.
 studiosus, 136, 2.
 stultitiae est, 135.
 suadeo, 153, 2, *a*.

- sub, in composition, 101, i.; w. acc. or abl., 131, 3; vbs. compd. w. governing acc., 122; governing dat., 154.
- subject, 108, 1, 2; subj. nom., 109, 110; acc. subj. of inf., 109, 3; nom. subj. of inf., 109, 3, Exc.; 243; attracted as obj., 121, n. 3.
- subjective genitive, 133, 2.
- subjunctive, 65, 1; two chief uses, 201, i., ii.; ideal, 201, 2; potential, 202; optative, 203; concessive, 204; in questions of hesitation or appeal, 205; of purpose, 206; of result, 207; in subst. clauses w. *ut*, *ut non*, *quominus*, as subjects of a vb., 208; in clauses w. *ut*, *ne*, *ut ne*, obj., of a vb., 209; w. *ne*, after vbs. meaning to hinder, etc., 210; w. *quominus*, 210, 2; w. *quin*, 211; in appositive clauses, 212; after vbs. of fearing, 213; in temporal clauses, 214; w. *cum*, *since*, 214, 3; in conditional sentences, 215; w. *dum*, *modo*, etc., 217, 3; gnomic, 218; second person, 215, 3, n. 4; 219, 3; w. *qui*, 222-225; in incorporated clause, attracted, 226; in oratio obliqua, 228; in virtual orat. obl., 230; in indirect questions, 231; in causal clauses, 232; w. *quod*, 232; 233; sequence of tenses in, 234; w. *ut* in exclamations, 240, 2; w. vbs. of various meanings, 242, 1, 3-8.
- sublimis, *on high*, 113, 6.
- subordinate clauses, 107, 3.
- substantive clauses w. the subjunctive, as subjects, 208; objects, 209; appositives, 212.
- subter, w. acc. or abl., 131, 4; postpositive, 131, 5; vbs. compd. w. gov. acc., 122.
- suffixes, 89 sqq.; 103, 2-6.
- sui, 57, 1; 117; w. *quisque*, 117, 1, n.; in orat. obliq., 229.
- sum, 70; compds. of, 71, 72; as copula, 108, 3, 1; more than copula, 108, 3, 2; w. predicate gen., 135; w. dat., 156; 161, 4; two dats., 161; w. dat. of gerund, 252, 9, 2, 3.
- summus, 113, 10.
- sunt qui, 223, 4; 227.
- super, w. acc. or abl., 131, 4; postpositive, 131, 5; compds. w. governing acc., 122; dat., 154.
- superlative, 47-49; 51; w. *maxime*, 50; wanting, 50; of adverbs, 52; meaning *very*, 53, 3; w. *longe*, *multo*, *unus*, *vel*, *quam*, *quam potest*, 53, 4; w. *quisque*, 53, 5; w. gen., 133, 4, n. 1, *f*, *g*.
- supero, w. abl., 168.
- superstes, 162, 1 and 3.
- supine, 65, 6; 68, 3; 93; 96; wanting, 83; acc. sup., 253; of purpose, 253; w. *eo*, 85, 7, 2; 253, 3; w. *iri*, 85, 7, 2; 253, 3; abl. sup., 254; as abl. of separation, 254, 2.
- supplico, *bend the knees to*, 153, 2, a.
- supra, w. acc., 131; postpositive, 131, 5.
- supremus, 113, 10.
- sus, declined, 31.
- sus, 104, 5.
- suus, 58, 117; *sui*, *his friends*, *his people*, etc., 117, 5; meaning *proper*, *propitious*, 115, 5.
- syllables, 5; division of, 5, 1.
- syllepsis, 304.
- synaeresis, 276; 304.
- synaloepha, 274, 5; 304.
- synaphia, 282.
- syncope, 278; 304.
- synecdoche, 305.
- synecphonesis, 304.
- synesis, 304.
- synizesis, 304.
- synonymia, 305.
- syntax, 107-258.
- systole, 279.
- taedet, 139, 2.
- taking as, vbs. of, w. two accs., 126.
- taking away, vbs. of, w. dat., 151; w. abl., 177.
- talis, w. its correlatives, 63, 1.
- tametsi, 215, 1, n. 2.
- tamquam, *tamquam si*, 220; 220, 1.
- tanti, 146, 1; 147.
- tantulo, 147, 3.
- tantum abest ut, 208, n.
- tantus, w. its correl., 63, 1.
- tas, 104, 35.
- tautology, 305.
- te, 57, 9; 58, 5.
- teaching, vbs. of, 127; 127, 1, 3.
- tempero, 160, 1.
- temporal clauses, 214.
- teneo, *se*, w. abl., 183, 2; *teneo*, w. perf. pass. part., 251, 3.
- tenses, 66; tense-signs, origin and history, 91, 92; tenses, 189-199; in letters, 200; temporal clauses, 214; of subj. in wishes, 203, 2; prohibitions, etc., 203, 7, 8; conditions, 215, 3; 3, n. 2; 4; 4, 1, 2, 4, 5; inf., 246; imperat., 247; part., 249; sequence of, 234; in orat. obl. 228.
- tenuis, 186; w. abl. or gen., 186, 1; postpositive, 186, 1.

- tetrameter, 284, *B*, ii, 2.
 tetrastich, 284, *B*, i., 2.
 thesis, 283, 1.
 thinking, verbs of, 111; 126; *w. inf.*, 238.
 threatening, verbs of, 153, 1.
 -tia, 104, 35.
 time, how long, *w. acc.*, 129, 1; *w. per.* 129, 2; *w. abl.*, 129, 3; 185, 10; time when, 185; *w. prep.*, 185, 4; within which, 185; *w. prep.* 185, 4; *w. hic* or *ille*, 185, 5; how soon, 185, 6; how long ago, 185, 6 sqq.
 timeo, *w. dat.* or *acc.*, 160, 1; *w. ut* or *ne*, 213.
 -tio, 104, 5.
 tmesis, 281; 304.
 -tor, 104, 3.
 tot, *w. its correlatives*, 63, 1.
 toties, *w. its correlatives*, 63, 2; 63, 4.
 totus, 41; *w. abl.* of place, 183, 2.
 towns, names of denoting place whither, 130, 1; place where, 148; *w. preps.*, 183, 6, *a*.
 trador, 245.
 trans, *w. acc.*, 131, 1; compds. of *w. acc.*, 122; *w. two accs.*, 122, *n.* 2.
 transient qualities, 134, *n.* 1.
 transitive verbs, 64, 3.
 tres, declension, 55, 1.
 tricolum, 284, *B*, i. 1.
 trihemimeral caesura, 284, *A*, 1.
 trihemimeris, 284, *A*.
 trimeter, 284, *B*, ii. 2
 -trix, 104, 4.
 trochaic metres, 290.
 trochaeo-dactylic verses, 292.
 trochee, 283, 2; irrational, 265, 7; 290, 1, *n.* 1.
 -trum, 104, 13.
 -tudo, 104, 35.
 tum—tum, 257, 6; cum—tum, 257, 6.
 -tura, 104, 5.
 turpis, *w. abl.* supine, 254.
 -tus, 104, 5, 33.
 tuus, 58; 115, 4, 5; *thy own, agreeable, fit*, 115, 5.
 ubi, *w. gen.*, 133, 4, *n.* 1, *b*; *w. aor.*, 193, 1.
 -ubus for -ibus, 34, 4.
 -ula, -ulum, -ulus, 104, 25.
 ullus, decl., 41; use, 119, 5.
 ultimus, 113, 10; ultimus qui, 223, 2.
 ultra, *w. acc.*, 141.
 -um for -arum, 19, 4; for -orum, 23, 5.
 uncia, 56, 3; 309; 310; 312; unciae usu-
 rae, 308.
 -uncula, -unculus, 104, 28.
 -undi, -undus, 84, 11.
 unlikeness, gen. or dat. *w. adjs.* of, 162, 4.
 unreal conditional sentence, 215, 4.
 unus, decl., 55; plur. of, 55, 4; *w. ex* or *de*, 133, 4, *n.* 5; unus qui, 223, 2.
 -ura, 104, 20.
 urging, verbs of, 209, *n.*
 useful, dat. *w. adjs.* signifying, 162.
 usque, 183, 6, *b*.
 usus, *w. abl.*, 171.
 usu venit ut, 208, *n.*
 ut, concessive, 204, 2; of purpose, 206; of result, 207; in substantive clauses as subjects, 208; as objects, 209; omitted, 209, 4, 5; in appositive clauses, 212; *w. verbs* of fearing, 213; in exclamatory questions, 240.
 ut non, 207; 208; 209, 1.
 ut qui, 224, *n.* 1.
 ut si, 220.
 uter, decl., 41; *w. gen.*, 134, 4, *n.* 1, *c*.
 uterque, 119, 9, *b*; 133, 4, *n.* 1, *c*.
 utilius, *w. indic.*, 196.
 utinam, 203, 2.
 utor, 167; idiomatic uses, 167, 3; utendus, 80, 5, Exc.; 167, 2.
 utpote, *w. rel.* giving the reason, 224, *n.* 1.
 utrum, 258, 6, 8, 9, 12.
 -utus, 104, 44.
 uu avoided, 23, 2.
 vacuus, 181; *w. ab*, 181, 1; *w. gen.* (rare or poet.), 181, 1.
 vae, *w. dat.*, 163.
 valeo, *w. abl.*, 163.
 value, gen. of, 146.
 -ve, 257, 5.
 vel, 257, 4; *w. superlative*, 53, 4; vel—vel, 257, 6.
 velut, velut si, 220; 220, 1.
 vendo, 147, 1; 147, 3; 179.
 venco, 147, 1; 147, 3; 179.
 venio, *w. two dat.*, 161, 3.
 venit in mentem, 137, note.
 verb endings, 67; 89-93.
 verb stems, 68; 94-96.
 verbs, 64-97; table of, *w. principal parts*, 97; derivation, 105; verbals, 105, 1; denominatives, 105, 2; verb omitted, 110, 8; 121, 5.
 verbum, *w. appositive gen.*, 133, 5.
 vereor, *w. gen.* (rare), 145; *w. dat.* (rare) or *acc.*, 160, 1; *w. ut* or *ne*, 213; *w. inf.*, 241, 1.
 verse, early dramatic, 302.

- versification, 283 sqq.
 versus, w. acc., 131; position, 131, 5.
 verito, to exchange, 179, 3; w. two dats., 161.
 vescor, 167; vescendus, 80, 5, Exc.; 167, 2.
 vespertinus, used as adv., 113, 6.
 vestri, vestrum, 133, 1, n. 2, c.
 veto, 242, 7; vector, 245, 1.
 vicinia, 143, 2.
 vicinus, 162, 2, 3; 136, 7.
 videor, 245, 1, 2.
 vis, declined, 31.
 vivo, w. abl., 167, 1.
 vocative, irreg., 23, 3; use, 120, 2; position, 120, 5.
 voices, 64; 64, 1, 2.
 volens, 113, 6; mihi volenti est, 156, 2.
 volo, w. subj. without ut, 209, 5; w. ut, 242, 3; w. inf., 241; 242.
 voti damnatus, reus, 140, 2, n.
 vowels, 2.
 vox, w. appositive gen., 133, 5.
 want, verbs of, 143; 170; adjs. of, 136, 2; 181.
 weak caesura, 286, 7.
 weights, Roman, 309.
 wishing, verbs of, 209, 5; 241; 242.
 "without," w. participle, 251, 2.
 year, how denoted, 313, 8.
 "yes," 258, 16.
 yielding, verbs of, w. dat., 153.
 zeugma, 304.

THE



END.